

**МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ  
КИЇВСЬКИЙ НАЦІОНАЛЬНИЙ ЛІНГВІСТИЧНИЙ УНІВЕРСИТЕТ**

**Г.І. Сташко, Н.Ю. Титова**

# **ВЖИВАЄМО АНГЛІЙСЬКУ - ІІІ**

**Навчальний посібник з англійської мови  
як другої іноземної  
для студентів ІІ курсу факультету перекладознавства**

**Київ  
Видавничий центр КНЛУ  
2021**

УДК 811.111 (075.8)  
С 78

Друкується за рішенням вченої ради  
Київського національного лінгвістичного університету  
(протокол № 2 від 27 вересня 2021 р.)

**Рецензенти:** **Черхава О.О.** – доктор філологічних наук, доцент, завідувач кафедри англійської мови факультету перекладознавства Київського національного лінгвістичного університету;  
**Скрябіна В.Б.** – кандидат філологічних наук, доцент, доцент кафедри англійської філології і перекладу імені професора І.В. Корунця Київського національного лінгвістичного університету;  
**Шевелько К.О.** – кандидат педагогічних наук, доцент іноземної філології та перекладу Київського національного торговельно-економічного університету;  
**Трептов К.** – доктор філософії університету Іллінойса, головний редактор видавництва HISTRIA BOOKS.

**Сташко Г.І., Титова Н.Ю.**

**С 78 English-in-Use - III / Вживаємо англійську - III.** Навч. посібник з англійської мови як другої іноземної для студентів II курсу факультету перекладознавства. – К.: Видавничий центр КНЛУ, 2021. – 355 с.

**ISBN 978-966-638-349-8**

© Сташко Г., Титова Н., 2021  
© Вид. центр КНЛУ, 2021

## ПЕРЕДМОВА

Запропонований навчальний посібник розрахований на студентів другого курсу факультету перекладознавства.

Посібник має на меті розвиток мовленнєвих і перекладацьких навичок та вмінь з англійської мови як другої іноземної, подальший розвиток соціокультурної та мовної (фонетичної, граматичної та лексичної) компетенцій студентів.

Структурно посібник складається з двох модулів: “Їжа та звички у харчуванні” (“Food and Eating Habits”), “Покупки” (“Shopping”), кожен з підтемами, які розроблено у відповідності до змісту типової та робочої програм з дисципліни в умовах кредитно-модульної системи.

На початку кожного модуля подано перелік мовного матеріалу, що представлений тематичною лексикою, яка активізується протягом вивчення модуля. У кінці посібника подана теорія з граматичних явищ, які присутні в обох модулях.

У посібнику передбачено різноманітні вправи для розвитку вмінь аудіювання, читання, усного та писемного мовлення, перекладу. Завдання спрямовані як на роботу студентів в аудиторії під керівництвом викладача, так і позааудиторну самостійну роботу. Розроблено вправи для багаторівневої аудиторії, що допомагають студенту та викладачеві не лише сконцентруватись на базовому матеріалі, а й охопити складні лексико-граматичні явища.

Текстовий матеріал посібника відзначається автентичністю та інформативністю, а також базується на сучасних джерелах інформації, перелік яких подано наприкінці посібника.

Укладачі вдячні рецензентам посібника – О.О. Черхавій, доктору філологічних наук, професору, завідувачу кафедри англійської мови факультету перекладознавства Київського національного лінгвістичного університету, В.Б. Скрябіній, кандидату філологічних наук, доценту кафедри англійської філології і перекладу імені професора І.В. Корунця Київського національного лінгвістичного університету та К.О. Шевелько, кандидату педагогічних наук, доценту кафедри іноземної філології та перекладу Київського національного торговельно-економічного університету за ретельний фаховий аналіз лінгвістичних та методичних властивостей посібника.

# MODULE ONE: FOOD AND EATING HABITS

## SECTION I: WHAT WE EAT

### GRAMMAR:

- Articles (Revision)
- Tense Forms (Revision)

## Vegetables, Fruit and Berries

### Vocabulary

Vegetables	Овочі
artichoke	артишок
asparagus	спаржа, аспарагус
aubergine / egg plant	баклажан
avocado	авокадо
beans	боби
beetroot / redbeet	столовий буряк
broccoli	броколі, капуста спаржева
brussel sprouts	брюсельська капуста
cabbage / red ~	капуста качанна / ~ червонокачанна
• <i>a cabbage-head</i>	• <i>головка / качан капусти, капуста</i>
• <i>pickled cabbage / sauerkraut</i>	• <i>кисла (квашена) капуста</i>
capsicum	стручковий перець; перець червоний
carrot	морква
cauliflower	цвітна капуста
a celery root, celeriac / celery	корінь селери / селера
chicory	цикорій
Chinese leaves / bok choy / pak choi	пекінська капуста
corn	кукурудза, маїс
courgette / zucchini	цукіні, кабачок (молодий)
a cucumber	огірок
daikon	дайкон, японська редька
dill	кріп
endive	ендивій
fennel	фенхель, солодкий кріп
garlic	часник
• <i>a clove of garlic</i>	• <i>зубок часника</i>
ginger	імбир
greens	зелень, зелені овочі
horse-radish	хрін



Jerusalem artichoke	земляна груша, топінамбур
kohlrabi	кольрабі
leek	цибуля-порей
legumes	бобові
lentils	сочевиця
lettuce	салат-латук
• <i>iceberg lettuce / crisphead lettuce</i>	• качаний салат “Айсберг”
marrow / squash	кабачок
a mushroom	гриб
a field mushroom / a Paris mushroom	печериця
okra	окра, бамія, гібіскус їстівний
olives / green olives / black olives	оливки / зелені оливки / маслини
onion	цибуля ріпчаста
parsley	петрушка
parsnip	пастернак
peas	горох
potato	картопля
• <i>new potato</i>	• молода картопля
pumpkin	гарбуз
radish	редиска
red pepper / sweet pepper / bell pepper	стручковий перець; перець червоний або іспанський; солодкий перець
rhubarb	ревінь
shallot	цибуля-шалот
sorrel	щавель
soy beans / soya	соєві боби, соя
spinach	шпинат
spring onion / green onion	зелена цибуля
swede / rutabaga	бруква
sweet potato / yam	батат, солодка картопля
tomato	томат, помідор
• <i>cherry tomato</i>	• помідор “черрі”
turnip	ріпа
wasabi	васабі, японський хрін
edible / inedible	їстівний / неїстівний
juicy	соковитий
pickled	маринований, солоний
raw	сирий
savoury	пікантний

<b>Fruit</b>	<b>Фрукти</b>
apple	яблуко
apricot	абрикос
banana / plantain	банан
• <i>a hand / a bunch of bananas</i>	• <i>вязка, гроно бананів</i>
coconut	кокос
date	фінік
fig	інжир, фіга
grapefruit	грейпфрут
guava, amrud	гуава
kiwi fruit	ківі
lemon	лимон
lime	лайм
lychee	лічі, китайська слива
mango	манго
melon	диня
• <i>cantalop / cantaloupe</i>	• <i>мускусна диня</i>
• <i>honeydew melon</i>	• <i>біла мускатна диня</i>
orange	апельсин
• <i>blood orange</i>	• <i>корольок, сицилійський апельсин</i>
• <i>clementine</i>	• <i>клементин (сорт апельсина)</i>
papaya	папая
passion fruit	маракуя, пасифлора
peach	персик
• <i>nectarine</i>	• <i>нектарин (сорт персика)</i>
pear	груша
persimmon / date plum	хурма
• <i>Sharon fruit</i>	• <i>шарон, ізраїльська хурма</i>
pineapple	ананас
plum	слива
pomegranate	гранат
pomelo / shaddock	помело
quince	айва
star fruit / carambola	карамболь
sweetie	світі, оробланко
tangerine	мандарин
watermelon	кавун
citrus fruits	цитрусові фрукти
dried fruits	сушені фрукти
• <i>raisins</i>	• <i>родзинки</i>

• <i>dried apricots</i>	• <i>курага</i>
• <i>prunes</i>	• <i>чорнослив</i>
frozen fruits	заморожені фрукти
tinned / canned fruits	консервовані фрукти
tropical fruits	тропічні фрукти
stone fruits	кісточкові фрукти
flesh / pulp	м'якоть (плоду)
skin / rind	шкірка (плоду)
stalk / stem	стебло
stone / pit	кісточка
pips	зернятка (плоду)
citron / rind (of lemon or orange) / dried (lemon or orange) peel	цедра (шкірка плодів цитрусових, як то апельсинів, лимонів і т. ін.)
candied peel / candied fruit	цукати
bitter	гіркий
bland	прісний
ripe / unripe	стиглий / нестиглий
sweet	солодкий
sour	кислий
tart / astringent	терпкий, кислий

<b>Berries</b>	<b>Ягоди</b>
ashberry	горобина
bird cherry	черемшина
blackberry	ожина (рос: ежевика)
blueberry / huckleberry / bilberry	чорниця
cherry-plum	алича
cornel / Cornelian cherries / dogwood	кизил / дерен
cranberry	журавлина (рос: клюква)
currants	порічки / смородина
• <i>blackcurrants</i>	• <i>чорна смородина</i>
• <i>redcurrants</i>	• <i>червона смородина</i>
dog rose / sweetbrier / wild rose	шипшина
elderberry	бузина
golden berry / winter cherry / physalis	фізаліс
gooseberry	аґрус
grapes	виноград
• <i>sultanas</i>	• <i>киш-миш (сорт винограду)</i>
great bilberry	голубика
guelder rose berry / snowball tree berry	калина

hawthorn	глід (рос: боярышник)
mulberry	шовковиця
raspberry	малина
red huckleberry / cowberry	брусниця
sea-buckthorn	обліпіха
soft fruit	ягода без кісточки (напр. полуниця)
strawberry	полуниця
sweet cherry	черешня
sour cherry / tart cherry	вишня
wild strawberry	суниця

### Do you know that

- ✓ Fruit and vegetables contain important **vitamins**, **minerals** and plant chemicals. They also contain **fibre**.
- ✓ There are many varieties of fruit and vegetables available and many ways to prepare, cook, and serve them.
- ✓ A diet **high in** fruit and vegetables can help **protect** you **against** cancer, diabetes and heart disease.
- ✓ Eat **five** kinds of vegetable and **two** kinds of fruit every day for good health.
- ✓ Apples are good for teeth. An apple a day keeps a doctor away.

**1** Have you ever wondered how to tell fruits and vegetables apart? Read the following text and learn how to do it.

#### *What Makes a Fruit a Fruit and a Vegetable a Vegetable?*

An apple is a fruit, right? So is a banana. How about a cucumber? A vegetable, right? Not really, from a botanical standpoint.



The good news is that, nutritionally speaking in terms of what you should eat daily, fruit and vegetables belong to one group, so you can simply pick your favorites and eat away without completing a science degree. The surprising news is that, scientifically speaking, many of the foods we refer to as vegetables are actually fruit!

For instance, would you believe that beans, corn, bell peppers, peas, eggplants, pumpkins, cucumbers, squashes and tomatoes are all fruits? That's because, botanically speaking, fruits are the part of flowering plants that contain the seeds and are the means by which such plants disseminate those seeds.

So even **nuts** are fruits. **Grains**, which are really just oversized seeds, are also fruits. So, what about vegetables? Botanically speaking, vegetables are all the other edible parts of the plant, including the **leaves** (e.g., lettuce and spinach), **roots** (e.g., carrots and radishes), **stems** (e.g., ginger and celeriac) and even the **flower buds** (e.g., broccoli and cauliflower).

To sum it up – if it is from a plant and has seeds (or would have seeds if it wasn't genetically engineered or cultivated not to have them, as with things like **seedless grapes**), it is a fruit; if it doesn't, it is a vegetable.



So why in the world do we learn that such things as peppers, corn and cucumbers are vegetables? Why are these foods found in the **veggies section** when we shop **at the greengrocer's**? We can **blame it on the culinary traditions** where the part of the plant we are eating does not generally matter in terms of its classification – taste does! When it comes to cooking, fruit is generally **sweet tasting** and vegetables are more **savory** and less sweet. Fruit is also typically served as part of dessert or as snacks, and vegetables are often part of the main dish.

So, in the end, the scientific classification system makes a clear dividing line between fruit and vegetables as described above, while the culinary system of classification is considerably more ambiguous, hence why so many are confused as to what is a vegetable and what is a fruit. But, at least now you needn't be confused any longer.

2

**Find the English equivalents in the text from ex.1.**



Точка зору, неоднозначний (який допускає двояке тлумачення), відносити за рахунок чого-небудь, дієтологічна точка зору, з наукового погляду, проводити чітку розмежувальну лінію, кулінарні традиції, овочі (2), зерно, наприклад, безкісточковий, генетично модифікований, квітуча рослина, розсіювати насіння, їстівний, збільшеного розміру, квітковий бутон, овочевий магазин, смак, основне блюдо, значно, плутати.

3

**Write the names of vegetables that fit the following definition. Sometimes you need a plural form.**


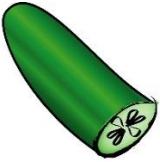


1. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a plant with crunchy bitter tasting leaves. It is eaten in salads, and its roots are sometimes used instead of coffee. 2. \_\_\_\_\_ is an aromatic annual herb with fine blue-green leaves and yellow flowers. Its leaves and seeds are used for flavoring and for medicinal purposes. 3. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a long thin vegetable with a hard green skin and wet transparent flesh. It is eaten raw in salads. 4. \_\_\_\_\_ is a small, white, round bulb of a plant that is related to the onion plant. It has a very strong smell and taste and it is used in cooking. 5. \_\_\_\_\_ is a small plant with curly leaves that are used for flavouring or decorating savoury food. 6. \_\_\_\_\_ is a small round vegetable with a brown skin that grows underground. It has many white layers on its inside which have a strong, sharp smell and taste. 7. \_\_\_\_\_ are small, soft,

red fruit that you can eat raw in salads or cooked as a vegetable. **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ are pear-shaped vegetables, with hard green skins and large stones, which are usually eaten raw. **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ is a type of plant with crisp curly leaves, which have a bright yellow tip. It is usually eaten in salads. **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ is a plant with large green leaves that is the basic ingredient of many salads. **11.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a small, round, dark red root of a plant, eaten cooked as a vegetable, especially cold in salads. **12.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a large, round, orange vegetable with a thick orange skin, pulpy flesh, and numerous seeds. **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ are an oriental cabbage, which does not form a firm heart. **14.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a long thin vegetable, which smells similar to onions. It is white at one end, has long light green leaves, and is eaten cooked. **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ are small red or white vegetables that are the roots of a plant. They are eaten raw in salads. **16.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a hollow green, red, orange or yellow vegetable that has a mild or sweet flavor and is often eaten raw. **17.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a long pointed orange root eaten as a vegetable. It grows under the ground, and has green shoots above the ground. **18.** \_\_\_\_\_ are small onions with long green leaves. They are often eaten raw in salads. **19.** \_\_\_\_\_ are quite round vegetables with brown or red skins and white insides. They grow under the ground. **20.** \_\_\_\_\_ is a plant whose leaves have a bitter-sour taste and are sometimes used in salads, soups and sauces. **21.** \_\_\_\_\_ are round green seeds, which grow in long thin pods and are eaten as a vegetable. **22.** An \_\_\_\_\_ is a small oval fruit with a hard stone and bitter flesh. It is green when unripe and bluish black when ripe, used as food and as a source of oil. **23.** \_\_\_\_\_ is a spicy root of a tropical plant that is used in cooking. It is often sold in powdered form. **24.** \_\_\_\_\_ is a plant with large, green leaves and a long, white root that has a strong sharp taste. It is often made into a sauce to go with meat. **25.** An \_\_\_\_\_ is an egg-shaped vegetable with a smooth, dark purple skin. **26.** \_\_\_\_\_ is a plant with large leaves and thick reddish or green stalks. It tastes sour and it is eaten as a fruit after cooking.



**4** Look through the vocabulary lists with vegetables and fruit once again and rearrange the words in two columns, explaining your decision according to the model.

Vegetables		Fruit	
<i>a carrot</i> 	<b>Model:</b> A <b>carrot</b> is a vegetable because the edible part of this plant is the root and it contains no seeds.	<i>a cucumber</i> 	<b>Model:</b> Botanically speaking, a <b>cucumber</b> is part of a flowering plant and has seeds in it, so it is a fruit.

**5**

**Read the text and say what berries are your favourite and what are your pet hates. Give some more advice if possible. Speak about fruit as well.**

If you have ever had the pleasure of picking berries right from a garden or gathering **wild berries** in the woods, you already know how wonderful fresh berries are. Ripe, sweet, juicy local berries are **a great treat** in summer. Berries don't ripen after picking, so choose bright, deeply colored berries. Berries are delicate creatures that are at their best eaten quickly after picking. Store them, if needed, covered and chilled. Adding sugar will help preserve their color. Rinse them under water just before eating or using. Most berries are naturally sweet and require little effort to prepare.

Berries are very good for your health. For instance:

- ✓ Blackberries, blueberries, raspberries, cranberries, strawberries may help to **reduce** your **risk** of several types of cancers.
- ✓ Blueberries and raspberries also contain lutein, which is important for healthy vision.
- ✓ Sour cherries, guelder rose berries, and lemon contain vitamin C and are great in an anti-flu diet.
- ✓ Raspberry is used to reduce running temperature.

**6**

**Write the names of fruit or berries that fit the following definition. Sometimes you need a plural form.**



**1.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a small, dark-brown, sticky fruit with a stone inside. It grows on palm trees in hot countries. **2.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a very large nut with a hairy shell, which has white flesh and milky juice inside it. **3.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a fruit with a brown hairy skin and green flesh. **4.** An \_\_\_\_\_ is a round fruit with smooth green, yellow, or red skin and firm white flesh. **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ are long curved fruit with yellow skins. **6.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a soft sweet fruit that grows in hot countries. It is full of tiny seeds and is often eaten dried. **7.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a round fruit with a thick reddish skin. It contains many small seeds with juicy flesh around them. **8.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a round, juicy fruit that is similar to a peach but has a smooth skin. **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ are Chinese fruit, which have white flesh and large stones inside and a pinkish-brown skin. **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ are small green or dark purple fruit, which grow in bunches. They can be eaten raw, dried or can be used for making wine. **11.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a soft, round, slightly furry fruit with sweet yellow flesh and pinky-orange skin. It grows in warm countries. **12.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a large, round, yellow or reddish fruit, similar to an orange. It has a sharp, slightly bitter taste. **13.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a green fruit that tastes like a lemon. It grows on trees in tropical countries. **14.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a sweet, juicy fruit, which is narrow near its stalk, and wider and rounded at the bottom. It has white flesh and a thin green or yellow



skin. **15.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a large round fruit (berry) with green skin, pink flesh, and black seeds. **16.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a small red berry, which is soft and juicy and has tiny yellow seeds on its skin. **17.** \_\_\_\_\_ are red berries with a sour taste. They are often used to make a sauce or jelly that you eat with meat. **18.** \_\_\_\_\_ are dried grapes. **19.** \_\_\_\_\_ are small, round fruit with red skins. **20.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a small green berry that has a sharp taste and is covered with tiny hairs. **21.** An \_\_\_\_\_ is a small, soft, round fruit with yellowish-orange flesh and a stone inside. **22.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a large juicy tropical fruit consisting of aromatic edible yellow flesh surrounded by a tough segmented skin and topped with a tuft of stiff leaves. **23.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a fruit with a green skin, sweet yellow flesh, and small black seeds. It grows on trees in hot countries such as the West Indies. **24.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a soft, orange sweet fruit that looks rather like a large tomato. It grows on trees in hot countries. **25.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a golden-yellow juicy fruit with a star-shaped cross section. **26.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a type of green banana, which can be cooked and eaten as a vegetable. **27.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a small sweet orange. **28.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a bright yellow fruit with very sour juice. **29.** \_\_\_\_\_ are small, soft, red berries that grow on bushes. **30.** A \_\_\_\_\_ is a dark purple or white berry from a tree that has small leaves on which silkworms can be fed. **31.** An \_\_\_\_\_ is an edible black or red berry, which grows on shrubs or trees bearing flat clusters of small white or pink strong-smelling flowers.



**7**

**Circle one odd word in each line. Transcribe each word.**

1. pear, plum, lettuce, pomegranate
2. strawberry, beetroot, aubergine, pumpkin
3. apple, carrot, onion, potato
4. banana, orange, peach, vegetable
5. currant, mulberry, gooseberry, quince
6. tangerine, persimmon, orange, grapefruit



**8**

**Divide these vegetable names into groups, in any way you like, e.g., vegetables that grow underground (potatoes, carrots), the healthiest vegetables, the most delicious, the best to be pickled, etc.**

aubergine	bell pepper	onion	potato
leek	garlic	parsnip	turnip
cucumber	cauliflower	cabbage	asparagus
spinach	marrow	celery	beetroot
carrot	tomato	radish	peas
broccoli	lettuce	pumpkin	mushroom

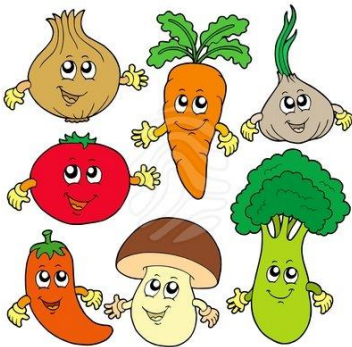




9

### Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you like to eat fruit? What's your favorite one?
- 2. How often do you eat fresh fruit and berries?
- 3. What's the most delicious fruit? Why? What is your pet hate fruit?
- 4. Do you like vegetables? What's your favorite one?
- 5. Do you think that fruit and vegetables are good for health? Why or why not?
- 6. Are you a vegetarian? If not would you like to be a vegetarian?
- 7. What kind of fruit or vegetable juice do you like? How often do you drink it?
- 8. Do you like to eat fruit salad? What are its ingredients?



- 9. What vegetables do you eat every day?
- 10. What vegetables do you like to eat in soups / salads / pickled / raw?
- 11. What kind of vegetables, berries, and fruit do you buy at the supermarket?
- 12. What are the most common berries, fruit, and vegetables in your country and what have come from other countries?
- 13. Do you cultivate berries, fruit or vegetables in your garden? What are they?
- 14. Do you like using things that have a fruit smell? (e.g., perfumes, erasers)
- 15. What is the meaning of the saying: "An apple a day keeps the doctor away?"
- 16. Are there any berries, fruit or vegetables that you have never tasted? What are they?
- 17. What fruit / vegetables / berries are sour / sweet / bitter?
- 18. What fruit / vegetables / berries are yellow / dark blue / green / orange / red / white?

10

### Translate into English.



1. Італійці полюбляють спаржу, тому що вона корисна та смачна. 2. Влітку я завжди їм салати з огірків, помідорів, цибулі, петрушки, латук та капусти. 3. Потрібно регулярно їсти цибулю та часник, щоб не захворіти холодною зимою. 4. Моя сестра не може жити без цитрусових: грейпфрутів, лимонів, мандаринів та апельсинів. 5. Вранці я часто п'ю полуничний сік та їм свіжий салат з фруктів: яблук, ананасів, груш, ківі, мандарин, хурми та слив, перемішаних з морозивом. 6. В нашому саду росте багато фруктових дерев; серед них такі як сливи, яблуні, вишні, персики та груші. Також ми вирощуємо на городі багато овочів, таких як цибуля-порей, салат-латук, спаржа, цибуля та інші. 7. Коли я готую для своєї родини, я намагаюсь використовувати найбільш корисні овочі:

моркву, столовий буряк, петрушку, селеру, цибулю та часник. **8.** Моя мама знає, що найкращим “лікарем” для очей є чорниця, полуниця та морква, а найголовніше для горла – малина. **9.** Одне яблуко вдень – і не потрібен жоден лікар. **10.** Я завжди додаю до салату з помідорів, огірків і цибулі петрушку, кріп, сіль та перець за смаком. **11.** Ми виростили вдома гарний садок, де знаходяться фруктові дерева і кущі: калина, смородина, ожина, груша, агрус, обліпіха. **12.** Кислі фрукти та ягоди, такі як агрус, апельсин, вишня, лимон, журавлина, порічки є корисними для здоров’я. **13.** У нашому погребі знаходяться великі запаси цибулі, гороху, квасолі, часнику, моркви та столового буряка. **14.** Баклажан і кабачок дуже схожі між собою за формою, але вони зовсім різняться від гарбуза. **15.** Такі фрукти як банан,



манго, фінік, інжир, грейпфрут, ківі, ананас, лимон і кокос постійно імпортуються в Україну. **16.** Існує багато видів овочів, які ми консервуємо: капуста, огірки, помідори, спаржа, кабачки, перець і багато інших. **17.** Буряк і морква – дуже корисні для нашого

здоров’я, ось тому ми повинні регулярно використовувати їх в їжу. **18.** Для мого улюбленого салату необхідні такі інгредієнти: 2 томати, 2 огірки, 5 редисок, 1 цибулина та сметана. **19.** Деякі сорти фруктів ми можемо їсти протягом всього року – це банан, апельсин, мандарин, ківі, грейпфрут, ананас та інші. **20.** Якщо ви хочете прикрасити свої страви на святковому столі, ви можете використати зелену цибулю, петрушку, салат-латук і кріп. **21.** Улюблена страва моєї сестри – це фруктовий салат, інгредієнтами якого є яблука, банани, ківі, апельсини і мандарини. **22.** Цього року моя бабуся посадила на своєму городі агрус, полуницю, порічки, кизил, суницю та малину. **23.** Мої улюблені консервовані фрукти – це жовті яблука, персики, ананаси, сливи та груші. **24.** Найкращі сорти червоного вина робляться зі спілого соковитого кримського винограду. А киш-миш використовується для приготування родзинок. **25.** Калина здавна була символом України, її народу і свободи. Українці часто використовують ягоди калини, щоб боротися з кашлем. **26.** Де ти зараз зимою знайдеш кабачки, баклажани або редиску? Краще купи щавель та столовий буряк, щоб ми зварили зелений борщ. **27.** Я їм багато яблук, але ніколи не куштувала манго, кокос, маракую і рідко їм ананаси. **28.** Моя мама смачно готує вишневий, абрикосовий, сливовий, яблучний та персиковий джеми, але мій улюблений – грушевий з ревінем. **29.** Мій брат ненавидить кислі фрукти та ягоди, тому йому більше до вподоби солодкі, такі як черешня, персик, ананас, полуниця, манго, кавун



і, особливо, апельсин. **30.** Соковита мускатна диня, кислий лайм і терпкий ревінь є гарним поєднанням для пирогів. **31.** Стиглі ягоди гарно смакують сирими, хоча варення з вишень та черешень також подобається моїм дітям.

## Meat and Eggs

### Vocabulary

<b>Meat</b>	<b>М'ясо</b>
beef	яловичина
• <i>a beefsteak</i>	• <i>біфштекс</i>
horseflesh	конина
lamb	ягнятина
mutton	баранина
pork	свинина
• <i>bacon</i>	• <i>бекон</i>
• <i>a rasher of bacon or ham</i>	• <i>тонкий шматочок бекону чи шинки</i>
• <i>cured pork fat</i>	• <i>сало, шпик (кусками)</i>
• <i>gammon</i>	• <i>окорок</i>
• <i>ham</i>	• <i>шинка</i>
• <i>a leg of pork</i>	• <i>свиняча ніжка</i>
• <i>lard</i>	• <i>лярд, топлений свинячий жир</i>
• <i>fat</i>	• <i>жир, сало</i>
• <i>cracklings</i>	• <i>шкварки</i>
veal	телятина
lean meat	пісне (нежирне) м'ясо
fat meat	жирне м'ясо
tender meat	м'яке, ніжне м'ясо
tough meat	тверде, жорстке м'ясо
<b>Cuts of Meat</b>	<b>Оброблені Частини М'яса</b>
a chop	відрубаний шматок
sirloin / fillet of ...	філей, філейна частина
a joint of ...	частина туші, кусок
a shoulder of ...	лопатка
a steak	шматок м'яса (для смаження)
minced / ground meat	фарш
stewing	гуляш (для тушкування)
ribs	реберця
<b>Offal</b>	<b>Потрухи, Тельбух</b>
brains	мозок
heart	серце
kidneys	нирки
liver	печінка
tongue	язик
tripe	рубець, шлунок

<b>Poultry</b>	<b>Свійська Птиця</b>
chicken	курятина
• <i>broiler / roasting chicken</i>	• <i>бройлер</i>
• <i>chicken breasts</i>	• <i>курячі грудки</i>
• <i>chicken wings</i>	• <i>курячі крильця</i>
• <i>chicken legs</i>	• <i>курячі стегенця</i>
• <i>drumsticks</i>	• <i>курячі ніжки (нижня частина)</i>
• <i>giblets</i>	• <i>потрухи птиці</i>
duck	качка
goose	гуска
turkey	індичатина
<b>Game</b>	<b>Дичина</b>
grouse	тетерів, шотландська куріпка
• <i>hazel grouse</i>	• <i>рябчик</i>
partridge	куріпка
pheasant	фазан
pigeon	голуб
quail	перепілка
rabbit	кролик
venison	оленина
wild boar	м'ясо дикої свині
<b>Sausage(s)</b>	<b>Ковбаси, Сосиски</b>
a small sausage	сарделька
boiled sausage	варена ковбаса
smoked sausage	копчена ковбаса
summer sausage	сирокопчена ковбаса
black pudding / blood sausage	кров'яна ковбаса
cervelat / saveloy	сервелат (ковбаса)
cold cuts	м'ясне асорті, м'ясна нарізка
a frankfurter / a wiener	сосиска / копчена сосиска
liver sausage / liverwurst	ліверна ковбаса
salami	салямі
<b>Meat Dishes</b>	<b>М'ясні Страви</b>
beef Stroganoff	бефстроганов
a burger	бургер
canned meat / tinned meat	м'ясні консерви
chicken Kiev	котлета по-київськи
chop	відбивна
cold baked pork	буженина
corned meat	солонина (засолене м'ясо)

a cutlet / a rissole	рублена котлета
an escalope	ескалоп (м'ясо з кісточкою)
French-style meat / Veal Orloff	м'ясо по-французьки
haggis	лівер в телячому рубці
a hamburger	гамбургер
headcheese	зельц
a hot dog	хот-дог
a meatball	фрикаделька; тефтелька
mixed grill	асорті зі смаженого м'яса на грилі
pâté / meat (liver) spread	паштет
schnitzel	шніцель
a steak	стейк
a stew	тушковане м'ясо, тушонка

An Egg	Яйце
• <i>a hen's</i> ~	• <i>куряче</i> ~
• <i>a quail's</i> ~	• <i>перепелине</i> ~
white / glair	білок
yolk	жовток
• <i>hard-boiled eggs</i>	• <i>яйця, зварені в круту</i>
• <i>soft-boiled eggs</i>	• <i>яйця, зварені в "смятку"</i>
• <i>scrambled eggs</i>	• <i>яєчня-бовтанка, омлет</i>
• <i>fried eggs sunny side up</i>	• <i>"глазунья"</i>
• <i>raw eggs</i>	• <i>сирі яйця</i>
• <i>poached eggs</i>	• <i>яйця-пашот</i>
• <i>eggs Benedict</i>	• <i>тост з шинкою, яйцем-пашот та скибочкою сиру</i>
omelet / omelette	омлет

Do you know that

- ✓ Eggs contain good quality **protein** and are a source of healthy fats including omega-3 fats.
- ✓ Beef Stroganoff was named after Count Paul Stroganoff, a 19<sup>th</sup>-century Russian diplomat.
- ✓ Chicken Kiev is considered one of the most delicious Ukrainian meat dishes.

11

**Transcribe the words from the left column. Match the words and phrases with their definitions.**

1. *meatball*                      a) meat that has very little fat in it
2. *liverwurst*                    b) flesh of any wild animal or bird, which is hunted and then eaten

3. *cervelat* c) a kind of black sausage made from minced pork fat, pig's blood, and other ingredients
4. *venison* d) a highly seasoned type of sausage, usually flavoured with garlic
5. *white meat* e) meat, such as beef or lamb that is red before it is cooked and dark after you have cooked it
6. *a hot dog* f) a sausage made of or containing liver
7. *game* g) a soft paste made of minced meat with various flavourings, and is eaten cold
8. *lean meat* h) salted or smoked meat from the upper part of a pig's leg, it can be kept for a long period of time
9. *haggis* i) a long bread roll with a hot sausage inside it
10. *schnitzel* j) minced beef that is cooked in a flat round shape and served in a bread bun
11. *a drumstick* k) a thin slice of veal or other light meat, coated in breadcrumbs and fried
12. *pâté* l) the lower part of the leg of a chicken which is cooked and eaten
13. *black pudding* m) a smoked sausage made from pork and beef
14. *red meat* n) meat that is cut into very small pieces, shaped into a ball, and cooked
15. *salami* o) flesh of a deer, used as food
16. *burger* p) a large Scottish sausage, usually shaped like a ball, made from minced sheep's meat contained inside the skin from a sheep's stomach
17. *ham* q) meat that is pale after you have cooked

12

🔊 Listen to the speaker telling about meat and eggs. Fill in the gaps. Answer the questions below.

### *Meat*



I'm 1. \_\_\_\_\_. I love meat of all kinds. I have eaten 2. \_\_\_\_\_. Even though I love meat, I could easily stop eating it, and I don't 3. \_\_\_\_\_. A long time ago I heard the vegetarian slogan "Meat is Murder". If you think about it, that's true. I don't think animals are 4. \_\_\_\_\_ us to eat, especially when we don't need to eat meat. And then there's 5. \_\_\_\_\_ global warming today. Raising animals needs land. Many forests are 6. \_\_\_\_\_ raise cows for meat. This really has to stop. Instead of meat, there are other things we could have. Dairy products would give 7. \_\_\_\_\_ we need. I know a lot of people who could never give up meat. They always say it would be 8. \_\_\_\_\_ without a big, juicy steak.



## Eggs



Eggs are great. Where **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ without them? They are so useful. **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ life or cooking without them. There are many ways of cooking eggs for breakfast – fried eggs, scrambled eggs, boiled eggs, etc. There are **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ of “cooking” these. You can have a runny or hard fried egg or even have it **4.** \_\_\_\_\_. You can **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ hard-boiled **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ scrambled eggs. There are also many things **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ top of eggs – mayonnaise, ketchup, salt, soy sauce. Each country has something different. I like cooking with eggs. I particularly like breaking them. I **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ it with one hand, without breaking the yolk. Sometimes it gets messy and **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ starts dripping **10.** \_\_\_\_\_.

- **1.** Are you a meat-eater?
- **2.** Which of these kinds of meat and sausage are your favourite?
- **3.** Which wouldn't you eat for a million dollars?
- **4.** How often do you eat eggs? How do you eat them?

13

**a) Read the title of the article first. Use it to figure out what the article might be about. Then read the article and say whether your predictions were right or wrong.**

### *To Meat or Not to Meat*



The term *vegetarianism* became part of the English lexicon around 1847. There are several reasons for people to be vegetarians. Although vegetarianism is not common in western cultures, some groups, such as Hindus and Buddhists, have been practicing it as part of their religions for hundreds of years. For others, it is a moral choice. They believe that killing animals for food is inhumane. And still others who have **turned away from** eating meat believe that a **non-meat diet** is healthier. Meat, especially red meat, is high in **saturated fats** and **cholesterol**, which can lead to heart attacks. Some vegetarians are “**hardliners**” and refuse to eat any meat, seafood, or animal products, such as eggs or milk. Others **draw the line at** red meat and poultry, but allow themselves dairy products and fish.

As meat is a good source of **protein** and other **essential nutrients**, it is a valued part of the western diet. However, it is possible to get protein through non-meat sources such as vegetables, legumes, grains and dairy products without consuming as much of the harmful fats.

**b) Find the English equivalents in the text.**

Вегетаріанець, бути широко розповсюдженим (поширеним) у західній культурі, вбивати заради їжі, відвернутися від чогось (перестати щось

робити), протеїн, неодмінний, поживні речовини, споживати, молочні продукти, негуманний, насичені жири, холестерин, призводить до чогось, серцевий напад, ставити межу.

c) Answer the questions.



- 1. Who are vegetarians?
- 2. What essential nutrients do meat products contain?
- 3. Are you a vegetarian? Are there any moral religious or health issues involved?
- 4. Have you ever considered modifying your diet? Why? Why not?

14

🔊 Listen to the speaker telling about vegetarianism. Unjumble the sentences.

### Vegetarianism

1) in everyone If vegetarian a was world the, I think the world would be a better place. There simply isn't enough 2) and any sheep more to for feed cows land on. We are losing 3) many too want farmers because forests more land 4) we so cows raise to beef eat can. Vegetarianism is one way to help the Earth. It's also one way to help ourselves. 5) us eat are So fat many because of we too much meat. If we were all vegetarian, we would all be healthier. 6) eat all more need vegetables to We. That's the easiest way of looking after our health. If we were all vegetarian, 7) of we also lots money would save on healthcare. 8) wouldn't all heart We have the problems that you get with eating meat. I wonder if we can all stop eating meat.

15

a) Read the following text. Translate it into Ukrainian. Discuss it with your group mates.

### The Hamburger



The hamburger **has no connection** to ham. It got its name from the German town of Hamburg, which **was famous for** its **ground steak**. German immigrants to the United States introduced the "hamburger steak".

At the St. Louis World's Fair in 1904, hamburger steaks were served on buns for the first time. Hamburgers on buns were convenient and tasted good. This became the usual way of eating hamburgers.

How did the hamburger become the most popular, most typical American food? The **introduction** of the bun is an important part of the answer. Another important part is McDonald's, the fast-food restaurant.

The first McDonald's was opened in San Bernadino, California, in 1949. Hamburgers were the main item **on** its **menu**. People liked the restaurant's fast



service. By the 1960s, there were many McDonald's restaurants. McDonald's was part of nearly every community in the United States. There were also other fast-food restaurants that sold hamburgers. McDonald's alone sold millions of hamburgers a year.

Today, of course, there are McDonald's restaurants around the world. The food they serve is considered typically American. And, although McDonald's **has expended** its menu, the main item on that menu is – as always – the hamburger.

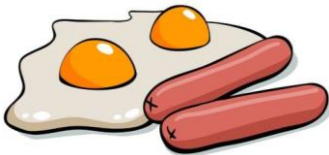


**b) Write five GOOD questions about hamburgers. Do this in pairs. Each student must write the questions on his/her own paper. When you have finished, interview other students. Write down their answers.**

	Student 1	Student 2	Student 3
Question 1			
Question 2			
Question 3			
Question 4			
Question 5			

16

**Translate into English.**



**1.** У м'ясоному магазині ви зможете купити яловичину, свинину, баранину, ягнятину, телятину, сало і фарш. **2.** Тобі треба скоротити вживання сала та свинини, а натомість їсти м'ясо кролика, адже воно пісне. **3.** Ми купуємо дичину на базарі, а кров'янку готуємо самі. **4.** Сьогодні я збираюся приготувати котлети по-київськи та відбивні, адже до мене прийдуть гості. **5.** В шкільній їдальні вчора був гарний вибір м'ясних страв: сосиски, котлети, сардельки, курячі крильця, тефтельки та варена ковбаса. **6.** Для наваристого холодцю завжди потрібно використовувати яловичину з жилами і хрящами, курятину чи свинину. **7.** Оскільки м'ясо по-французьки можна готувати без єдиної краплі олії, його можна сміливо зарахувати до дієтичних страв, що корисні і дорослим, і малцям. **8.** Подивіться, яким ніжним і запашним вийшло м'ясо, тушковане з чорносливом. **9.** Харчування сучасної людини складається з різноманітних продуктів рослинного і тваринного походження, однак м'ясні страви залишилися в числі найбільш улюблених і популярних страв. **10.** На сніданок я зазвичай їм смажені або варені яйця. До речі, я вмю готувати всі види страв з яєць: в круту чи в "смятку" зварені яйця, яйця-пашот, "глазунью" чи омлет, але моя улюблена страва це яєчня-бовтанка. А от сирі яйця я не люблю. **11.** Яйця дуже смачний і корисний продукт, який відмінно підходить для дієтичного

харчування, як в сирому, так і звареному вигляді. Крім того, варені яйця – частий інгредієнт в різних салатах і стравах. **12.** Якщо вас цікавить, скільки варити перепелині яйця в круту, то це всього 5 хвилин в киплячій воді. Перепелині яйця в “смятку” варяться всього кілька хвилин. **13.** Яйця-пашот являють собою яйця, зварені без шкаралупи. Вони відмінно підходять не тільки для салатів і приготування бутербродів, а й гарні в якості окремої страви. **14.** Яйця є, напевно, найпростішим блюдом, здатним вгамувати апетит і отримати при цьому багатий комплекс вітамінів і корисних речовин для організму. **15.** Перепелині яйця вважаються дуже цінним гіпоалергенним продуктом, який рекомендовано в якості елемента раціону харчування для дітей. **16.** Хочете дізнатися, варене яйце або сире? Крутоніть його на столі. Швидкі обертання скажуть вам про те, що яйце вже готове. **17.** Підсолена вода під час варіння – відмінне рішення, щоб легко почистити яйця. **18.** Суворі вегетаріанці – вегани – не вживають м’ясо тварин і птахів, яйця, молоко і молочні продукти. **19.** Скибочка твердого сиру, яйце-пашот, шинка на тості – це і є фірмова страва мого батька, яку він готує на сніданок по суботах. **20.** Вегани вживають винятково їжу рослинного походження. **21.** Суворі вегетаріанці повинні споживати їжу, збагачену вітаміном В-12 або використовувати відповідні вітамінні добавки. **22.** Вегетаріанство – один із різновидів систем харчування людей, за якої виключаються продукти тваринного походження.

## Fish and Seafood

### Vocabulary

Fish	Риба
anchovy	анчоус, хамса; кілька
bullhead / miller’s thumb / goby	бичок
carp	короп
catfish / sheatfish	сом
cod	тріска
crucian	карась
eel	вугор
flying fish	летюча риба
gilthead	дорада
haddock	пікша, морський окунь
hake	хек
halibut / turbot	палтус
herring	оселедець
• <i>hard roe</i>	• ікра (в оселедці)
• <i>soft roe</i>	• молоки (в оселедці)

kipper / smoked fish	копчена риба
mackerel	скумбрія, макрель
perch	окунь
pike	щука
plaice / flounder	камбала / дрібна камбала
roach	плотва, вобла, тарань, плітка
salmon	лосось
• <i>Atlantic salmon, summer salmon</i>	• сьомга
• <i>humpback salmon</i>	• горбуша
sardine / pilchard	сардина
shark	акула
sole	морський язик
sprats	шпроти, кілька, тюлька, вся дрібна риба
sturgeon	осетер
trout	форель
tuna / tunny	тунець
whiting	мерлуза
zander	судак
black caviar(e)	чорна ікра
red caviar(e)	червона ікра
soft caviar(e)	зерниста ікра
bony fish	костиста риба
sea / saltwater fish	морська риба
freshwater fish	прісноводна риба
white fish	біла риба
oily fish	жирна риба
<b>Fish Dishes</b>	<b>Рибні Страви</b>
chowder / fish soup / bisque	уха, густа юшка з риби
fishball	рибна фрикаделька
baked fish	запечена риба
boiled ~	варена ~
dried ~	сушена, в'ялена ~
fried ~	смажена ~
grilled ~	смажена на грилі ~
~ in a sauce	~ під соусом
~ in a soup	~ у супі
~ in a stew	~ тушкована з овочами
jellied ~	заливна ~
marinated ~	маринована ~

raw ~	сира ~
salted ~	солена ~
scalloped ~	смажена в тісті ~
smoked ~	копчена ~
stuffed ~	фарширована ~
<b>Seafood</b>	<b>Морепродукти</b>
cockle / clam	їстівний молюск
crab	краб
• <i>crab sticks</i>	• <i>крабові палички</i>
• <i>crab meat</i>	• <i>крабове м'ясо</i>
crayfish	річковий рак
laminaria	морська капуста
lobster	омар
mussel	мідія
octopus / pouple	восьминіг
oyster	устриця
prawn / shrimp	креветка (велика) / креветка (маленька)
• <i>prawn / shrimp cocktail</i>	• <i>салат з креветок</i>
scallop	морський гребінець
seaweed	морська водорість
shellfish	молюск, ракоподібні
squid	кальмар

### Do you know that

- ✓ Eating fish regularly can be very **beneficial** for your health, and it can help **reduce risk of** some heart **diseases**.
- ✓ For adults, at least two **servings** of fish per week are recommended.
- ✓ Fish is **high in** protein, **low in** calories, and is **rich in** omega 3 acids. These **acids** are very important for a **healthy lifestyle**, and cannot be produced by our bodies naturally.

17

Fill in the gaps with the verbs in brackets in the relevant tense form and answer the questions below.

### *Once a Baptist – Always a Baptist*



John Smith was the only Protestant to move into a large Catholic neighborhood. On the first Friday of Lent, John 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) outside grilling a big juicy steak on his grill. Meanwhile, all of his neighbors 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*eat*) cold tuna fish for supper. This 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) on each Friday of Lent. On the

last Friday of Lent, the neighborhood men 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) together and 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*decide*) that something 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) to be done about John, he was tempting them to eat meat each Friday of Lent, and they couldn't take it anymore.

They 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*decide*) to try and convert John to be a Catholic. They 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) over and 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*talk*) to him and 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) so happy that he 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*decide*) to join all of his neighbors and become a Catholic. They 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) him to Church, and the Priest 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*sprinkle*) some water over him, and 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*say*), "You 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) born a Baptist, you 16. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) raised a Baptist, and now you 17. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a Catholic".

The men 18. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) so relieved, now their biggest Lenten temptation 19. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) resolved. The next year's Lenten season 20. \_\_\_\_\_ (*roll*) around. The first Friday of Lent 21. \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*), and just at supper time, when the neighborhood 22. \_\_\_\_\_ (*set*) down to their tuna fish dinner, 23. \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) the wafting smell of steak cooking on a grill.

The neighborhood men could not believe their noses! WHAT 24. \_\_\_\_\_ (*GO*) ON? They 25. \_\_\_\_\_ (*call*) each other up and 26. \_\_\_\_\_ (*decide*) to meet over in John's yard to see if he 27. \_\_\_\_\_ (*forget*) it 28. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) the first Friday of Lent. The group 29. \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*) just in time to see John standing over his grill with a small pitcher of water. He 30. \_\_\_\_\_ (*sprinkle*) some water over his steak on the grill, saying, "You 31. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) born a cow, you 32. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) raised a cow, and now you 33. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a fish".

- 1. Which do you prefer: fish or meat? Why?
- 2. How do Lent followers change their diet?
- 3. Is Lent good for health? Why or why not?
- 4. Do you keep to Lent? Why or why not?

18

🎧 Listen to the speaker telling about fish. Fill in the gaps. Answer the questions below.

### *Fish*

I think fish 1. \_\_\_\_\_ interesting creatures on the planet. They are absolutely fascinating. I love their 2. \_\_\_\_\_, colours, social behaviour, everything. I can watch tropical fish 3. \_\_\_\_\_ for hours. Even 4. \_\_\_\_\_ fish are so beautiful. When I go to the city aquarium, I 5. \_\_\_\_\_ whole morning or afternoon looking at the fish. I don't have a favourite fish. I must 6. \_\_\_\_\_ watching the movie "Finding Nemo" I do now like clownfish. As well as looking at fish, I also love eating them. Tuna is my favourite, especially 7. \_\_\_\_\_. When I visit Japan, the first thing 8. \_\_\_\_\_ a sushi restaurant. Raw fish 9. \_\_\_\_\_ tastier than cooked fish. And probably 10. \_\_\_\_\_.

- 1. What kind of fish do you prefer: fresh water or sea fish?
- 2. What fish is your favourite? What is your favourite way of cooking fish?
- 3. How often and what seafood do you eat?

19

Read the dialogue between John and Linda. Express your viewpoint on the issue of seafood and fish dishes.

- John:** I've been getting lazy with my cooking lately and I just bought some salmon burgers at the supermarket.
- Linda:** *Wow! They sound good.*
- John:** Yes, I thought so too.
- Linda:** *I always find it interesting when they make different meats into burger form, but salmon in a burger sounds great as they are good to have in a sandwich.*
- John:** Yeah, you're right; seafood is generally not something that is graced with burger format.
- Linda:** *That's true; it's usually chowders or bisques. My favourite is crab bisque.*
- John:** Crab bisque is very tasty, but honestly, I love sushi and just eating fish.
- Linda:** *Yeah, that makes sense. But don't you love a good lobster roll?*
- John:** I love a good lobster roll. If I could get a lobster in burger form, I would buy it straight away.
- Linda:** *Of course, me too, I guess a lobster roll is kind of a lobster in burger form as it is a sandwich.*
- John:** OK, obviously you and I love our seafood. Do people give you complain if you open a tuna or salmon sandwich at work?
- Linda:** *I don't usually eat any sandwich or salad at work that has fish in it, because it can make the room smell.*
- John:** Yes, you are right, sometimes in the summer I eat my lunch outside, so a fish sandwich or salad is fine then.

20

Read the text about *sushi*, the traditional Japanese fish dish. Answer the questions below.

### *Sushi*



Sushi is a traditional food from Japan. It is a popular dish in other countries as well, such as America, Canada, and the UK, along with many other countries.

Sushi is made with specially prepared rice. The rice is mixed with vinegar, salt, and sugar. Sushi also contains raw or cooked seafood, and sometimes vegetables as well. Sometimes sushi is wrapped in a sheet of seaweed called **nori**.

There are many different kinds of sushi. The most common sushi in Japan is **nigirizushi**: fish that is placed on top of a small portion of sushi rice. Sometimes you may find other ingredients on top of rice, such as egg instead of fish. **Makizushi** consists of rice rolled around fish and/or vegetables. In America, makizushi is more popular than nigirizushi. Another type is known as **temaki** or

a **hand roll**. This kind of sushi comes in a cone-shape, created by the nori wrapped around the ingredients inside. They are usually filled with a mixture of rice, fish, and vegetables.

Sushi can be eaten with hands or chopsticks. **Soy sauce** and **wasabi** are commonly eaten with sushi. **Gari** (sweet, pickled ginger) can often be found alongside a plate of sushi, used as a palate cleanser.

In Japan, sushi is sometimes sold in “conveyor-belt shops” called **kaiten zushi**, where plates of sushi are put on a moving belt that passes by the customers. People freely take the sushi they want as it passes. The color of the plate shows the price of the sushi. This way of serving sushi is becoming more popular in other countries as well.

- 1. Have you ever tried sushi? Do you know what it is like?
- 2. Can you make sushi?
- 3. Is there any equivalent dish in Ukraine?
- 4. What side dishes usually go with sushi?

21

### Give the English equivalents.



Фарширована щука, оливки з анчоусами, смажений короп, солений оселедець, копчена скумбрія, сира риба, омар, консервований тунець, заливна горбуша, смажений на грилі лосось, сардини у томатному соусі, шпроти в олії, в'ялені бички, смажений у тісті хек, тріска тушена з морквою та цибулею, запечена камбала, прісноводна риба, мідії, благотворний (корисний) для здоров'я, зменшувати ризик захворювань, порція, жирна риба, бути багатим на вітаміни, мати високий вміст протеїну, мати низький вміст калорій, здоровий спосіб життя, морська водорість, креветки з часником, крабові палички, суші з імбирем.

22

### Translate into English.



1. Короп та карась є найпопулярнішими видами річкової риби в Україні. Зазвичай, люди цю рибу смажать, запікають, з неї варять уху, тушкують з морквою, цибулею та столовим буряком. 2. Тунець та форель популярні в англомовних країнах. У кафе вам запропонують бутерброд з тунцем та чай чи каву. 3. Яка їжа для нас добра? М'ясо, риба, морепродукти, яйця, молоко, овочі, фрукти та хліб. 4. Тобі подобаються дари моря? Я думаю, вони дуже смачні і пікантні, але в своєму житті я куштувала лише креветки та устриці. Але я не люблю смажену, мариновану, копчену чи фаршировану рибу. Взагалі, я не їм рибу ні в якому виді. 5. Я люблю різні рибні страви і

їм їх із задоволенням. М'ясні страви я їм теж, але надаю перевагу рибним. Я їм рибу у будь-якому виді. **6.** Я надаю перевагу більше риби, ніж м'ясу, особливо лососю, тому що риба корисна. **7.** Я не люблю рибу. Я краще почну з салату із креветок, потім візьму відбивну котлету з свинини та молоду картоплю. **8.** Я не люблю річкову рибу, але мені дуже подобаються морепродукти, особливо мідії, кальмари та устриці. Вони дуже добре підходять до соусу на фруктовій основі. **9.** Риба та молочні продукти несумісні, тому оселедець та кефір поєднуватися не можуть.

## Cereals and Grasses

### Vocabulary

Cereals and Grasses	Зернові, Каші та Злаки
cereal	хлібний злак, каша, сухий сніданок
grass	злак
grains	зерно
groats	крупа
• <i>barley</i>	• <i>ячмінь</i>
• <i>buckwheat</i>	• <i>гречка</i>
• <i>bulgar / bulgur</i>	• <i>булгур</i>
• <i>couscous</i>	• <i>кускус</i>
• <i>maize / corn</i>	• <i>кукурудза</i>
• <i>millet</i>	• <i>просо, пионо</i>
• <i>oats / oatmeal</i>	• <i>овес / вівсяна крупа або каша</i>
• <i>pearl barley</i>	• <i>перловка</i>
• <i>rice</i>	• <i>рис</i>
• <i>rye</i>	• <i>жито</i>
• <i>semolina</i>	• <i>манка</i>
• <i>wheat</i>	• <i>пшениця</i>
pilaff	плов
porridge	каша (часто вівсяна, геркулес)
• <i>pumpkin porridge</i>	• <i>гарбузова каша</i>
granola	гранола (підсолоджена вівсянка з додаванням горіхів і родзинок)
gruel	рідка вівсяна каша
flakes	пластівці
• <i>cornflakes</i>	• <i>кукурудзяні пластівці</i>
• <i>multigrain flakes</i>	• <i>багатозернові пластівці</i>
muesli	мюслі



Do you know that

- ✓ **Porridge** is a hot cereal boiled in water or milk. It can be made from any type of grain, vegetables or even some legumes. It is usually served hot in a bowl.
- ✓ The term is often used specifically for **oat** porridge, which is eaten for breakfast with salt, sugar, fruit, milk, cream or butter and sometimes other flavorings.
- ✓ The hot cereal is rich in **fiber**, has high protein content and helps stabilize your blood sugar.

23

🔊 **Listen to the speaker telling about rice. Fill in the gaps. Answer the questions below.**

### *Rice*

Rice is a very important food around the world, and I love it. Rice is **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ to be able to eat lots of. It doesn't matter if there's **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ rice on my plate, I can eat it all. Billions of people eat rice every day. Billions of people **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ three times a day. I could eat rice three times a day, but I don't. **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ I could eat rice for breakfast. That's because I'm English. Lunch and dinner are different, I can eat **5.** \_\_\_\_\_. The **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ rice is that if you go to an Indian, Chinese, Japanese, Thai or Mexican restaurant, there's rice on the menu. **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ different. Indian Basmati rice with curry is awesome; Japanese rice in sushi is heaven; and Thai **8.** \_\_\_\_\_.

- **1.** Do you like porridge? Which one is your favourite? Do you eat it for breakfast?
- **2.** What ingredients (milk, nuts, raisins, candied fruits, etc.) do you prefer your porridge with?
- **3.** Are cereals and grasses good to be part of a diet? Why?

24

**Read and guess the answers.**



**1.** It is the staple diet in the East. \_\_\_\_\_ **2.** It is tasty boiled on the cob. \_\_\_\_\_ **3.** It is used to feed chickens. \_\_\_\_\_ **4.** It is used to make black bread and cattle food. \_\_\_\_\_ **5.** It is used in brewing and soups; malt is made of it. \_\_\_\_\_ **6.** It is good to make white bread and most pasta. \_\_\_\_\_ **7.** Most porridge is made of it. It is also used to feed horses. \_\_\_\_\_ **8.** American whiskey is made of it. \_\_\_\_\_

25

**Translate into English.**



**1.** В мене є завжди вдома гречка, рис, перлова крупа, щоб швидко зварити суп чи кашу. **2.** Манна каша корисна для дітей, але вони не люблять її. А от кукурудзяна каша з молоком подобається їм набагато більше. **3.** Я терпіти не можу перлову кашу, проте залюбки їм рис з свіжими овочами або відбивною.

4. Рис використовується для приготування суші. 5. Кукурудзяна каша гарно смакує на пікніку в лісі. 6. Україна славиться вирощуванням та експортом зерна, особливо жита та пшениці. 7. Якщо до манної каші додати трішки молока та масла, вона смакує як в дитинстві. 8. Мій брат їсть гарбузову кашу з сіллю та оливками, а я люблю її з родзинками та медом. 9. Якщо ви не маєте часу вдень, то можете перекусити гранолою. Вона як смачна, так і корисна. 10. Моя тітка завжди мені купувала кукурудзяні пластівці в дитинстві. Проте, зараз я надаю перевагу мюслям. 11. Дуже корисно їсти різні каші. Багато хто не любить манну кашу, яку можливо, переїв у дитинстві. Але я раз на день, в основному на сніданок, їм або гречану, або рисову, або вівсяну кашу. 12. Зараз у крамниці можна купити мюслі з родзинками, курагою та різними цукатами. Ви просто додаєте до них гаряче молоко і одержуєте ситний сніданок. 13. Восени моя мама часто готує гарбузову кашу, оскільки вона дуже корисна. Зазвичай, вона додає до неї рис і мені це подобається. А ось мій тато любить її з пшоном. Щодо мого молодшого брата, так він терпіти її не може ні в якому вигляді.



## Bread and Pastry, Pasta

### Vocabulary

Bread and Pastry	Хліб та Борошняні Вироби
bread	хліб
• <i>brown / black ~</i>	• чорний хліб
• <i>rye ~</i>	• житній хліб
• <i>wheat ~</i>	• пшеничний хліб
• <i>white ~</i>	• білий хліб
• <i>whole meal ~</i>	• хліб з висівками
• <i>a loaf of ~</i>	• буханка хліба
• <i>a slice of ~</i>	• скибка хліба
• <i>a crust of ~</i>	• скоринка хліба
• <i>fresh ~</i>	• свіжий хліб
• <i>stale ~</i>	• черствий хліб
bread crumbs	панірувальні сухарі; хлібні крихти
bran	висівки
crispbread	хлібці
French loaf / French stick / baguette	багет
long loaf / white loaf	батон
bun	здобна булочка
roll	рогалик, булочка, рулет
bagel / round / cracknel / ring	бублик

rusk	сухар
confectionery	кондитерські вироби
biscuit / cookie	сухе печиво
cracker	крекер
crunches	сухі сніданки
shortbread	пісочне печиво
gingerbread	імбирний пряник
honey-cake	медовий коржик
scone	пшеничний коржик з ізюмом
waffle / wafer	вафелька
croissant	круасан
puff	слойка, листовий пиріг
cake	торт, кекс, тістечко, пряник
fancy cake / pastry	тістечко
sponge cake	бісквіт
tipsy cake	бісквіт, просочений ромом або вином
trifle	бісквіт, залитий збитими вершками
cheese cake	чізкейк, сирний пиріг, ватрушка
layer cake	листовий пиріг (у декілька шарів)
tree cake	торт (у декілька ярусів як на весіллі)
muffin	гаряча здоба
patty	пиріжок
pasty / pastie	пиріжок з м'ясною або овочевою начинкою
pie	пиріг
pie à la mode	фруктовий пиріг з морозивом
tart	пиріг з ягодами, фруктами, варенням, домашній торт
flan	відкритий пиріг з ягодами
roly-poly pudding	рулет з варенням
custard	заварний крем
soufflé	суфле
frosting	глазур
icing sugar	цукрова глазур
curd fritter / cheese pancake	сирник
potato fritter / potato flapjack / hashbrown	дерун, драник
doughnut / donut	пончик, смажений пиріжок
pancake / crepe	млинець (тонкий)
puff pastry	листова тісто

pancake batter	тісто для млинців
dough	дріжджове тісто
flour	мука
cornflour	кукурудзяна мука
yeast	дріжджі

<b>Pasta</b>	<b>Макаронні Вироби</b>
dumpling	галушка, кльоцка, вареник
lasagna	лазанья
macaroni	макарони
noodles	локшина
ravioli	равіолі
rigatoni	ріжки
spaghetti	спагеті
vermicelli	вермішель

Do you know that

- ✓ Bread, in all its various forms, is **the most widely consumed** food in the world.
- ✓ In one form or another, bread has been one of the principal forms of food for man from earliest times.
- ✓ In **Slavic cultures** bread and salt is offered as a welcome to guests.
- ✓ In ancient Egypt, bread was a form of currency used interchangeably with money.
- ✓ Pasta was first eaten in China, not Italy.
- ✓ There are more than 600 different shapes of pasta produced throughout the world.

26

Read and translate the following text. Add other facts about bread.

### *Bread Miscellanea*

✚ **Bread** is a **staple food** made of **flour** mixed with milk or water, made into **dough**, with or without **yeast** or other **leavening agent**, and baked. Bread often contains additional ingredients, such as eggs, butter or salt **to improve the taste**.



✚ Proportions of types of flour and other ingredients vary widely, as well as ways of preparation. As a result, types, shapes, sizes, and textures of bread differ around the world.

✚ The inner part of the bread encased by the crust is called the “**crumb**”, that is why small bits of this part of the bread are called **crumbs**.

- ✚ Bread may be served in different forms at any meal of the day, eaten as a snack and is even used as an ingredient in other culinary preparations. It is a healthy and **nutritious** food that fills the stomach as well as the soul.
- ✚ **Toast** is sliced bread that was browned.
- ✚ **French toast** is a dish traditionally made of stale bread soaked in eggs whisked with milk, then fried. French toast was not invented in France. In fact, French toast was around long before France even existed as a country. The exact origins of French toast are unknown, but it isn't surprising that people liked the recipe quickly, given that French toast is traditionally made of stale bread.
- ✚ The **sandwich** is named after John Montagu, the 4<sup>th</sup> Earl of Sandwich, who is said to have asked his servant to bring him meat stuffed between two slices of bread so that he would be less inconvenienced while out hunting, playing cards, and just generally being a rich gentleman on the go. Apparently, his friends took notice and asked for "the same as Sandwich". And so, the name stuck.
- ✚ **Sliced bread** is a loaf of bread that has been sliced with a machine and packaged for convenience. It was first sold in 1928, advertised as "the greatest forward step in the baking industry since bread was wrapped". This led to the popular phrase "*the best thing since sliced bread*".



27

🗨️ **Answer the following questions using topical vocabulary.**

- 1. What kind of bread do you usually buy for your family? What kinds of bread does each member of your family prefer?
- 2. How often do you buy pastry? What kinds of pastry do you like?
- 3. Most British people begin their morning with a glass of juice, cereals, jam on toast and tea. And what about you?
- 4. Vermicelli, macaroni and spaghetti are Italian national dishes but they have become popular in many countries in the world. Why do you think it happened?
- 5. What is your favourite kind of pasta? How do you like it?
- 6. Can you make bread? What kind of bread do you bake?
- 7. What flour can be used to make bread?
- 8. What additional ingredients go into bread?
- 9. How often do you eat bread? What part is your favourite?
- 10. Do you have family traditions connected with bread? What are they?
- 11. Do you include bran in your diet? How often do you eat it?
- 12. What cakes do you prefer? Can you make them?
- 13. What are good fillings for pies?



Transcribe the words from the left column. Match the words and phrases with their definitions.

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>bagel</i>             | a) a sweet yellow sauce made from milk and eggs or from milk and a powder. It is eaten with fruit and puddings.  |
| 2. <i>croissant</i>         | b) a sweet substance made from powdered sugar that is used to cover and decorate cakes   |
| 3. <i>roly-poly pudding</i> | c) a white or brown powder that is made by grinding grain. It is used to make bread, cakes, and pastry.  |
| 4. <i>a trifle</i>          | d) consists of meat, vegetables, or fruit baked in pastry  |
| 5. <i>crumbs</i>            | e) a very thin, light, crisp, sweet cookie, especially one of a kind eaten with ice cream  |
| 6. <i>muffins</i>           | f) pasta in the form of wide strips  |
| 7. <i>sponge cake</i>       | g) the outer skin of grain that is left when the grain has been used to make flour   |
| 8. <i>custard</i>           | h) a thin, flat cake of batter, usually fried and turned in a pan. It is often rolled up or folded and eaten hot with a sweet or savoury filling inside. |
| 9. <i>a tart</i>            | i) a small bread roll, can be sweet and contain dried fruit or spices  |
| 10. <i>a doughnut</i>       | j) a thin, crisp biscuit which is often eaten with cheese  |
| 11. <i>cheese cake</i>      | k) a cold British dessert made of layers of sponge cake, jelly, fruit, and custard, and usually covered with cream                                       |
| 12. <i>a wafer</i>          | l) tiny pieces that fall from bread, biscuits, or cake when you cut it or eat it   |
| 13. <i>a biscuit</i>        | m) sweets and chocolates considered collectively   |
| 14. <i>frosting</i>         | n) a French crescent-shaped roll made of sweet puff pastry, often eaten for breakfast  |
| 15. <i>lasagna</i>          | o) small, round, sweet cakes, usually with fruit or bran inside. They are often eaten hot with butter for breakfast.                                     |
| 16. <i>bran</i>             | p) a very light cake made from flour, eggs, and sugar  |
| 17. <i>a pancake</i>        | q) a type of long, thin, white bread, which is traditionally made in France  |
| 18. <i>shortbread</i>       | r) a small flat cake that is crisp and usually sweet   |
| 19. <i>a bun</i>            | s) a light, dry biscuit or a piece of twice-baked bread, especially one prepared for use as baby food  |
| 20. <i>a scone</i>          | t) a sweet pastry dough covered with jam or fruit, formed into a roll, and boiled, steamed, or baked   |
| 21. <i>flour</i>            | u) a small unsweetened or lightly sweetened cake made from flour, fat, and milk with raisins   |
| 22. <i>baguette</i>         | v) a crisp, rich, crumbly type of biscuit made with butter, flour, and sugar   |

23. *confectionary* w) a kind of rich sweet tart made with cream and soft cheese on a biscuit base
24. *a cracker* x) a bread-like cake made from sweet dough that has been cooked in hot fat
25. *a pie* y) a ring-shaped bread roll
26. *a rusk* z) an open pastry case containing a sweet or savoury filling

29

🔊 Listen to the speaker telling about pasta and pizza. Fill in the gaps. Answer the questions below.

### *Pasta*

I love pasta of all kinds. Anything 1. \_\_\_\_\_ delicious, especially if it's from Italy. For many countries, pasta 2. \_\_\_\_\_ the menu. In England just after the War, there was no pasta. Once, a newspaper 3. \_\_\_\_\_ photo of a spaghetti tree. Today, everyone in England 4. \_\_\_\_\_. It's one of the most 5. \_\_\_\_\_ world. Spaghetti Bolognese and lasagna are now international dishes. What I don't know is how many different types of pasta there are. Hundreds, I think. 6. \_\_\_\_\_ and colours. What I do know is that they are all delicious. Pasta 7. \_\_\_\_\_ because it has so many uses. You can also 8. \_\_\_\_\_ or when it's cold.

### *Pizza*

Everybody loves pizza. It 1. \_\_\_\_\_ popular food in the world. I don't know 2. \_\_\_\_\_ like it. I absolutely love pizza. I'll eat any 3. \_\_\_\_\_ the day or night. Hot pizza, cold pizza, pizza with pineapple, whatever. My favorite pizza is, of course, 4. \_\_\_\_\_ made in Naples in Italy. Just the simple dough with nothing but cheese and tomato – it works 5. \_\_\_\_\_. I remember the first pizza restaurant 6. \_\_\_\_\_. I was so happy. I tried out all the different toppings and switched between deep-pan crusty pizzas 7. \_\_\_\_\_ thin base. I love half-and-half pizzas – you get two tastes 8. \_\_\_\_\_ one. I also had all-you-can-eat pizza a few times. Not such a good idea if you worry about your weight.

- 1. Do you like pasta? How often do you eat it?
- 2. What do you prefer your pasta with?
- 3. What types of pizza do you know? Which are your favourite?
- 4. Can you make pasta and pizza?



30

Give the English equivalents.

Булочка з заварним кремом, рогалик з горіхами, вареники з капустою, пиріг з яйцем та зеленою цибулею, скоринка білого хліба, локшина зі шпинатом та твердим сиром, круасан з полуничним джемом, чорний хліб з висівками, сухарик із житнього хліба, спагеті з тушонкою, чізкейк з малиною, пончики



з цукровою пудрою, крекер з цибулею, бісквіт з вершками, скибка свіжого хліба з висівками, булочка з яблуками, черствий пшеничний хліб, піца з куркою та ананасом, хлібні крихти, м'якуш ароматного домашнього хліба, імбирний пряник у глазурі, млинці з м'ясом і сиром, тост з варенням, вафлі з полуничним морозивом, крихке печиво, вермішель з сосисками, пшеничне борошно, густе тісто на дріжджах, рулет з абрикосовим джемом, нарізний хліб, медовик з родзинками, равіолі з твердим сиром, панірувальні сухарі, млинці з паштетом і кропом.



31

### Translate into English.



1. Україна відома своїм хлібом. Зайдіть у будь-який супермаркет, і ви побачите безліч видів хліба: білий, чорний, житній, висівковий. Ви можете також купити до чаю рогалики, бублики, сухарі та різноманітні булочки.
2. Мері була на дієті, тому з усіх хлібобулочних виробів вона їла тільки черствий чорний хліб. Іноді на сніданок

вона з'їдала пару хрустких крекерів чи житніх хлібців. А її молодша сестра Луїза не могла втриматися від того, щоб не з'їсти бісквітне тістечко і не випити ароматного чаю з пончиками.

3. Після вечері мама поклала скибочки хліба, що залишилися, у хлібницю, збрала крихти хліба зі столу і подала чай із фруктовими пиріжками, домашнім сухим печивом і домашніми вафлями зі сливовим варенням.

4. Я вважаю, що італійські макаронні вироби найсмачніші у світі. Я знаю, що існує понад 600 видів, але найпоширеніші – це макарони, локшина, спагеті та вермішель. Італійці люблять їх з твердим сиром та спеціями.

5. На вечірку з нагоди дня народження я замовила велику піцу з шинкою, помідорами, сиром, оливками та ананасом. На десерт моя бабуся спекла чізкейк з персиками та шоколадом, слойки з карамеллю та імбирне печиво.

6. Якщо ти будеш їсти макаронні вироби з цільнозернового борошна і не будеш додавати до них твердий сир та м'ясо, а лише різноманітні овочі та томатну пасту, ти не будеш набирати зайву вагу та відчувати важкість.



7. Я придбала панірувальні сухарі, оскільки планую готувати котлети.

8. Ми з сестрою любимо вранці на сніданок тости з курячим чи гусячим паштетом, млинці з персиковим або сливовим варенням.

9. Скибка житнього хліба з часником на салом є традиційною закускою в Україні. А борщ та оселедець українці їдять з чорним хлібом.

10. Ви куштували фруктовий пиріг з морозивом? Це неймовірна смакота.



## Sweets and Nuts

### Vocabulary

Sweets	Цукерки
bonbon / sweet / goody / sweetmeat	цукерка
• <i>liqueur bonbon</i>	• <i>цукерка з лікером</i>
candy / sugar-candy / fondant / fruit-drop / sugarplum	льодяник
candied peel, candied fruit	цукат
candied fruit jellies	мармелад
chocolate	шоколад
• <i>a bar of chocolate</i>	• <i>плитка шоколаду</i>
• <i>a box of chocolates</i>	• <i>коробка шоколадних цукерок</i>
• <i>chocolate chips</i>	• <i>шоколадна крихта</i>
• <i>chocolate fudge</i>	• <i>шоколадна помадка</i>
a chocolate sweet	шоколадна цукерка
cotton candy / cotton floss	цукрова вата
energy bar	поживний протеїновий батончик
halva(h)	халва
lollipop	льодяник на паличці
marshmallow	зефір
marzipan	марципан
nougat	нуга
pastille / fruit and berries paste	пастила

Nuts	Горіхи
acorn	жолудь
almond	мигдаль
• <i>almond flakes</i>	• <i>мигдалеві пластівці</i>
cardamom / cardamon	кардамон
cashew / Indian nut	кеш'ю
cedar nut	кедровий горіх
chestnut	каштан
groundnut / peanut / monkey nut	арахіс
hazel nut	ліщина, фундук
macadamia nut	горіх макадамія
nutmeg	мускатний горіх
pecan	горіх-пекан
pistachio	фісташка
walnut	волоський горіх

Do you know that

- ✓ In 1847 Joseph Fry discovered a way to mix cocoa powder, sugar, and cocoa to create a paste that could be pressed into a mould. The resulting bar or “chocolate for eating” was a success.
- ✓ White chocolate is not chocolate at all. It does not contain cocoa solids therefore, it’s not real chocolate.
- ✓ The Snickers candy bar, which was introduced in 1929 by Frank and Ethel Mars, was named after the family horse.
- ✓ A lollipop, which was invented by George Smith in 1908, was named after Lolly Pop, a racing horse.

32

Read the text about various types of candy and answer the questions.

### *Types of Sweets*

**Candies** are available in a wide variety of textures, from **soft** and **chewy** to **hard** and **brittle**.

Candy is made by dissolving sugar in water or milk. The type of candy depends on ingredients, sugar concentration, and the size of the sugar crystals, aeration, temperature, color and type of sugar used.



For making **jelly candies**, such as gumdrops and gummies, stabilizers including starch, pectin or gelatin are used. **Gummies** are gelatin based chewy candies that come in a variety of shapes, colors and flavours.

**Caramels** are made by cooking sugar and water together.

**Toffee** is a medium-to-dark-orange soft, dense, chewy candy made by boiling a mixture of milk or cream, sugar, butter, and vanilla or vanilla flavouring.

**Chocolate bars** frequently contain added ingredients such as peanuts, hazel nuts, fruit, caramel, biscuits, waffles and crisped rice.

**Hard candies**, or boiled sweets, are sugary candies that dissolve slowly in the mouth.

**Licorice** is a semi-soft candy; they are often black with licorice flavour or red with strawberry or cherry flavour. For making them licorice, a special firm black substance with a strong taste is used.

**Lollipops** or **lilies** are hard candies. They are a disc or a ball of a sugary substance on the end of a stick.

**Chewing gum**, called also a gum and bubblegum, is a chewy candy.

**Cotton candy**, popular food at carnivals and amusement parks, is made out of 100% sugar.

- **1.** Do you have *a sweet tooth*? What are your favourite sweets and candies?
- **2.** Do you like chewing gum? Is it healthy? What flavours do you prefer?
- **3.** Are there any sweets or candies you have never tasted but would like to try?

33

Complete the text about chocolate facts. Write the correct verb form.

### Chocolate Facts

- ✚ The history of chocolate 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) back to the 6<sup>th</sup> century when the Mayans in South America 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*consume*) it as a drink.
- ✚ Chocolate was introduced to Europe in 1528, when the Spanish explorer, Hernan Cortes 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*bring*) cocoa beans back to Spain from Mexico.
- ✚ The Spanish 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*keep*) the process of making chocolate a secret for the next 100 years and it wasn't discovered by other Europeans until the 17<sup>th</sup> century.
- ✚ A Frenchman 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*open*) the first chocolate house in London in 1657. At that time, only rich people 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*drink*) it as it 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) very expensive.
- ✚ Chocolate has been eaten in solid form only since the 19<sup>th</sup> century, when a chocolate factory in England 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*produce*) chocolate bars for the first time.
- ✚ Milk chocolate has been made since 1876 when a Swiss manufacturer first 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*create*) it. He 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) his creation to Nestle, the world's largest producer of chocolate, and it 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*manufacture*) milk chocolate on a large scale ever since.
- ✚ Chocolate 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*hit*) the newspaper headlines in 1980 when the police 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrest*) an employee of a Swiss chocolate firm for trying to sell chocolate recipes to China, Russia, and Saudi Arabia.
- ✚ Today Brazil and the Ivory Coast 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*produce*) almost 50% of the world's cocoa beans.
- ✚ America 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*import*) more cocoa beans than any other country.
- ✚ Belgium and Switzerland 16. \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) the best-quality chocolates by hand.
- ✚ Chocolate 17. \_\_\_\_\_ (*show*) no signs of losing popularity. Worldwide chocolate lovers 18. \_\_\_\_\_ (*consume*) 600,000 tons of chocolate annually.
- ✚ The biggest chocolate eaters 19. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) the Swiss. They 20. \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) more chocolate than any other nationality.

34

🎧 Listen to the speaker telling about chocolate. Fill in the gaps. Answer the questions below.



### Chocolate

Anyone who does 1. \_\_\_\_\_ love chocolate is mad. I don't think I know anyone 2. \_\_\_\_\_. Some of my friends say they hate white chocolate or dark chocolate, but then 3. \_\_\_\_\_ other kind. I think chocolate is one of the best inventions ever. 4. \_\_\_\_\_

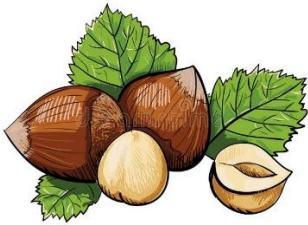
of life's true pleasures. There's nothing better than having your whole **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate and letting it melt. I love pushing the chocolate **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ the roof of my mouth and then moving **7.** \_\_\_\_\_. Yum. I eat chocolate every day. I know it's bad for our teeth and **8.** \_\_\_\_\_, but I don't care. I prefer to think about the **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ of chocolate. I've read many articles that say chocolate is **10.** \_\_\_\_\_.

- **1.** Do you like chocolate? Are you a chocolate addict? How often do you eat it?
- **2.** What are your most favorite fillings in chocolate?
- **3.** Do you use chocolate in cooking? Where and how?

**35**

**Complete the sentences. Use the words from the vocabulary list above, singular or plural form.**

### *Interesting Facts about Nuts*



**1.** These are the oldest known tree food – they date back to 10,000 BC. \_\_\_\_\_ **2.** These nuts can't grow on their own. They need bees to help them pollinate. Their flakes are used in cakes. \_\_\_\_\_ **3.** It's shell is toxic and can't be eaten. And it is actually fruit. \_\_\_\_\_ **4.** This nut is known as the “smiling nut” in Iran and the “happy nut” in China. \_\_\_\_\_ **5.** These nuts are never picked. They are harvested from the ground after they fall off the tree. They also have the hardest shell of any nut. \_\_\_\_\_ **6.** They are actually seeds of a grape-like fruit. \_\_\_\_\_ **7.** They aren't actually nuts – they're legumes. \_\_\_\_\_ **8.** They are actually found inside pinecones. \_\_\_\_\_ **9.** They are the only nuts that contain vitamin C (around 20%). \_\_\_\_\_ **10.** These nuts are from Australia and they are poisonous for dogs. Their extract is used in creams. \_\_\_\_\_ **11.** They are green due to their antioxidant content. \_\_\_\_\_ **12.** They resemble the brain; they were believed in medieval times to be able to cure headaches. \_\_\_\_\_ **13.** They are used in confectionery like chocolate truffle and praline. When powdered they are also added to coffee. \_\_\_\_\_ **14.** It is a spice that originated in India. It is found in the form of a small pod with black seeds inside. Both the seeds and the pod give a pleasant aroma and flavour. \_\_\_\_\_ **15.** Although the word contains the word “nut”, it is not related to tree nuts. It is a dried seed, which is ground to make a spice. \_\_\_\_\_ **16.** They are “true” wild, edible nuts, which are rich in tannins. They are also known as oak nuts. \_\_\_\_\_ **17.** It is a brown nut with an edible kernel similar to walnut. It has a sweet, buttery taste as compared to other nuts. \_\_\_\_\_

- **1.** Which nuts from the list are your favourite? How often do you eat them?
- **2.** Which nuts from the list do you like with chocolate / biscuits / cakes?
- **3.** Are there any nuts you have never tasted? What are they?
- **4.** Which nuts from the list do you usually use in cooking?
- **5.** Do you use nuts ground or in whole?



**1.** Волоський горіх дуже популярний в нашій країні. Його додають у булочки, торти, шоколадні батончики та цукерки, хліб та навіть твердий сир. Він дуже корисний, оскільки у ньому в 50 разів більше вітамінів, ніж у цитрусових і в чорній смородині. Він також містить жири та клітковину. Цей горіх добре впливає на роботу мозку й поліпшує пам'ять.

**2.** Моя маленька сестра справжня ласунка. Вона весь час просить купити їй карамельки, льодяники, іриски. Мої друзі завжди приносять їй льодяники на паличці або плитку молочного шоколаду з фундуком та родзинками. У неділю ми часто ходимо до парку розваг і купуємо там солодку вату та зефір.

**3.** Коли я не маю часу спекти медовик або бісквіт з вишнями та шоколадом на вечерю, я йду до супермаркету та купую або мармелад, або зефір, або нугу з арахісом та цукатами. Моя родина обожнює ці смачні східні солодоці.

**4.** Цукерки з горіхами або сухофруктами не лише смачні, а й корисні. Мої улюблені з темного шоколаду з чорносливом або з мигдалем.

**5.** Подрібнені волоські горіхи, мигдаль чи мигдалеві пластівці, курага або цукати будуть гарно поєднуватися з молочним чи темним шоколадом.

**6.** За вмістом мікроелементів горіхи перевершують фрукти та овочі. В них містяться ненасичені кислоти, які знижують рівень холестерину в крові.

**7.** Цукерка – кондитерський виріб, виготовлений переважно із цукру або шоколаду. Цукерки з начинкою є найбільш популярними.

**8.** Склад моїх солодоців не викликає сумнівів – все дуже смачно і корисно: спокусливий шоколад, ароматна кава, тягуче згущене молоко, горішки і пряна ваніль.

**9.** Цукерки – один із основних та найпопулярніших кондитерських виробів.

**10.** Арахіс істотно знижує ризик виникнення діабету. Фундук та мигдаль перешкоджають старінню шкіри, зміцнює нігті та волосся. Фісташки поліпшують зір. Кедрові горіхи корисні дітям – вони легко засвоюються і сприяють активізації мислення.

## Dairy Products and Fats

### Vocabulary

Dairy Products	Молочні Продукти
milk	МОЛОКО
• <i>baked / browned</i> ~	• <i>топлене</i> ~
• <i>condensed</i> ~	• <i>згущене</i> ~
• <i>pasteurized</i> ~	• <i>пастеризоване</i> ~
• <i>powdered</i> ~	• <i>сухе</i> ~
• <i>raw</i> ~	• <i>сире / непастеризоване / некип'ячене</i> ~

• <i>semi-skimmed</i> ~	• <i>напівзбиране</i> ~
• <i>skimmed</i> ~	• <i>збиране</i> ~
• <i>whole</i> ~	• <i>незбиране</i> ~
milk formula	молочна суміш (для дітей)
milkshake	молочний коктейль
milk whey	сироватка
ryazhenka (fermented baked milk)	ряжанка
koumiss (fermented mare's milk)	кумис
ferment / leaven	закваска
• <i>ferment drink</i>	• <i>закваска (готовий напій)</i>
Aryan	айран
beestings	молозиво
packaged milk	молоко в пакетах
milk in sealed plastic bags	молоко в герметичних пластикових пакетах
smoothie	смузі (напій з пюре фруктів та йогурту, морозива чи молока)
kefir	кефір
yoghurt	йогурт
• <i>low-calorie</i> ~	• <i>низькокалорійний</i> ~
sour cream	сметана
ice cream	морозиво
cream	вершки
cheese	сир (твердий)
high-fat cheese (Cheddar, Stilton)	висококалорійний сир (чеддер, стилтон)
medium-fat cheese (Camembert, Edam, Brie)	середньокалорійний сир (камамбер, едамський сир, брі)
low-fat cheese	низькокалорійний сир
cheese slices	тостерний сир
brynza (sheep's milk cheese)	бринза
processed cheese	плавлений сирок
cottage cheese / curds	домашній сир
cream cheese	крем-сир
tofu	тофу (японський соєвий сир)
mozzarella	моцарелла
mould / mold	пліснява

<b>Fats</b>	<b>Жири</b>
butter	вершкове масло
lard	сало



margarine	маргарин
oil	олія
• <i>vegetable</i> ~	• <i>рослинна</i> ~
• <i>olive</i> ~	• <i>оливкова</i> ~
• <i>maize</i> ~ / <i>corn</i> ~	• <i>кукурудзяна</i> ~
• <i>coconut</i> ~	• <i>кокосова</i> ~
• <i>sesame</i> ~	• <i>кунжутна</i> ~
• <i>sunflower</i> ~	• <i>соняшникова</i> ~
• <i>cod-liver</i> ~	• <i>риб'ячий жир</i>
mayonnaise	майонез

### Do you know that

- ✓ It's most commonly believed that mayonnaise was invented in 1756 by a French chef. It got its name to honor a battle won at the Port Mahon. However, the Spanish claim that the sauce was a native invention of theirs called Salsa Mahonesa and that the French stole it during this battle.
- ✓ Vegetarians substitute cow milk with almond milk, which is even healthier.

37

**Read the text about dairy products and answer the questions below.**

### *Some Facts about Dairy Products*

**Raw milk** is one of the healthiest beverages on the planet. It is an ideal food both for the young and for the old and convalescents alike. It is rich in minerals especially calcium.

**Goat milk** is an ideal substitute for preparing infant milk formula instead of cow milk.

Milk is distinguishable by its **fat content**:

- **whole** or full-fat milk contains about 3.5 per cent fat;
- **semi-skimmed** contains about 1.7 to 2.5 per cent fat;
- **skimmed or low-fat** milk contains 0.1 to 0.3 per cent fat.



Contrary to popular belief, lowering the fat content in milk does not affect the calcium content, so an adequate calcium intake can still be obtained from lower-fat dairy products. However, low fat milk contains less energy and lower amounts of fat soluble vitamins and isn't suitable for children under two years old.

**Condensed milk** is the concentrated dairy product that can be readily reconstituted into original milk, it is used in making ice cream, candy, confectionary and adding it to tea and coffee.



**Cheese** contains the same nutrients as milk, but most cheeses contain much more **saturated fat** and high levels of added salt, so it's important to eat full-fat cheese occasionally and in small portions.



**Yoghurt** is rich in protein and vitamin B2: essentially the same nutrients as in milk. Some varieties contain living bacteria that are healthy for your digestive system (**probiotics**). Yoghurt can be made from whole or low-fat milk, but be careful. Fruit yoghurts often contain added sugar. Low fat doesn't necessarily mean low calories. If you're watching your weight, look for "diet" versions, or make your own by mixing fruit with natural, low fat, unsweetened yoghurt.

- 1. Do you drink raw milk? Why? Why not?
- 2. Is it good to give babies other than mother's milk?
- 3. Are you on a diet? How much and what kind of milk do you consume when you are on a diet? Is cheese allowed in diets?
- 4. Is it healthy to drink low-fat milk?
- 5. Do you believe that condensed milk is unhealthy? Are you in a habit of eating condensed milk? In what way?
- 6. What kinds of cheese are to your liking? What do you usually eat it with?



38

🔊 Listen to the speaker telling about milk. Unjumble the sentences.

### *Milk*

Milk is **1) best the of one eat can we things** or drink for our body. **2) it so of and It's full goodness** tastes pretty good too. Milk is rich in calcium, which makes our bones and teeth strong. **3) essential This for makes babies milk and** growing children. **4) It stronger up grow them makes.** Milk **5) is many also important full vitamins of** and minerals. When I was little, I didn't really like milk. I think I had a bad experience with sour milk, which turned me off of it. **6) I was I when again it drinking remember** a teenager and liking it. Now I think **7) most drinks one the refreshing it's of you can drink.** **8) Just looking at its whiteness makes me feel healthy.** I like all kinds of milk, including goat's milk and even camel's milk. It's all good for us.

39

a) Read and translate the text into Ukrainian.

### *Animal Fat or Vegetable Oil?*



**Animal fat** is fat or grease, which is obtained from animal sources. Some examples are: **lard** (pig fat obtained from various parts of the pig's body), **poultry fat** (obtained from chicken, duck or goose), **butter** (made from cow's milk) and **fish oil**.

**Vegetable oil** is derived from seeds of vegetables and fruits that have oil content, such as coconuts, sunflowers, soybeans, olives, maize, peanuts and others. Unlike animal fat, which is **solid** at room temperature, vegetable oil is **liquid** at room temperature, that is why it is widely used for frying and **seasoning** salads.

**Animal fat** is primarily made up of **saturated** and **monounsaturated fats** and **glycerol**. Saturated fats are good for you, **in moderation**. Too much intake however, increases the risk of cholesterol and heart disease. Various oils have different nutritional components but there are common elements such as **vitamin E**, omega-3 and omega-6 **fatty acids**, **polyunsaturated**, **monounsaturated**, **saturated fats** and **trans-fats**. The latter can cause serious health problems.

Both vegetable oil and animal fat are staple cooking ingredients in most households. But the nutritional pros and cons of both are always debated upon.

So, what should it be, vegetable oil or animal fat? Lots of nutritionists state: it is good to consume a balanced amount of both, do not completely **replace one with another**.

**b) Give the English equivalents.**



Твердий, рідкий, при кімнатній температурі, заправляти салати, помірно, споживати (2), основні інгредієнти, збільшувати ризики серцевого нападу, поживний, жирні кислоти, насичені жири, транс-жири, збалансована кількість, повністю замінювати одне іншим, тваринний жир, рослинна олія, вершкове масло, спричиняти проблеми зі здоров'ям, вітаміни, вміст, кімнатна температура.



**c) Answer the questions.**

- 1. Which fat do you prefer? Why?
- 2. Are there any fats that you try to avoid? Why?
- 3. Which fats do you use in cooking / seasoning?
- 4. Which fat is the best with salad / soup / fried meat / stewed vegetables?
- 5. Which is your food rich in fats? Is it ok with you? What do you want to change in your diet?

40

**Transcribe the words from the left column. Match the words and phrases with their definitions.**

- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>curds</i>            | a) a yellow substance made from vegetable oil and animal fats that is similar to butter. Spread it on bread or use it for cooking.                    |
| 2. <i>milk formula</i>     | b) thick white or pale-yellow fatty liquid that rises to the top when milk is left to stand. It is added to desserts or used as a cooking ingredient. |
| 3. <i>smoothie</i>         | c) a soft white substance made from mashed soya beans, used chiefly in Asian and vegetarian cookery   |
| 4. <i>mozzarella</i>       | d) a food in the form of a thick, slightly sour liquid that is made by adding bacteria to milk  |
| 5. <i>cheese</i>           | e) a cold drink made of milk, a sweet flavoring such as fruit or chocolate, and typically ice cream, whisked until it is frothy                       |
| 6. <i>processed cheese</i> | f) a soft yellow substance made from cream. You spread it on bread or use it in cooking.  |

7. *milk whey* g) a sour-tasting drink made from cow's milk, fermented with certain bacteria
8. *mayonnaise* h) a smooth, thick liquid made from plants, often used in cooking
9. *condensed milk* i) a soft grey, green, or blue substance that sometimes forms in spots on old food
10. *cream* j) cream that has been artificially made sour by being mixed with bacteria. It is used in cooking.
11. *kefir* k) a solid food made from milk. It is usually white or yellow.
12. *mould* l) a soft, white substance formed when milk turns sour
13. *oil* m) a firm white Italian cheese made from buffalo or cow's milk, used especially in pizzas and salads
14. *ice cream* n) a baby's liquid food based on cow's milk or soya protein, given as a substitute for breast milk
15. *tofu* o) a thick drink of fresh fruit puréed with milk, yogurt, or ice cream
16. *yogurt* p) a product made of one or more types of cheeses that have been heated and mixed with emulsifiers, colorings and flavorings
17. *milkshake* q) a thick pale sauce made from egg yolks and oil. It is used to dress salads.
18. *butter* r) the watery part of sour milk that is separated from the thick part called curds
19. *sour cream* s) a very cold sweet food, which is made from frozen cream or a substance like cream and has a flavour such as vanilla, chocolate, or strawberry
20. *margarine* t) very thick sweetened milk that is sold in tins / cans

41

### Translate into English.



1. Вам необхідно їсти більше молочних продуктів. Щодня пийте кефір, ряжанку, молоко або закваску. Заправляйте салат натуральним йогуртом чи сметаною замість майонезу. І не забувайте про домашній та твердий сири. Вони містять багато кальцію та є дуже корисними для вашого здоров'я.

2. Я нікому не раджу замінювати натуральне вершкове масло маргарином. Це, так зване, "штучне масло" виготовляється з рослинних олій та містить велику кількість транс-жирів. Кукурудзяна, оливкова, соняшникова чи кунжутна олія краще підходить до свіжих овочевих салатів. 3. Моя бабуся живе в селі і часто частує мене топленим молоком з медом та інжиром та млинцями на сироватці з домашнім солоним сиром і кропом. 4. Сухе та

згущене молоко також продається в молочному відділі. Воно знаходиться біля заквасок, пастеризованого молока в герметичних пластикових пакетах та низькокалорійного білого йогурту з Греції. **5.** Сире молоко гарно смакує холодним зі скибкою свіжого білого домашнього хліба зі скоринкою та малиновим або полуничним варенням. **6.** Сироватка використовується при виготовленні сирів і при приготуванні багатьох домашніх страв. **7.** Ряжанка, кефір, морозиво, сметана, твердий сир, домашній сир – навряд чи знайдеться в світі людина, не знайома з цими молочними продуктами.

## Tea, Coffee and Drinks

### Vocabulary

Tea	Чай
• <i>Ceylon</i> ~	• <i>цейлонський</i> ~
• <i>Georgian</i> ~	• <i>грузинський</i> ~
• <i>Indian</i> ~	• <i>індійський</i> ~
a packet of tea	пачка, пакунок чаю
big leaf tea	крупнолистовий чай
a tea bag	пакетик чаю
fannings	“чайний пил”
• <i>bergamot tea</i>	• <i>чай з бергамотом</i>
• <i>c(h)atomile tea</i>	• <i>чай з ромашки</i>
• <i>herbal tea</i>	• <i>чай на травах</i>
• <i>hibiscus tea / karkade</i>	• <i>каркаде</i>
• <i>iced tea</i>	• <i>чай з льодом</i>
• <i>jasmin(e) / jessamine tea</i>	• <i>чай з жасміном</i>
• <i>mint tea</i>	• <i>чай з м'яти</i>
• <i>Russian tea</i>	• <i>чай з лимоном та цукром (подається в стаканах з підстаканниками)</i>
• <i>scented tea</i>	• <i>арома чай</i>
to brew (tea, coffee)	заварювати (чай, каву)

Coffee	Кава
• <i>black</i> ~	• <i>чорна</i> ~
• <i>white</i> ~	• <i>~ з молоком</i>
• <i>instant</i> ~ / <i>soluble</i> ~	• <i>розчинна</i> ~
• <i>decaffeinated</i> ~	• <i>~ без кофеїну</i>
• <i>(ready-)ground</i> ~	• <i>мелена</i> ~
• <i>~ in grains</i>	• <i>~ в зернах</i>
a jar of coffee	банка кави

coffee-grounds	кавова гуща
caffe latte	кава-латте (кава-еспресо з гарячим молоком та пінкою)
cappuccino	капучіно (кава-еспресо з гарячим молоком та невеликою пінкою)
espresso	еспресо
ristretto	ристрето
iced coffee with ice-cream topping	кава-глясе (охолоджена чорна кава з морозивом)
coffee mate / creamer	низькокалорійний замітник молока або вершків
foam	пінка
coffee addict / coffee aficionado	кавоман
addiction to <i>smth.</i>	схильність до <i>чогосьь</i> ; згубна звичка ~
cocoa	какао
hot chocolate	гарячий шоколад

<b>Drinks / Beverages</b>	<b>Напої</b>
• <i>soft drinks</i>	• <i>безалкогольні напої</i>
• <i>hard drinks</i>	• <i>алкогольні напої</i>
ale	пиво, ель
beer	пиво
brandy	брєнді
champagne	шампанське
cognac	коньяк
gin	джин
liqueur	лікер
martini	мартіні
moonshine	самогон
rum	ром
sherry	херес
spirit	спирт
tequila	текіла
tonic	тонік
vodka	горілка
whisky (ScE), whiskey	віскі
wine	вино
• <i>claret / red ~</i>	• <i>червоне ~</i>
• <i>white ~</i>	• <i>біле ~</i>
• <i>dry ~</i>	• <i>сухе ~</i>

• <i>fortified</i> ~	• кріплене ~
• <i>sparkling</i> ~	• шипуче ~
• <i>sweet</i> ~ ~	• солодке ~
• <i>vintage</i> ~	• марочне ~ (певного врожаю)
• <i>sacramental</i> ~	• церковне ~
• <i>table</i> ~	• столове ~
• <i>domestic</i> ~ / <i>home-made</i> ~	• домашнє ~
• <i>pop</i> ~ / <i>jug</i> ~	• дешево ~ (продається в великих пляшках чи пакетах)
• <i>mulled</i> ~	• глінтвейн
cocktail	коктейль
juice	сік
lemonade	лимонад
mineral water	мінеральна вода
• <i>still</i> ~	• ~ без газу
• <i>gas</i> ~	• ~ з газом
carbonated water / soda water	содова
fruit drink / fruit water	морс
stewed fruit / compote	компот, узвар
syrup	сироп
tincture	настоянка
to be in beer / to be in wine	бути напідпитку
drunkard	п'яниця
hangover	похмілля
brine / pickle	розсіл

Do you know that

- ✓ Tea was accidentally invented in 2737 BC when Chinese Emperor Shen Nung spotted some tea leaves blew into a pot of boiling water and produced a pleasing aroma.
- ✓ Tea helps removing food odors from hands and soothe burns.

42

a) Read and translate the text into Ukrainian. Discuss the tea-drinking customs you know.

### *The English Custom of Afternoon Tea*

The English custom of afternoon tea goes back to the late 18<sup>th</sup> century when Ann, wife of the 7<sup>th</sup> Duke of Bedford, the Duchess of Bedford, decided that she suffered from “a sinking feeling” around 5 p.m. and needed tea and cakes to bring back her strength. Tea arrived. Fashionable Tea rooms were opened for high society and soon tea became the national drink for all classes.

Today the British drink more tea than any other nation – an average of 4 kilos a head per annum, or 1,650 cups of tea a year.

The British actually invented two kinds of afternoon teas: “**Low tea**” (simply called “afternoon tea”) and “**High tea**”.



These can be a source of confusion to Americans. The “high” in **high tea** does not mean that high class or expensive foods are served (or that high tea is enjoyed by well-to-do Britons). It actually refers to afternoon tea served on a dining room table (a high table) as opposed to afternoon tea served on a “tea table” (a low table).

High tea is a fairly **substantial meal** – equivalent to dinner or even supper – served in working class homes. It is generally served at 5 or 6 p.m., and features a hot dish, sandwiches, heavy cakes, biscuits – and, of course, plenty of tea. By contrast, afternoon tea is traditionally served around 4 p.m. This is a lighter meal – a **satisfying “snack”** between lunch and dinner – that will include thin sandwiches, biscuits, and tiny cakes.

What exactly is tea? Basically, it is a drink made from dried leaves of a plant that grows only in hot countries. **China** is the birthplace of tea. The country produces some of the best varieties of tea.

There are four main types of tea: **black tea**, **green tea**, **oolong tea** (a cross between black and green tea with its distinctive fruity flavor) and **white tea**. Speaking of grades **Orange Pekoe** is the highest (big-leaf tea) and “**fannings**” (tea dust) is the lowest. Fannings are used in most tea bags.



Tin boxes were too expensive, so New York tea seller **Thomas Sullivan** looked for a cheaper way to send his tea samples to clients.

Wrapping the tea in gauze “bags” seemed the perfect answer, but his customers were **befuddled by** the new “packaging”. Instead of removing the tea, they dropped it, gauze and all, into boiling water. Without realizing it, Sullivan had created the **tea bag!**

### b) Give the English equivalents.

Страждати від чогось, відчуття раптової слабкості, повернути сили, стати національним напоєм, на душу населення в рік, винаходити, причина непорозуміння, ситний (поживний) прийом їжі, еквівалент чогось, забезпечені верстви населення, сушене листя, на противагу (чому-небудь), гатунок (сорт) чаю, характерний фруктовий аромат, гібридизація (схрещування), жерстяна банка, марля, бути збитим з пантелику.

### c) Answer the questions.

- 1. Do you like tea? How often do you drink it? What do you drink it with?
- 2. What kind of tea is your favourite? Do you have an exclusive recipe?



- 3. How did the English custom of afternoon tea appear? What other customs of drinking tea do you know? How much tea do the British drink?
- 4. What is tea? What types of tea do you know? What is “High tea”/ “Low tea”?
- 5. How was the “tea bag” created?

43

Read, translate and discuss the following text.

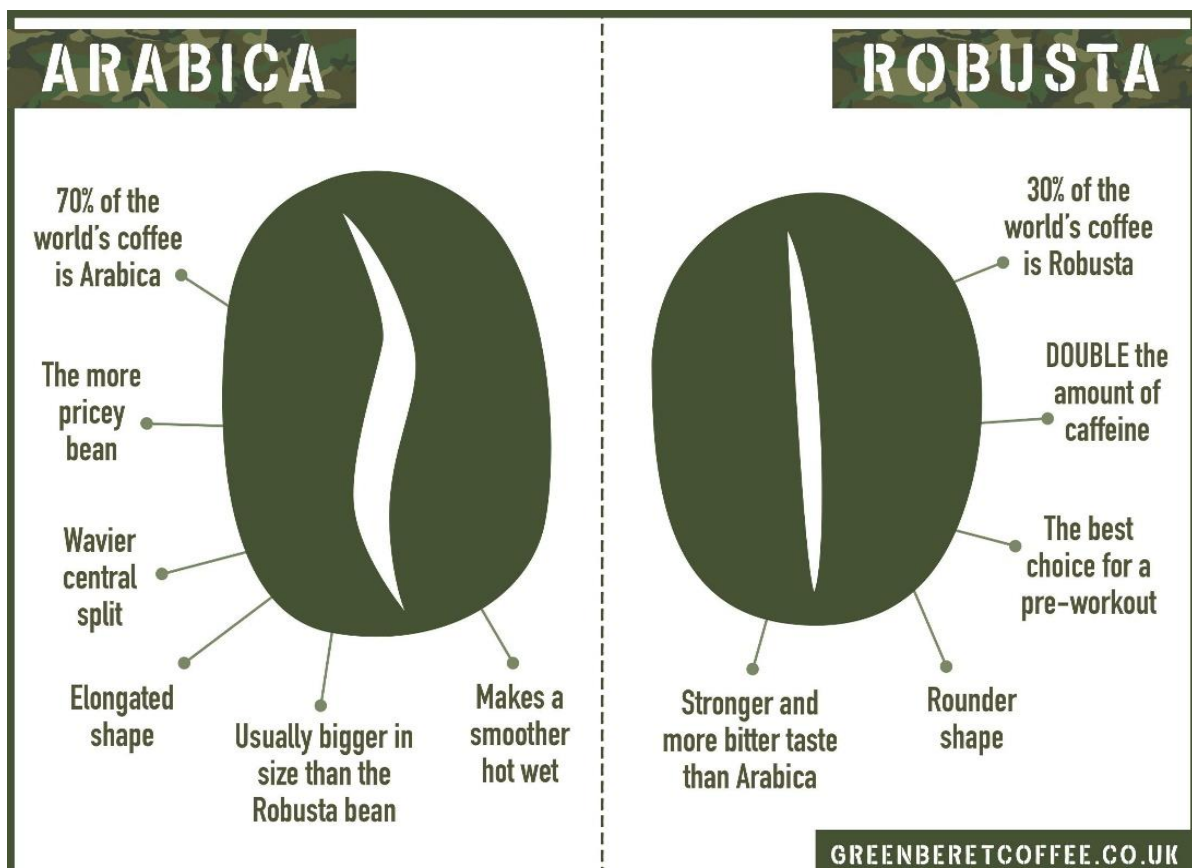
### *Everything about Coffee*

According to the legend it all started with ... dancing **goats**. Ethiopian shepherds first noticed the effects of caffeine when they saw their goats frisky and funny after eating coffee berries.

Originally, coffee was eaten. African tribes mixed **coffee berries** with fat, which formed edible **energy balls!**

Coffee grows on trees that can be up to 30 feet (9 meters) tall, but are cultivated to around 10 feet (3 meters) tall for easy picking. The bean is actually a seed inside of a **bright red berry**. They are picked, dried and stripped down until a green bean is left. Green beans are roasted until they “pop” and double in size, then it “pops” once more and it means the bean is done. So this is how it gets brown.

There are different types of coffee but the most well-known are **Arabica** and **Robusta**. 70% of the whole world consumes Arabica coffee, which is mild and aromatic. The remaining 30% drinks Robusta, which is more bitter-tasting but has 50% more caffeine than Arabica.



Coffee is a wonderful thing! Espresso, latte, cappuccino – there are so many different types of coffee it becomes a language itself! The main differences between them are the proportions of espresso, steamed milk and foam within the beverage. Some coffees have extra toppings added to them to complete the taste.

- 1. Do you drink coffee? What coffee do you prefer?
- 2. What coffee types do you know? What ingredients do they contain?
- 3. Which coffees are your favourite? Why?
- 4. What coffee toppings do you like?



**44** 🎧 Listen to the speaker telling about coffee. Fill in the gaps. Answer the questions below.

### *Coffee*

Scientists and doctors can't make 1. \_\_\_\_\_ about coffee. One study says it's really 2. \_\_\_\_\_ and the next report says it's good for us. I've 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 10 cups a day 4. \_\_\_\_\_ our brain. I like a cup of coffee at certain times of the day. I must have a coffee 5. \_\_\_\_\_ the morning. I can't survive without my morning coffee. I have another 6. \_\_\_\_\_ when I get to work. And that's it. I never drink coffee after lunchtime. If I do, I can't sleep at night. The 7. \_\_\_\_\_ drink coffee in the evening 8. \_\_\_\_\_ to a nice restaurant. Coffee seems a lot more complicated 9. \_\_\_\_\_. When I was younger it was just coffee. Now it's latte, frappuccino and 10. \_\_\_\_\_ other strange words.

- 1. How many cups of coffee do you drink a day?
- 2. Why is coffee important for you?
- 3. Is coffee good or bad for you? Why?



**45** *There is a great number and variety of beverages that do not contain coffee or tea. Lots of soft and hard drinks are very popular with people. Match the words and phrases with their definitions and answer the questions below.*

1. *compote*      a) a drink made from lemon juice, water and sweetened with sugar and a sweet colourless carbonated drink containing lemon flavouring
2. *cocktail*      b) a type of beer with a bitter flavor and higher alcoholic content

3. *tincture* c) a beverage made from the extraction or pressing of the natural liquid contained in fruit and vegetables
4. *gin* d) a strong alcoholic drink made, especially in Scotland, from grain such as barley or rye
5. *champagne* e) water that comes out of the ground naturally and is considered healthy to drink
6. *soda water* f) a bitter alcoholic drink made from yeast-fermented malt flavored with hops
7. *wine* g) a strong alcoholic drink made in Mexico from a type of cactus plant
8. *fizzy drinks* h) a colourless fizzy drink that has a slightly bitter flavour and is often mixed with alcoholic drinks, especially gin
9. *sherry* i) a sweet liquid made by cooking sugar with water, and sometimes with fruit juice as well
10. *moonshine* j) a type of high-quality brandy made in the south-west of France
11. *beer* k) an alcoholic drink which is made from grapes
12. *whisky* l) fizzy water used for mixing with alcoholic drinks or fruit juice
13. *tequila* m) a strong colourless alcoholic drink made from grain and juniper berries
14. *liqueur* n) an alcoholic drink consisting of a spirit or spirits mixed with other ingredients, such as fruit juice or cream
15. *lemonade* o) fruit preserved or stewed with sugar or in syrup
16. *mineral water* p) an expensive French white wine with bubbles in. It is often drunk to celebrate something.
17. *tonic* q) drinks that contain small bubbles of carbon dioxide. They make a sound like a long “s” when you pour them.
18. *syrup* r) a type of strong wine that is made in south-western Spain. It is usually drunk before a meal.
19. *juice* s) a strong, sweet flavoured alcoholic spirit, usually drunk after a meal
20. *cognac* t) whisky or vodka that is made illegally
21. *ale* u) a medicine consisting of alcohol and a small amount of a drug

- 1. What are your drinking habits in terms of soft and hard drinks?
- 2. What other soft and hard drinks do you like? Which do you hate? Why?
- 3. How often do you have hard drinks?
- 4. What are the pleasant and unpleasant aspects of drinking?
- 5. How serious is alcoholism in your country and/or any other countries you have visited?



**Translate into English.**

**1.** Натуральна чорна кава – один з найпопулярніших напоїв у всьому світі, і дуже багато хто просто не уявляє початок нового дня без горнятка ароматної чорної кави з медом та корицею чи терпкого ристрето без цукру.



**2.** Виявляється, кава абсолютно не шкідлива і навіть корисна для здоров'я. Це підтверджують численні дослідження вчених цього шляхетного напою. Але не варто забувати, що навіть найкорисніший продукт може завдати шкоди організму, якщо не знати міри. Тому намагайтеся не пити більше 3-5 горняток кави на день, і тоді ваш улюблений напій принесе не тільки задоволення, але й користь.

**3.** Американо – це кава еспресо, до якої додається гаряча вода. Як правило, американо готується в еспресо-кавоварці: після приготування 30 мл еспресо, баріста додає в нього окріп до отримання 120-160 мл. напою.

**4.** Латте – кавовий напій, що складається з однієї частини еспресо і двох частин прогрітого молока з піною. “Латте” – в перекладі з італійської означає “молоко”. Для аромату під час приготування гарячого чи холодного латте додають різноманітні сиропи (крім цитрусових, через які молоко може скиснути). Часто пінку на поверхні напою прикрашають малюнками. “Смайлик” на пінці виглядає мило. Це мистецтво, яке називають “латте-арт”.

**5.** Чай – це найпоширеніший напій, який п'ють і дорослі, і діти. Він добре впливає на здоров'я, тамує спрагу, розслабляє і допомагає знизити вагу.

**6.** Вам подобається заварювати чай чи використовувати чайні пакетики?

**7.** Крупнолистовий чай є найякіснішим серед усіх видів чаю, тому саме його рекомендують пити. Чайні пакетики вважаються шкідливими для здоров'я.

**8.** Післяобідній чай легко поверне сили та підбадьорить всіх, хто стомився.

**9.** Трав'яний чай з ромашкою заспокоїть, зелений додасть сил на весь день.

**10.** Влітку я обожаю каркаде з лимоном та цукром. Цей чудовий напій можна пити як гарячим, щоб зігрітися, так і холодним, щоб охолотитися.

**11.** В середньому українці випивають 520 чашок чаю на людину в рік.



**12.** Пітер надзвичайно схвильований, тому краще напоїти його трав'яним чаєм з ромашкою, мелісою чи м'ятою.

**13.** Безалкогольні напої, такі як компот, морс чи навіть проста вода, чудово втамовують спрагу, а сік та лимонад гарно смакують з тістечками, пряниками та цукерками.

**14.** Інколи ми влаштовуємо вечірки та п'ємо пиво, коньяк чи навіть ром. Дівчата віддають перевагу шампанському, мартіні з мінеральною водою з газом, лікеру, мартіні або вину. Їх улюблене – це сухе червоне марочне вино.

**15.** Мій дідусь вмів робити сливову та вишневу настоянку, домашнє яблучне столове вино та самогон. Після дідусевого самогону буває похмілля, але він завжди має розсіл для таких випадків.

## Herbs, Spices and Dressings

### Vocabulary

Herbs	Рослини-приправи
basil	базилік
bay leaves	лаврове листя
chicory / endive	цикорій
chives	цибуля-шніт
dill	кріп
fennel	фенхель (солодкий кріп)
fresh coriander / cilantro	кинза
marjoram	майоран
mint	м'ята
• <i>peppermint</i>	• <i>перечна</i> ~
• <i>spearmint</i>	• <i>кучерява</i> ~
lavender	лаванда
lemon grass	сорго лимонне
okra / ladies' fingers	окра
oregano	материнка, орегано
parsley	петрушка
• <i>curly-leaf</i> ~	• <i>кучерява</i> ~
• <i>flat-leaf</i> ~	• ~ <i>звичайна</i>
rosemary	розмарин
rucola	рукола
saffron	шафран
sage	шавлія
savory	чабер
sulfurwort / sea parsley	любисток
tarragon	тархун
thyme	чебрець, тим'ян

Pepper Spices	Перцеві Спеції
condiments	приправи
black ground pepper	чорний мелений перець
corn pepper / peppercorns	перець горошком
• <i>pink, green, white pepper</i>	• <i>рожевий, зелений, білий перець</i>
pimento / allspice	духмяний перець горошком
chilli / chili / cayenne pepper	червоний стручковий перець
paprika	паприка
curry	карі

<b>Fruit and Bark Spices</b>	<b>Прянощі з Плодів та Кори Дерева</b>
bark	кора
almond	мигдаль
barberry	барбарис
capers	каперси
cinnamon	кориця
juniper berries	ялівець (рус. можжевельник)
nutmeg	мускатний горіх
vanilla	ваніль
vanillin(e)	ванілін

<b>Seed Spices</b>	<b>Прянощі з Насіння</b>
caraway seeds / cumin	тмин
cardamom / cardamon	кардамон
cloves	гвоздика
coriander	коріандр
mustard	гірчиця
poppy seeds	насіння маку
sesame (seeds)	кунжут / насіння сезаму
star anise	бадьян, зірчастий аніс

<b>Root Spices</b>	<b>Прянощі з Кореневища</b>
horse-radish	хрін
garlic	часник
ginger	імбир
turmeric / curcuma	куркума
wasabi	васабі (японський хрін)

<b>Solid Condiments and Additives</b>	<b>Тверді Приправи, Харчові Додатки</b>
baking powder / loosener	розпушувач
baking soda	харчова сода
citric acid	лимонна кислота
salt	сіль
• <i>refined table ~</i>	• <i>очищена столова ~</i>
• <i>rock ~ / halite</i>	• <i>кам'яна ~</i>
• <i>sea ~</i>	• <i>морська ~</i>
gelatin(e)	желатин
starch	крохмаль
sugar	цукор
• <i>brown ~</i>	• <i>коричневий ~</i>



• <i>cane</i> ~	• <i>тросинний</i> ~
• <i>castor</i> ~ / <i>powdered</i> ~	• <i>цукрова пудра</i>
• <i>granulated</i> ~	• <i>~-пісок</i>
• <i>loaf</i> ~	• <i>рафінад</i>
• <i>a lump of</i> ~	• <i>кубик цукру-рафінаду</i>
sweetener / sugar substitute	замінник цукру
yeast	дріжджі

<b>Liquid Dressings</b>	<b>Рідкі Приправи, Заправки</b>
dressing / sauce	заправка / соус
gravy	підлива (м'ясна)
mustard	гірчиця
sautéed (stir-fried) vegetables for soup	зажарка
soy sauce	соєвий соус
tomato ketchup	кетчуп
tomato paste	томатна паста
vinegar	оцет
• <i>balsamic</i> ~	• <i>бальзамічний</i> ~

47

a) Read the text and answer the questions.

### *What are Spices, Condiments and Dressings?*

**Spices** are the dried forms of various **herbs, seeds, roots, fruits, barks, vegetables**, and other plant substances primarily used for adding **coloring, flavoring**, and **preserving** the food. They are found everywhere in the world and form an essential part of the culinary practices of all the cultures. Their original use was as a flavoring agent. In addition, they keep the food fresh for longer durations and improve the health of those who eat them regularly, as they contain **proteins** and other **organic compounds**.



One of the best things about spices is that when prepared, dried, and stored properly, they can last almost forever.

**Condiments** are **spices, sauces** or other **food preparations** (like ketchup, mustard, soy sauce or BBQ sauce) that are added to foods **to impart** a particular flavor, **enhance** its flavor or, in some cultures, **to complement** a dish. They can be added after cooking (ketchup, mayonnaise, mustard) or during cooking (baking soda, starch).

**Dressings** are usually mixtures of spices, solid condiments and two or more liquids that don't naturally mix, for example oil and vinegar. They are made to enhance the flavor of salads. In fact, many different ingredients can be used to make dressings.



- 1. Which of the spices and herbs do you like to use in your cooking?
- 2. Which of them are bitter / hot / sweet / sour?
- 3. What sort of food do you use spices with?
- 4. Which of spices would you find difficult to live without?
- 5. Do you agree that if the ingredients of the meal have the proper taste, you don't need all that seasoning?
- 6. What condiments do you usually use? Are they always healthy?
- 7. What ingredients do you usually mix to make dressings?

**b) Give the English equivalents.**

Додавати колір, зберігати (консервувати їжу), доповнювати страви, надавати смаку та запаху, збагачувати смак, надавати особливого смаку, органічні складники, основний, тверді приправи, природньо змішуватися.

48

**Write the letter of the correct answer next to each brief definition.**

cinnamon    horseradish    sage    allspice    parsley    dill    ginger    mustard  
oregano    basil    fennel    nutmeg



1. Spice named because it seems to combine the taste of several spices. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Herb from the mint family; leaves are used to flavor tomatoes and many Italian foods. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Yellowish-brown spice from the inner bark of the cassia tree; used in pastries. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Herb, whose seeds and leaves are used to flavour foods, particularly pickles. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Tall herb of parsley family, whose licorice flavoured seeds are used in seasoning. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Aromatic plant whose roots are crushed for spice; it is used in pastries and soda pop. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Plant of mustard family; pungent roots are so strong that they can make your eyes water. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Hot, sharp-tasting yellow spice made from ground seeds of this plant. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Hard seed grated and used as a spice. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Plant of mint family whose leaves are used as a spice, especially in pizza. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Herb whose leaves are eaten raw or used in soups and other dishes; an effective breath sweetener. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Aromatic leaves used in meats and stuffing. \_\_\_\_\_

49

**Think what herbs, spices or other flavorings may go with these dishes.**

- |            |                |                   |                            |
|------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. tequila | 6. mulled wine | 11.pampushky      | 16. chicken broth          |
| 2. mojito  | 7. cappuccino  | 12.fried potato   | 17. banana cocktail        |
| 3. cakes   | 8. fish soup   | 13.sweet buns     | 18. coffee for sick people |
| 4. tea     | 9. spaghetti   | 14.Greek salad    | 19. sandwich buns          |
| 5. sushi   | 10. rye bread  | 15.marinated fish | 20. smoked sausage         |

50

**Translate into English.**

1. Для цього салату треба купити базилік, розмарин, руколу та пакетик чорного меленого перцю. 2. Ви додасте японський хрін та імбир до суші? 3. У мене є багато трав та спецій, таких як майоран, м'ята, розмарин, тим'ян, карі, імбир та інші. Я люблю перечну м'яту, яка дуже гарно підходить до м'яса, смаженого в духовці. 4. До натуральної кави з молоком чи капучіно часто додають корицю чи ванільну пудру. 5. Вчора я купила цукор-рафінад, вершкове масло, розрихлювач, ванільний цукор, гірчицю та оцет. 6. На столі були страви, прикрашені кучерявою петрушкою, салатом-латуком та кропом. 7. До моїх улюблених страв з картоплі гарно підходить пікантний соус з куркумою, базиліком та м'ятою. 8. Де можна купити тростинний цукор? 9. А ви розрізняєте майоран та материнку? 10. Дрібно нарізаний кріп гарно смакує з молодю картоплею, приправленою вершковим маслом та сіллю. 11. Моя бабуся використовувала любисток та лаванду, щоб волосся було міцним та сяяло. 12. Що ти більше хочеш: булочку з маком чи кунжутом? 13. Я не люблю чай без цукру, томатний соус з кунжутом, масло з сіллю та тмином і м'ясо з перцем горошком чи гвоздикою.

### *Topical Exercises for Revision*

51

Put each of the following words into its correct place in the passage below:

animals      die      spoons      left      man      healthy      bowl  
 chopsticks      plants      plates      mouth      energy      Europeans  
 daily      play      knives      people      grow

#### *Food*

Food is one of our most important 1. \_\_\_\_\_ needs. It gives us 2. \_\_\_\_\_ to work and 3. \_\_\_\_\_. It makes us grow, and keeps our bodies strong and 4. \_\_\_\_\_. Without food, we 5. \_\_\_\_\_. All living things – plants, 6. \_\_\_\_\_ and man – need food to live and 7. \_\_\_\_\_. But only 8. \_\_\_\_\_ make their own food. They also provide food for animals and 9. \_\_\_\_\_.

Customs influence the ways 10. \_\_\_\_\_ eat. Most Americans and 11. \_\_\_\_\_ eat from individual 12. \_\_\_\_\_, using 13. \_\_\_\_\_, forks, and 14. \_\_\_\_\_. Arabs use only their 15. \_\_\_\_\_ hands to spoon foods from a central 16. \_\_\_\_\_. Chinese and Japanese use 17. \_\_\_\_\_ to pick up food from a small bowl held close to the 18. \_\_\_\_\_.

52

Complete the table by giving five more examples for each category:

<i>Types of Food</i>						
<i>Vegetables</i>	<i>carrots</i>					
<i>Fruit</i>	<i>oranges</i>					
<i>Legumes</i>	<i>beans</i>					
<i>Nuts</i>	<i>almond</i>					
<i>Sweets</i>	<i>candy</i>					
<i>Berries</i>	<i>blackberry</i>					
<i>Pastry</i>	<i>bun</i>					
<i>Cereals</i>	<i>oats</i>					
<i>Meat</i>	<i>beef</i>					
<i>Dairy products</i>	<i>milk</i>					
<i>Poultry</i>	<i>chicken</i>					
<i>Fish</i>	<i>salmon</i>					
<i>Shellfish</i>	<i>lobster</i>					
<i>Spices / herbs</i>	<i>rosemary</i>					
<i>Pasta</i>	<i>noodles</i>					
<i>Fats</i>	<i>olive oil</i>					
<i>Bread</i>	<i>rye bread</i>					

53

Transcribe the words below and then group them under the following headings.

1. Cereals and grains
2. Dairy products
3. Fruit and Berries

4. Seafood
5. Fish
6. Poultry

7. Herbs and spices
8. Meat
9. Vegetables

dill      chicken      herring      onion      rice      thyme      basil  
 bacon      cream      lamb      parsley      rye      trout      grapes  
 kefir      milk      corn      pear      sage      veal      mutton  
 bean      aubergine      mint      pea      salmon      wheat      rabbit  
 barley      gooseberry      mustard      plaice      sausage      yoghurt      sole  
 broccoli      watermelon      turkey      peach      cheese      butter      beef  
 garlic      cabbage      cucumber      turnip      lettuce      prawn      mussel  
 apricot      strawberry      clam      catfish      goose      bay leaf      eel

54

Complete the sentences with the correct words.

fresh    baked    frozen    tinned    dried    low-calorie    soft  
 sparkling    skimmed    stale

1. Can you get me some \_\_\_\_\_ peas from the freezer, please? 2. This bread is a bit \_\_\_\_\_ – don't eat it. 3. \_\_\_\_\_ milk is much better for you than full-fat. 4. I



absolutely loved \_\_\_\_\_ beans on toast, when I was a child. **5.** We usually keep some \_\_\_\_\_ peaches in the cupboard. **6.** On a hot day like this, a glass of \_\_\_\_\_ water is very refreshing. **7.** I'm watching my weight, so I'll have some \_\_\_\_\_ lemonade, please. **8.** My cousin adds some \_\_\_\_\_ herbs from a packet to the stew before she puts it in the oven. **9.** My parents never drink wine or beer, only \_\_\_\_\_ drinks. **10.** My mum regularly buys \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables from the local market.

**55**

**Match words 1-11 with words a-k to form collocations. Make up your own sentences with them.**

- |  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. ground / instant / white                | a) <i>steak</i>     |
| 2. sliced / crusty / wholemeal             | b) <i>apple pie</i> |
| 3. soft / fizzy / still                    | c) <i>coffee</i>    |
| 4. dry / medium dry / sweet                | d) <i>dressing</i>  |
| 5. rare / medium / well-done               | e) <i>bread</i>     |
| 6. blue / full-fat / cream                 | f) <i>drink</i>     |
| 7. garlic / salad / French                 | g) <i>wine</i>      |
| 8. chicken / cheese / beef                 | h) <i>ice-cream</i> |
| 9. scrambled / poached / boiled            | i) <i>eggs</i>      |
| 10. vanilla / chocolate / Neapolitan       | j) <i>cheese</i>    |
| 11. home-made / shop-bought / microwavable | k) <i>burger</i>    |



**56**

**Transcribe the words from the left column. Match each word with its definition.**

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>pasta</i>          | a) domestic birds  |
| 2. <i>seafood</i>        | b) paste prepared from flour, eggs and water mixed and dried       |
| 3. <i>dressing</i>       | c) any kind of grain used for food                                 |
| 4. <i>dairy products</i> | d) sorts of substance, nutmeg, cinnamon, etc. used to flavour food |
| 5. <i>beverage</i>       | e) flesh of animals and birds hunted for food                      |
| 6. <i>nut</i>            | f) food made of flour, water, and yeast mixed together and baked   |
| 7. <i>ham</i>            | g) an occasion of eating   |
| 8. <i>sweets</i>         | h) upper part of a pig's leg, salted and dried or smoked           |
| 9. <i>bread</i>          | i) a general term for anything that people eat                     |
| 10. <i>food</i>          | j) milk, cheese, cream, etc.                                       |
| 11. <i>poultry</i>       | k) a drink other than water  |
| 12. <i>cereal</i>        | l) sea creatures that you can eat                                  |
| 13. <i>game</i>          | m) an edible kernel in a hard or tough shell                       |
| 14. <i>meal</i>          | n) small sweet things such as toffees, chocolates, and mints       |
| 15. <i>spice</i>         | o) a sauce for salads, consisting of oil, vinegar, and spices      |

57

Find one odd word in each of the lines below.

1.	<i>cottage cheese</i>	<i>lard</i>	<i>sour cream</i>	<i>yoghurt</i>	<i>milk</i>
2.	noodles	rice	spaghetti	macaroni	vermicelli
3.	<i>roll</i>	<i>bun</i>	<i>biscuit</i>	<i>rye bread</i>	<i>cornflakes</i>
4.	millet	waffles	buckwheat	semolina	pearl-barley
5.	<i>quail</i>	<i>trout</i>	<i>salmon</i>	<i>herring</i>	<i>plaice</i>
6.	crab	lobster	shrimp	sole	oyster
7.	<i>chicken</i>	<i>turkey</i>	<i>pheasant</i>	<i>goose</i>	<i>duck</i>
8.	mayonnaise	margarine	olive oil	lard	maize oil
9.	<i>mutton</i>	<i>sheep</i>	<i>pork</i>	<i>beef</i>	<i>veal</i>
10.	caramel	ice-cream	biscuit	candy	chocolate
11.	<i>nutmeg</i>	<i>hazel nut</i>	<i>chilli</i>	<i>almond</i>	<i>groundnut</i>
12.	parsley	radish	bay leaf	dill	garlic
13.	<i>raspberry</i>	<i>gooseberry</i>	<i>currant</i>	<i>grapefruit</i>	<i>strawberry</i>
14.	grapes	melon	water melon	lemon	walnut
15.	<i>tangerine</i>	<i>aubergine</i>	<i>squash</i>	<i>cauliflower</i>	<i>beans</i>
16.	lard	fat	cured pork	sirloin	pork
17.	<i>chocolate bar</i>	<i>cocoa</i>	<i>bon-bon</i>	<i>candy</i>	<i>toffee</i>
18.	chop	meatball	cutlet	pâté	mince
19.	<i>mango</i>	<i>tangerine</i>	<i>orange</i>	<i>pumpkin</i>	<i>grapefruit</i>
20.	goose	duck	venison	chicken	turkey

## Meals

### Vocabulary

an eater	їдець
• <i>a small ~</i>	• ~ з поганим апетитом
• <i>a great ~ / an immense ~</i>	• ~ з гарним / величезним апетитом
• <i>a choosy ~</i>	• вибагливий, перебірливий ~
a meal	прийом (приймання) їжі; їжа
• <i>to have / to eat a ~</i>	• їсти
• <i>a light ~</i>	• легкий ~
• <i>a substantial ~ / rich ~</i>	• солідний, поживний ~
• <i>a quick ~</i>	• швидкий ~
• <i>a square ~</i>	• ситний, щедрий ~
• <i>a scanty ~</i>	• скудний, мізерний ~
• <i>a monotonous ~</i>	• одноманітний ~
breakfast / to breakfast	сніданок / снідати
• <i>continental breakfast / light ~</i>	• легкий сніданок
• <i>to have a substantial breakfast</i>	• гарненько поснідати

brunch / to brunch	пізній сніданок / пізно снідати
lunch / to lunch	ланч, обід в середині дня / обідати в середині дня
dinner / to dine	рання вечеря / вечеряти
supper / to supper	пізня вечеря / вечеряти
• <i>to have / eat (breakfast, brunch, lunch, dinner, supper)</i>	• <i>снідати / пізно снідати / обідати в середині дня / вечеряти</i>
a snack / a bite	легка закуска, перекус
a course	страва
• <i>the first ~</i>	• <i>перша ~ (за обідом)</i>
• <i>the second ~</i>	• <i>друга ~ (за обідом)</i>
• <i>the main ~ / the entrée</i>	• <i>головна ~ (за обідом)</i>
• <i>an appetizer / a starter / an hors d'oeuvre</i>	• <i>закуска</i>
• <i>a dessert / afters / pudding</i>	• <i>десерт</i>
a dish	страва
a canteen	їдальня, буфет (у якомусь закладі)
eating habits	звички харчування
mealtime	час прийому їжі
to consist of / to include	складатися з / включати
to do with <i>smth.</i>	обійтися, задовольнитися чимось
to be hungry / to starve	хотіти їсти / зголодніти
to be thirsty	хотіти пити, відчувати спрагу
to be full / to be satisfied	бути ситим
to overeat	переїдати
to eat / to dine <b>out</b>	харчуватися, столуватися не вдома
to eat on the move / to eat on the go	їсти на ходу

## Do you know that

- ✓ Many young people in Britain eat on the move and don't have tea.

58

### a) Read the text and answer the questions.

#### *Meals in Britain*

Traditionally British people have the following meals a day: **breakfast**, **lunch**, **afternoon tea**, **dinner** and sometimes **supper**.



**Breakfast** is served in the morning between about 7:30 a.m. and 9 a.m. It used to be a **large meal** with porridge, eggs and bacon, sausages, tomatoes, sometimes called “**full English breakfast**”. But such a large breakfast takes a long time to prepare and is not very healthy. Nowadays, Britain's



most popular breakfast **consists of** cereal, buttered toast with orange or lemon marmalade, juice and yogurt with a cup of tea or coffee. Though some people prefer a **continental breakfast**, that is a **small meal** which is not cooked; for example, a bread roll or croissant with cheese or ham and a cup of coffee. The most common drinks at this time of day are fresh orange juice or a cup of breakfast tea.

Many people have **elevenses** (a tea-break) at about 11 o'clock in the morning. But if the first meal is eaten late in the morning instead of both breakfast and lunch, it is called **brunch** (breakfast+lunch).

**Lunch**, sometimes called more formally **luncheon**, is a **quick** meal eaten in the middle of the day, usually between about 12:30 p.m. and 2 p.m. It can be a light meal, as most people have no time to go back home for lunch so they eat at school, cafés, pubs or restaurants. For lunch many people eat a **sandwich** (also known as a **butty** or **sarnie** in some parts of the UK). Some people have a simple meal such as cheese and biscuits or soup and bread. After lunch most people take coffee, though tea is the favourite beverage in Britain. That's why there are no "**coffee houses**", but **tea rooms** and **luncheon rooms** are in abundance.



A **Sunday roast** is a traditional meal eaten by a family at Sunday lunchtime; for example, roast meat either beef, lamb, chicken or pork with roast potatoes, peas, Brussels sprouts, green beans, Yorkshire pudding, bread sauce and gravy. **Gravy** is a sauce made from the meat juices.

**Tea-time** is a small meal eaten in the late afternoon (usually between about 3:30 p.m. and 5 p.m.). People may drink tea, and often eat biscuits, cakes or savoury foods such as sandwiches, crumpets or tea-cakes. Occasionally people may have a **full afternoon tea** or a **cream tea**: this includes a scone with jam and cream (usually either **whipped cream** or thick **clotted cream**) as well as a selection of sandwiches and cakes.

**Dinner** is the main meal of the day for many people. They usually have it quite early, between 6 p.m. and 8 p.m., and often the whole family eat together. Dinner **begins with** some salad, **followed by** a clear soup, fish, vegetables and a dessert. A common type of cooked meal in Britain is **meat and two veg**. This is a meat dish served together on the same plate with two types of vegetables, one of which is potato. It is common to eat a **dessert** (also known as a **pudding**, or informally as **afters**) after the **main dish**.

**Supper** is the final meal of the day in Britain (usually between 8 p.m. and 9:30 p.m.) and is something very light like a sandwich and a cup of tea or warm milk. Nowadays this meal is usually eaten in front of the TV set!

- 1. How many meals do British people have a day?
- 2. What is "full English breakfast"? What dishes did it use to include?
- 3. What is continental breakfast?



- 4. What do British people usually eat for breakfast nowadays?
- 5. What is “the elevenses”? What is brunch?
- 6. What is luncheon?
- 7. What is a “butty”? What is gravy?
- 8. Is lunch a large meal? Where do the British eat lunch?
- 9. What dishes are served for dinner?
- 10. Sunday lunch is something special, isn't it? How can you describe it?
- 11. What is full afternoon tea? Is British afternoon tea still popular?
- 12. What is the most important meal of the day?
- 13. What is supper?



59

**Transcribe the words from the left column. Match the words and phrases with their definitions.**

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>a meal</i>                | a) a meal that is eaten in the late morning. It is a combination of breakfast and lunch.  |
| 2. <i>a course</i>              | b) a short break when you have a cup of tea or coffee with some biscuits, at around eleven o'clock in the morning               |
| 3. <i>continental breakfast</i> | c) a small amount of cold food that is served before the main part of a meal  |
| 4. <i>breakfast</i>             | d) a meal eaten in the middle of the day, typically one that is lighter or less formal than an evening meal                     |
| 5. <i>a dish</i>                | e) a simple meal eaten just before you go to bed at night   |
| 6. <i>a canteen</i>             | f) a large meal served in the middle of the day on Sunday, traditionally featuring roast meat                                   |
| 7. <i>a snack</i>               | g) the sweet course following the main course of a meal; pudding  |
| 8. <i>a tea room</i>            | h) a breakfast consisting of cooked food such as bacon, eggs, sausages, and tomatoes. It also includes toast and tea or coffee. |
| 9. <i>elevenses</i>             | i) a light breakfast, typically consisting of coffee and bread rolls with butter and jam  |
| 10. <i>gravy</i>                | j) you have dinner away from your home, usually at a restaurant   |
| 11. <i>afters</i>               | k) food that is prepared in a particular style or combination   |
| 12. <i>supper</i>               | l) a place in a factory, shop, or college where meals are served to the people who work or study there                          |
| 13. <i>a Sunday roast</i>       | m) the main meal of the day, usually served in the early part of the evening  |
| 14. <i>a butty</i>              | n) the main course, or sometimes a dish before the main course at restaurants or formal dinners                                 |
| 15. <i>lunch</i>                | o) the first meal of the day  |

16. *hors d'oeuvre* p) a light meal that is quick to cook and to eat taken in a hurry or in a casual manner
17. *brunch* q) an occasion when people sit down and eat, usually at a regular time
18. *English breakfast* r) a sauce made from the juices that come from meat when it is cooked
19. *to dine out* s) a dish, or a set of dishes served together, forming one of the successive parts of a meal
20. *an entrée* t) a small restaurant where tea, coffee, cakes, sandwiches, and light meals are served
21. *dinner* u) a filled or open sandwich

60

🔊 Listen to the speaker telling about food and eating. Fill in the gaps. Answer the questions below.

### *Food*

Isn't food **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ greatest pleasures? Do you know anyone who doesn't like food? I don't. There **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ delicious food in the world. You **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ whole lifetime eating a different dish every day. What's the tastiest food in the world? This **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ difficult question to answer. My taste in food keeps changing. Sometimes my favourite is a dessert, but then I **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ and go for a spicy curry. It's great that countries have so many different dishes. Do **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ national dish is best? Nowadays we have to be careful **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ eat. Fast food is not good for us. We need **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ on healthy food. Maybe we have to **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ in the future. **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ food you eat is good for you.

### *Eating*

Eating **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ thing ever. I love eating. Any time of the day or night I can eat... **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ eat and eat. I have a very **3.** \_\_\_\_\_. I always have. My mother used to complain about how **4.** \_\_\_\_\_. She used to ask me if I had a hole in my stomach. Eating is very, very satisfying. There are many different **5.** \_\_\_\_\_. It **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ and stops us feeling hungry. Food tastes so good and eating it makes us feel very happy. Sometimes I feel like **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ when I'm eating – especially chocolate fudge cheesecake. Yum. Eating is also a great **8.** \_\_\_\_\_. I love eating with my family, with my friends or **9.** \_\_\_\_\_. Eating can also be an international experience. Eating is great **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ anywhere you eat.

- **1.** What is your favourite food?
- **2.** Is there any food you can't live without?
- **3.** Do you like eating? What kind of eater are you?
- **4.** Do you eat for living or live for eating? Could you explain your position?

a) Read the text, answer the questions and be ready to speak about your meals.

### *My Meals*

I must say I **am** not very **particular about** my meals. I never **keep to** the **mealtime** because I find it more convenient to have my meal when I'm free or **hungry** but not when it's time for a meal. I can't say that I am **a great** or **choosy eater** but I enjoy when my meals are not **monotonous** but **rich** and **various**.



I usually **have** four **meals** a day and several **snacks** between them. **For breakfast**, I usually have some cornflakes with milk or curds with sour cream and honey followed by a cup of strong black coffee. Such a **nourishing** breakfast helps me to get ready for a hard-working day.

During the breaks at my university, I always **have a snack** and I can **do with** a cup of coffee or tea and some nuts or dried fruit. I may also eat an apple or a banana **for a change**.

As a rule, I have a lot of work to do at the University and I don't have time to go back home for lunch. Frankly speaking, I don't like **eating on the move**, so I go to a café or **canteen** to **eat out**. **As a starter**, I always take some vegetable salad, then some soup for **the first course** followed by any meat or fish dish with rice **for the second course**. I prefer either a fruit juice or stewed fruit with a cheesecake or biscuits **for dessert**. So, you see, my lunch is quite a **substantial** meal.

At about 5 p.m. I may have a kind of **tea-time** when my friends and I drop in at a café for a chat and to enjoy some cappuccino or latte with muffins or waffles.

As **for dinner**, I usually have it at about 7 p.m. with my family. It may consist of a grilled chicken breast or a fish steak with different vegetables or pickles. I **stick to the rule** not to **overeate** and not to eat sweets or pastry in the evening but I don't mind having some fruit salad with fresh or frozen berries.

As I'm in the habit of staying up late very often I feel like **having a bite** before going to bed. In this case, I may **have a supper**, which includes a glass of warm milk or kefir.

- 1. How many meals a day do you usually have?
- 2. Do you keep to mealtime?
- 3. Which is your most substantial meal? How many courses does it include?
- 4. Which is your lightest meal?
- 5. How many bites do you usually have?
- 6. Do you eat on the move? Why? or Why not?
- 7. What are your **eating habits** and meals?



**Give the English equivalents.**

Обід з п'яти страв, поживний сніданок, дотримуватися часів прийому їжі, мати за правило не переїдати, легкий сніданок, гарні та здорові звички харчування, зголодніти, задовольнятися кавою та тістечком, перекусити у



кафе, м'ясо з картоплею та підливою, вечеряти пізно, ситний ранковий сніданок (з гарячою стравою), для різноманіття, обідати у їдальні, перебірливий їдець, швидко поїсти, пізній сніданок, мати гарний апетит, одноманітна їжа, брати суп на першу страву, відчувати спрагу після солодкого, з'їсти морозиво на десерт.

**Translate into English.**

**1.** Британці зазвичай споживають сніданок рано вранці і він може бути дуже багатим та поживним, включаючи до складу вівсяну кашу або кукурудзяні пластівці з молоком та цукром, яєчню з беконом, тост з джемом чи мармеладом, апельсиновий сік, чай або каву. Такий прийом їжі називається “повний англійський сніданок”. **2.** Зазвичай люди дуже поспішають на роботу вранці і не мають часу готувати, тому вони задовольняються легким сніданком, п'ють чашку кави чи чаю з круасаном з начинкою чи без або тостом з домашнім варенням. **3.** Люди бояться, що відступати від традиційної схеми – три основні прийоми їжі на добу – дуже шкідливо. **4.** Сучасного сніданку не існувало в багатьох епохах. Римляни практично не снідали, споживаючи їжу, як правило, раз на добу в районі полудня. **5.** У Середні віки, що і як людям їсти, часто визначав монастирський устав. Так, до ранкового богослужіння їсти було не можна. А м'ясо було заборонене десь половину днів у році. Вважається, що саме тоді в англійську мову увійшло слово *breakfast*, дослівно воно означало “*break the night's fast*” – “перерви нічний піст”. **6.** Традиційний для англійського сніданку набір їжі також склався завдяки релігії. У так званий “м'ясний понеділок” перед Великим постом треба було доїсти все м'ясо, що залишалося в домі. Найчастіше це була свинина, зокрема бекон, оскільки багато людей тримали свиней. До м'яса часто додавали яйця, теж заборонені під час посту. Так і народився попередник англійського сніданку. **7.** У XVII столітті сніданок почали їсти вже всі суспільні класи. Після повернення на трон Карла II, на столах заможних людей почали з'являтися кави, чай і страви на кшталт омлету. Наприкінці 1740-х рр. у будинках багатіїв також почали влаштовувати окремі кімнати для сніданку. **8.** У XIX столітті, коли з'явилася мода на колективне полювання, яке могло тривати кілька днів, якщо не тижнів. Гостям на сніданок тоді могли подавати до 24 різних страв. **9.** Індустріальна революція середини XIX століття призвела до появи регулярного робочого

дня. Працівникам тепер треба було обов'язково поспіdatи перед роботою – це стосувалося усіх класів, в тому числі управлінців. **10.** У ХХ столітті американець Джон Гарві Келлог випадково залишив на деякий час варену кукурудзу, яка почала псуватися. Келлог не захотів викидати продукт і пропустив зерна через валики, а потім трохи обсмажив. Так з'явилися перші пластівці, а Келлог заснував багатомільярдний бізнес. **11.** У середні віки час прийому їжі визначався світловим днем. Електрики не було, люди вставали рано, трудилися і до обіду були вже голодні. Тому вони робили невелику перерву і з'їдали полуденок (“noonshine”) – зазвичай хліб із сиром. З появою штучного освітлення основний прийом їжі у заможних людей почав зсуватися на пізніший час, тож з'явилася потреба в легкому обіді. Предком слова “lunch” є англо-саксонське слова “nuncheon”, яке означало перекус, котрий тримають в руках.

64

**a) Fill in the gaps with *much, many or a lot of.***

**1.** – Do we need more bread? – Yes, there isn't \_\_\_\_\_ left. **2.** – How \_\_\_\_\_ milk should I add to the flour? – One cup is fine. **3.** – Have we got \_\_\_\_\_ tomatoes? – Yes, we've got lots in the fridge. **4.** – How \_\_\_\_\_ pepper did you put in the stew? – Why? Is it too spicy? **5.** – You've made \_\_\_\_\_ desserts. – Yes, but I've invited all my friends over! **6.** – How \_\_\_\_\_ times a week do you cook? – Two or three. **7.** – Max is a very good cook. – Yes, he has won \_\_\_\_\_ contests. **8.** – How \_\_\_\_\_ onions are left? – About five or six.

**b) Fill in the gaps with *too much or too many.***

**1.** Don't put \_\_\_\_\_ sugar on your cereal. It's not good for you. **2.** This soup tastes awful. You've added \_\_\_\_\_ salt. **3.** There are \_\_\_\_\_ people waiting for the train to Gatwick. **4.** Sophie spends \_\_\_\_\_ money on food. **5.** I can't see the band! There are \_\_\_\_\_ people standing in front of us. **6.** Our new neighbours make \_\_\_\_\_ noise. We can't sleep.

**c) Fill in the gaps with *a few or a little.***

**1.** – Hurry up, Brenda! I need to use the phone! – OK. Just give me \_\_\_\_\_ more minutes. **2.** – It's a lovely day. Let's have a picnic in the park. – Great idea! I'll pack \_\_\_\_\_ sandwiches and some drinks. **3.** – Shall I add some milk to your tea? – Yes, please but just \_\_\_\_\_. **4.** – Is Mr Roberts in? – Yes. He arrived \_\_\_\_\_ while ago. **5.** – Have you got many apples? – Only \_\_\_\_\_. **6.** – I'm going to the supermarket. Do you need anything? – Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ carrots for the vegetable soup.

**d) Fill in *a, an, any or some.***

**1.** – Mum, is there anything to eat? – I believe there's \_\_\_\_\_ lasagna left in the fridge. **2.** – I need \_\_\_\_\_ nutrition information for my recipe. – Why don't you

look on the Internet? **3.** – Do we have \_\_\_\_\_ fruit left? – Yes, there’s \_\_\_\_\_ apple on the kitchen table. **4.** – Do you need \_\_\_\_\_ food from the supermarket? – Just \_\_\_\_\_ eggs. I’m going to bake \_\_\_\_\_ cake. **5.** – Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ cup of tea? – No, thanks. I’ve just had \_\_\_\_\_ glass of juice. **6.** – Can I have \_\_\_\_\_ ice cream with my apple pie? – Of course, you can. **7.** – I had \_\_\_\_\_ pancakes with strawberries for breakfast. – Really? I had \_\_\_\_\_ omelet. **8.** – That was \_\_\_\_\_ delicious meal! – I agree. She is \_\_\_\_\_ amazing cook.

65

Insert *articles* or *some* where necessary.



**1.** We sipped \_\_\_\_\_ tea. \_\_\_\_\_ tea was so weak that it tasted like \_\_\_\_\_ metal against the teeth. **2.** You will want to have \_\_\_\_\_ tea after your journey, I think. **3.** He bought \_\_\_\_\_ cold beef, and \_\_\_\_\_ ham, and \_\_\_\_\_ French bread and butter, and came back with pretty heavy pockets. **4.** There were two bottles of \_\_\_\_\_ wine, \_\_\_\_\_ plate of \_\_\_\_\_ oranges and \_\_\_\_\_ buns with \_\_\_\_\_ powdered sugar. **5.** Here, have \_\_\_\_\_ champagne, I quite forgot to offer you any, or would you rather have \_\_\_\_\_ tea? **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ coffee without \_\_\_\_\_ bread could never honestly serve as supper. **7.** She hurried in again and found \_\_\_\_\_ water almost boiled away. **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ blood is thicker than \_\_\_\_\_ water. **9.** Rosa tasted \_\_\_\_\_ wine. It was sour but refreshing. **10.** He drank \_\_\_\_\_ wine for breakfast, dinner and supper. **11.** She looked with \_\_\_\_\_ eager, hungry eyes at \_\_\_\_\_ bread and \_\_\_\_\_ meat and \_\_\_\_\_ beer that \_\_\_\_\_ landlady brought her. **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ soup was better than Donny had hoped and it was very hot. **13.** The maid brought in \_\_\_\_\_ pears, \_\_\_\_\_ cold chicken, \_\_\_\_\_ tongue, \_\_\_\_\_ cheese. **14.** This is \_\_\_\_\_ jam I am particularly fond of. I don’t think there is \_\_\_\_\_ better jam than this one. **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ tea is cultivated in the south of our country. **16.** – What will you have for breakfast? – \_\_\_\_\_ egg and \_\_\_\_\_ glass of \_\_\_\_\_ orange juice. **17.** “Waiter! \_\_\_\_\_ two teas, and \_\_\_\_\_ coffee with \_\_\_\_\_ milk, please!” **18.** \_\_\_\_\_ salt and \_\_\_\_\_ vinegar are used effectively to preserve \_\_\_\_\_ food. **19.** She went about looking into \_\_\_\_\_ dining room, which looked like \_\_\_\_\_ kind of jewel box glowing with \_\_\_\_\_ flowers, \_\_\_\_\_ silver, \_\_\_\_\_ gold and \_\_\_\_\_ crystal. **20.** They had \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast of \_\_\_\_\_ bread-and-butter and \_\_\_\_\_ omelette.

66

Translate into English. Pay attention to the use of *articles* and *some, any, no*.



**1.** Компот дуже холодний. Краще не пий його. **2.** Додай води до супу. Він занадто густий. **3.** Він попросив склянку води без газу. **4.** Сніг був дуже глибокий. Птахи не могли знайти їжу під ним. **5.** Він став білий, наче сніг. **6.** Дуже важко ходити по глибокому снігу. **7.** Рагу гаряче. Нехай трохи охолоне. **8.** Він



не любив вівсянку. **9.** Я люблю рагу. Воно корисне. **10.** Додай лимон до чаю. Лимон дуже корисний. **11.** Поріжте лимон, будь ласка. **12.** Купи лимон до чаю. **13.** Цукерки не можуть замінити цукор. **14.** Вино солодке, а я надаю перевагу сухому вину. **15.** Приходь. Я пригощу тебе вином, якого ти ніколи не коштувала. **16.** Деякі люди люблять їсти морозиво на вулиці навіть взимку. **17.** Купи дитині морозиво. **18.** Поки ми розмовляли, морозиво розтануло. **19.** Підігрій мені котлети, будь ласка. **20.** Йому не сподобалась вівсянка. **21.** Напій занадто міцний, я не люблю міцні напої. **22.** Чудовий аромат курятини, що смажилася, заповнив усю кімнату. **23.** Перед Самантою стояла тарілка з маслом, горщечок із полуничним джемом, кава та глечик із вершками. **24.** За обідом вони пили міцну каву, намазуючи масло на черствий хліб. **25.** Я надаю перевагу приготуванню їжі з олією, тому що вона корисніша за масло. **26.** Відразу поклади їжу, яку ти купив, в холодильник. **27.** В нього закінчилися продукти, тому він їв лише рибу та кокосові горіхи. **28.** Будьте ласкаві, передайте мені сіль. Бульйон зовсім несолоний. **29.** Ми замовили морозиво для доньки, дві кави для себе, чай для бабусі та коктейль для нашої гості. **30.** “Чи не бажаєте гарячого шоколаду?” – запитала місіс Пейдж.

67

**Insert articles where necessary.**



**1.** We usually have \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at four. **2.** They ate \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast together in the kitchen. It was \_\_\_\_\_ simple meal that Maggie had prepared quickly: \_\_\_\_\_ scrambled eggs, \_\_\_\_\_ English muffins, and \_\_\_\_\_ coffee. **3.** I asked Matilda to make \_\_\_\_\_ fairly simple lunch. **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ dinner was served. **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast was \_\_\_\_\_ orange juice and \_\_\_\_\_ cornflakes with \_\_\_\_\_ milk. **6.** After \_\_\_\_\_ dinner sleep \_\_\_\_\_ while, after \_\_\_\_\_ supper walk \_\_\_\_\_ mile. **7.** They decided on \_\_\_\_\_ light supper. **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ supper was fish and chips. **9.** They had \_\_\_\_\_ dinner for six. **10.** I made his acquaintance at \_\_\_\_\_ official dinner. **11.** “I’m glad you’ve come for \_\_\_\_\_ tea. I’ve made us \_\_\_\_\_ lovely tea”. **12.** He invited me to \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant and treated me to \_\_\_\_\_ expensive supper. **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ supper is ready at last. Kids, sit down to \_\_\_\_\_ table! **14.** They had \_\_\_\_\_ quiet dinner together. **15.** We haven’t had \_\_\_\_\_ lunch yet.

68

**Translate into English paying special attention to the use of articles with names of meals.**



**1.** Це був грандіозний обід. Було запрошено багато знаменитостей. **2.** Скільки ми маємо заплатити за вечерю? **3.** Я ще не вирішила, що приготувати на обід. Боюся, в нас сьогодні буде пізній обід. **4.** Обід готовий. Будьте ласкаві, сідайте всі за стіл. **5.** Він обговорює всі важливі питання



після вечері. **6.** На жаль, у нас сьогодні буде дуже проста вечеря. **7.** Зранку вона не снідає, але влаштовує собі поживний другий сніданок. **8.** – Скільки коштує комплексний обід? – Дуже дешево. **9.** Який смачний сніданок! Ви чудовий кухар. **10.** Не запізнюйся на обід! **11.** Сніданок складався з хліба з маслом, сира та кави. **12.** Наші знайомі запросили нас на обід. **13.** Ми поснідали о восьмій годині. **14.** Ми замовили обід із трьох страв. **15.** У цій їдальні ви завжди можете скуштувати гарячий сніданок. **16.** Поспішайте! Вечеря холодне. **17.** Ось нарешті й вони. Якраз вчасно до чаю. **18.** Я пригощу вас найсмачнішою вечерею, яку ви можете скуштувати в цьому місті. **19.** За сніданком я швидко поїв та пішов на роботу. **20.** Ми повернулися до дому о дев'ятій годині та з'їли легку вечерю.

69

**Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.**



Last Monday Angle 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get up*) for work as usual and 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to the kitchen to have some breakfast. But when she 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*open*) the fridge, she 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) that her flat mate Lucy 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*drink*) all the milk – not a good start of the day! So, she 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a quick cup of black coffee, 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) dressed and 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) out to the car. There she 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) that she 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*forget*) to put the cover on the car the night before and there 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) thick frost all over the windscreen. She 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*scrape*) it all off and 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) into the car. However, when she 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*turn*) the key, nothing 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*happen*)! Someone 16. \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) the headlights on and the battery 17. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) flat. She 18. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) furious as Lucy 19. \_\_\_\_\_ (*use*) the car last and it 20. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) her who 21. \_\_\_\_\_ (*forget*) to switch off the lights. Angle 22. \_\_\_\_\_ (*head*) for the bus stop to wait in the freezing cold.

70

**Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.**



Sammy Milton 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/be*) very clever. He 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) along the beach one day when he 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*trip*) over something and 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*fall*) down on the sand. He 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/look*) where he was going. “What 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) this?” he said, picking up the object he 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*trip*) over. “I 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/see*) anything like it before.” It was, in fact, a very old oil lamp, and as he 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*rub*) it, a genie suddenly 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*fly*) out of it. “You 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*just/release*) me from the lamp!” said the genie. “Now you may have three wishes.” “Great” 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*say*) Sammy who 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) very thirsty. “I 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*) a bottle of lemonade that 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/run out*).” “No problem,” said the genie, and 16. \_\_\_\_\_ (*produce*) one instantly. Sammy 17. \_\_\_\_\_ (*pick*) up the bottle and 18. \_\_\_\_\_ (*drink*) all the lemonade in one go.

Magically, the bottle **19.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*fill*) itself up again. Sammy **20.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*drink*) all that, and exactly the same thing **21.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*happen*) again. “That’s amazing!” he said. “Thanks very much!” “You still **22.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) two more wishes, young man.” “That’s easy,” said Sammy. “I **23.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) two more of these bottles of lemonade!”

**71**

**Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Mind the word order in interrogative sentences.**

**a)** It **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) 6 p.m. and Jack **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) tired because he **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) hard all day. He **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) also hungry because he **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) nothing to eat since breakfast. His wife usually **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*bring*) him sandwiches at lunch time, but today for some reason she **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/come*).

**b)** He **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*give*) me back the cookbook, **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*thank*) me for lending it to him and **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*say*) that he **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*enjoy*) it very much; but I **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) that he **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/read*) it because most of the pages **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) still uncut.

**c)** – You **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a good meal at Hilary’s? – Well, no, it **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) very embarrassing. When we **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*), we **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) immediately that she **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*forget*) about the whole thing. – So, what she **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*)? – Well, she **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*pretend*) that she **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/forget*) and **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*say*) that the meal **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/be*) ready because she **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) home from work very late.

**d)** Mary **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*prepare*) everything for the dinner party hours before the guests **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) supposed to arrive. She **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*set*) the table when suddenly she **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*remember*) that she **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*forget*) to give her address to one of the guests. She **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) for his phone number in the diary for some time when she **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*realize*) that she **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*made*) a mistake. The dinner was to be the next day.

**e)** It was already past midnight. Kate **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*sit*) in the dining-car of the express train that **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) her back home to Bristol. She hardly **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*touch*) the meal in front of her. She **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) worried and deep in thought. Only two days ago she **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) back to England from Mexico, where she **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*teach*) English to businessmen.

## ENGLISH LANGUAGE EXAM TOPICS

**1.** The meals you have during the day.

**2.** Meals in Britain.

## SECTION II: COOKING

### GRAMMAR:

- Tense Forms (Revision)

## Cooking

### Vocabulary

Cooking	Приготування Їжі
to add	додавати
• ~ <i>salt to taste</i>	• ~ <i>сіль за смаком</i>
to bake	пекти
• ~ <i>potatoes in jackets</i>	• ~ <i>картоплю в мундирі</i>
to barbecue	готувати шашлик, смажити на рожні
to batter	місити (рідке тісто)
to beat / whisk	збивати (білки)
to blanch	бланшувати (обробляти кип'ятком, парою)
to blend	змішувати
to boil	варити / кип'ятити
• <i>to bring to the boil</i>	• <i>доводити до кипіння</i>
to bone / to pit	діставати кістки з м'яса чи риби / ~з фруктів
to baste	полювати жиром, підливою
to braise	тушкувати м'ясо, попередньо його обсмаживши
to break	розбивати (яйця)
to brew	заварювати
to brown	зажарювати, підрум'янювати
to carve	нарізати (м'ясо, пиріг, торт)
to casserole	тушкувати м'ясо з овочами в жароміщному посуді
to clear the table	прибирати зі столу
to chop	рубати / нарізувати / відбивати
to coat <b>with</b> <i>smth.</i>	обмакнути / обкатати в <i>щось</i>
to combine	з'єднувати
to cook food	готувати їжу
to cool / to chill	охолоджувати
to cover with / in foil	покривати фольгою
to crack	розколювати
to crush	давити / чавити
to cut	різати
• ~ <i>into pieces</i>	• ~ <i>на шматочки</i>
• ~ <i>into circles</i>	• ~ <i>на кружечки</i>

● ~ <i>into half rings</i>	● <i>нарізати півкільцями</i>
● ~ <i>cut into strips / julienne</i>	● <i>нарізати соломкою</i>
● ~ <i>out (rounds, stars)</i>	● <i>вирізати (кружечки, зірочки)</i>
● ~ <i>off</i>	● <i>відрізати</i>
to dice	нарізати кубиками, фігурними шматочками
to defrost	розморожувати
to dip	занурювати, вмочати
to drain / to strain	осушувати / проціджувати
to draw	потрошити птицю
to dress <b>with</b> <i>smth.</i>	заправляти <i>чимось</i>
to flavour	надавати їжі смаку та запаху
to flip over	швидко перегортати / перевертати
to fold	1) складати вдвоє 2) обережно перемішати, з'єднати (збиті білки з тістом)
to fry	смажити на сковороді
to garnish	гарнірувати, прикрашати (страву)
to grate	терти на тертці
to grill	смажити на рашпері
to grind	молоти / товкти
to heat	підігрівати
to knead	місити (круте тісто)
to lay the table	накривати на стіл
to marinate	маринувати
to mash	товкти / давити / розминати
to melt	розтоплювати
to mince	перекручувати на м'ясорубці
to mix	змішувати
to overcook / overdo	переварити
to peel	чистити (фрукти, овочі), знімати шкірочку
to pluck	обскубати
to pickle	солити / маринувати
to poach	варити яйце-пашот
to pour	наливати
to remove / ~ the core	видаляти / ~ серцевину
to rinse	промивати, виполіскувати
to roast	смажити, запікати (в духовці)
to roll	завертати в рулетик
● <i>to roll out</i>	● <i>розкачувати (тісто)</i>
● <i>to roll up</i>	● <i>згортати, скручувати</i>
to rub	терти, протирати

• ~ <i>with smth.</i>	• <i>натирати чим-небудь</i>
• ~ <i>into smth.</i>	• <i>втирати у щось</i>
to sauté	швидко смажити в маслі
to season	надавати смаку страві (за допомогою солі, перцю, спецій)
• ~ <i>with salt / pepper / spices to taste</i>	• <i>додавати сіль, перець, спеції за смаком</i>
to section	ділити на дольки
to separate	відділяти
to scale	чистити (рибу), знімати луску
to scald	обдавати окропом
to scramble	збовтати (яйця)
to scrape	чистити / скребти
to shell	чистити (яйця, горіхи)
to shred	кромсати / шаткувати
to sift / sieve	просіювати
to simmer	кип'ятити / варити на повільному вогні
to skewer	насаджувати на вертел чи паличку
to skim	знімати (піну, накип)
to skin	здирати шкіру чи лушпиння
to slice	нарізати скибочками
to smoke	коптити
to snip	різати ножицями (зелень, молоду цибулю)
to soak	замочувати
to spread	намазувати
• ~ <i>on smth.</i>	• ~ <i>на щось</i>
• ~ <i>with smth.</i>	• ~ <i>чимось</i>
to sprinkle	бризкати / кропити / посипати
to squeeze	видавлювати / здавлювати
to steam	варити на пару
to stew	тушкувати
to stir	розмішувати
to string	чистити (боби), видаляти волокно
to stuff	фарширувати / наповнювати / начиняти
to taste	куштувати на смак
to toss	перемішувати (салат)
to undercook / underdo	недоварити
to wash	мити / полоскати
to whip	збивати (вершки)

## Describing Food

### Vocabulary

Describing Food	Опис, Характеристики Їжі
appetizing	апетитний, смачний, який збуджує апетит
bitter	гіркий
bland / insipid	прісний, без смаку
creamy	вершковий, жирний, кремовий
crispy / crusty	хрусткий, зі хрусткою скоринкою
crunchy	хрусткий, приємно твердий
dainty	смачний, ласий
delicious / lip-smacking / yummy	дуже смачний; дуже приємний
detestable / disgusting	огидний, який вселяє відразу
digestible	легкотравний, який легко засвоюється
done <b>to</b> a turn / ~ <b>to</b> perfection	підсмажений, приготовлений саме в міру
edible	їстівний, придатний для їжі
fattening	який спричиняє ожиріння
fatty / oily	жирний, маслянистий
flavoured	приправлений, ароматизований, пікантний
highly-seasoned	дуже сильно приправлений
hot	1) гострий, пекучий (містить багато перцю) 2) гарячий
inedible	неїстівний
juicy	соковитий
lean ( <i>meat</i> )	пісний ( <i>про м'ясо</i> )
lukewarm	теплий, теплуватий
mild	м'який, без домішок і ароматизаторів
more-ish	чудовий, перед яким не можливо встояти
mouth-watering	апетитний
nourishing	поживний; ситний
overcooked / overdone	пересмажений, переварений, перетушений
oversalted	пересолений
perishable	швидкопсувний
plain	простий, звичайний; без добавок, як трава
rare ( <i>meat</i> )	недосмажений; напівсирий ( <i>про м'ясо</i> )
• <i>medium-rare</i>	• <i>середня прожарка</i>
• <i>well-done</i>	• <i>добре прожарений</i>
refreshing	освіжаючий
rich	поживний; здобний
rotten	гнилий, тухлий

salty	солоний
savoury	пікантний
scrumptious	винятковий, дуже смачний
sour	кислий, прокислий
spicy / spiced	приправлений спеціями, пряний, ароматний
stale	черствий; затхлий
stodgy	важкий, який важко засвоюється
succulent	соковитий, м'ясистий
sweet	солодкий
• <i>sugary</i>	• <i>дуже солодкий</i>
• <i>sickly</i>	• <i>занадто солодкий, нудотний</i>
tart	терпкий, кислий
tasty	смачний
tasteless	ніякий, без смаку
tender	м'який, ніжний
thick	густий
tough	твердий, жорсткий
undercooked / underdone	недосмажений, недоварений
undersalted	недосолений
watery	водянистий, рідкий
weak	некріпкий, рідкий, водянистий
well-done / well-cooked	добре приготовлений
zesty	пікантний, гострий

1

Read and translate the text about cooking. Answer the questions below.

### *How Do You Cook Food?*



We **boil**, **fry**, **roast**, **grill**, **curry**, **braise**, **steam**, **simmer**, **sauté** food. We **season** food **to taste with** salt, sugar, pepper (ground pepper, corn pepper), garlic, onion, shallot, leek, parsley (roots and leaves), parsnip, cinnamon, celery roots, dill, bay leaves, cardamom, almond, nutmeg, horse-radish, vinegar, mustard, etc.

We **sauté** onions in fat or sunflower oil; we **coat** meat **with** flour (breadcrumbs), with sauce; we **dip** meat **into** hot fat or beaten egg and **stew** or **simmer** it till it is done. We **add** salt, sugar or vinegar to taste. We **garnish** meat, fish or other seafood **with** chopped parsley, dill, carrots, pieces of hard-boiled egg, etc. We **dress** salad either **with** sour cream and mayonnaise or with vegetable oil and vinegar and **season** it **with spices**.



- 1. Think about your answer to the question above. Is it the same or different? Why 'yes'? Why 'no'?
- 2. Do you like cooking? Why 'yes'? Why 'no'?
- 3. What foods do you like / hate to cook? Why?
- 4. What "kitchen activities" are your favorite? What are top hates?

2

**Transcribe the verbs from the left column. Match the "cooking" verbs with their definitions.**

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>to slice</i>     | a) to cook out of doors on a rack over an open fire or on a special appliance   |
| 2. <i>to garnish</i>   | b) to keep meat or fish in a mixture of oil, vinegar and spices before cooking it, so that it can develop a special flavour |
| 3. <i>to stuff</i>     | c) to cook food in a pan that contains hot fat or oil   |
| 4. <i>to strain</i>    | d) to cook meat, vegetables slowly, mixed together, in liquid in a closed dish  |
| 5. <i>to chop</i>      | e) to fry food quickly in hot oil or butter   |
| 6. <i>to coat</i>      | f) to cook meat or other food by dry heat in an oven or over a fire   |
| 7. <i>to dress</i>     | g) to crush food that is solid but soft until it forms a soft mass  |
| 8. <i>to blanch</i>    | h) to cut food into small pieces with strong downward movements of a knife or an axe  |
| 9. <i>to braise</i>    | i) to keep food in vinegar or salt water so that it does not go bad and it develops a strong, sharp taste                   |
| 10. <i>to dice</i>     | j) to cut bread, meat, fruit, or other food into thin pieces  |
| 11. <i>to barbecue</i> | k) to remove the bones from a piece of meat or fish before cooking it   |
| 12. <i>to stew</i>     | l) to decorate cooked or prepared food with a small amount of salad, herbs, or other food                                   |
| 13. <i>to roast</i>    | m) to separate the liquid part of food from the solid parts   |
| 14. <i>to mash</i>     | n) to put food into the liquid for a short time, so that only part of it is covered, and take it out again                  |
| 15. <i>to sauté</i>    | o) to cut food into small cubes   |
| 16. <i>to knead</i>    | p) to cook an egg gently in boiling water without its shell   |
| 17. <i>to season</i>   | q) to break and mix eggs together, and then heat and stir the mixture in a pan  |
| 18. <i>to steam</i>    | r) to cover a salad with a mixture of oil, vinegar, herbs or with sour cream or mayonnaise                                  |
| 19. <i>to marinate</i> | s) to cover food with a thin layer of the substance   |
| 20. <i>to simmer</i>   | t) to put vegetables, fruit, or nuts into boiling water for a short time, usually in order to remove their skins            |
| 21. <i>to scramble</i> | u) to press and squeeze dough with hands so that it becomes smooth and ready to cook  |
| 22. <i>to poach</i>    | v) to cook food by heating it in steam from boiling water   |
| 23. <i>to dip</i>      | w) to add spices to food in order to improve its flavour  |

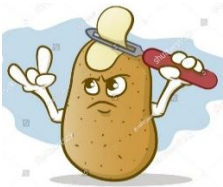
24. **to pickle** x) to fry meat or a vegetable quickly and then cook it slowly in a covered dish with a small amount of liquid
25. **to bone** y) to put a mixture of food inside a bird or a vegetable such as a pepper before cooking it
26. **to fry** z) to cook food by keeping it at or below boiling point

**3** Read the list of foodstuffs and the list of verbs. Note down what you can do to each of the foodstuffs by listing the appropriate verbs. Then take each verb and say which of the foodstuffs it can be used with.

wash	sift/sieve	chip	grate
mince			whip
knead			stir
carve			peel
scale	<b>eggs</b>		skin
bone	<b>potatoes</b>		shell
stuff	<b>fish</b>		pluck
spread	<b>cream</b>		dice
slice	<b>dough</b>		beat
mash	<b>vegetables</b>		chop
skewer	<b>meat</b>		crush
string	<b>flour</b>		crack
scrape			squeeze
grind			sprinkle
shred			scramble
whisk			roll out
snip	drain/strain	dip	mix/blend

**4** Complete each sentence with a word from the list. Use each word once only.

add   beat   cool   grate   heat   melt   peel   pour   slice  
sprinkle   bake   boil   poach   steam   fry



1. \_\_\_\_\_ the potatoes and \_\_\_\_\_ them thinly. 2. \_\_\_\_\_ the eggs in a bowl, and then \_\_\_\_\_ them to the mixture. 3. \_\_\_\_\_ the butter in a saucepan and \_\_\_\_\_ gently for two minutes. 4. \_\_\_\_\_ the mixture into a bowl and leave to \_\_\_\_\_. 5. \_\_\_\_\_ some cheese and \_\_\_\_\_ over the potatoes. 6. You can \_\_\_\_\_ an egg by cooking it in boiling water without its shell. 7. You can \_\_\_\_\_ an egg by cooking it in boiling water with its shell. 8. To \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables, cook them in a covered container over boiling water. 9. To \_\_\_\_\_ chicken, cook it in a pan of hot oil. 10. To \_\_\_\_\_ bread, cook it in the oven for about forty minutes.

**5****Choose the right answer a, b, c or d.**

1. I like my eggs soft \_\_\_\_\_ not hard.  
*a. boiled                      b. cooked                      c. steamed                      d. watered*
2. Try some of this cake, which I \_\_\_\_\_ especially for you.  
*a. browned                      b. fried                      c. baked                      d. roasted*
3. If you don't lift the saucepan carefully, it will spill and you may \_\_\_\_\_ yourself.  
*a. cut                      b. peel                      c. scald                      d. skin*
4. Dried vegetables are easy to use if you remember to \_\_\_\_\_ them overnight.  
*a. bathe                      b. dampen                      c. soak                      d. water*
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ the butter very thinly over the bread.  
*a. covered                      b. knifed                      c. scattered                      d. spread*
6. You should \_\_\_\_\_ the fat from the meat before you cook it.  
*a. carve                      b. slice                      c. shave                      d. trim*
7. Mr. Hospitable \_\_\_\_\_ a few slices off the joint for his guests.  
*a. bit                      b. carved                      c. chopped                      d. tore*
8. She had just \_\_\_\_\_ the shell of the hard-boiled egg and was starting to peel it.  
*a. burst                      b. cracked                      c. fractured                      d. shattered*
9. When you have cracked the eggs, put the \_\_\_\_\_ in the rubbish bin.  
*a. coverings                      b. covers                      c. shells                      d. skins*
10. Would you \_\_\_\_\_ some onions for me, please?  
*a. chip                      b. chop                      c. crack                      d. split*
11. I'll cook the potatoes if someone \_\_\_\_\_ them first.  
*a. peels                      b. skins                      c. strips                      d. uncovers*
12. You will have to \_\_\_\_\_ those peas before you cook them.  
*a. burst                      b. peel                      c. shell                      d. skin*
13. Will you \_\_\_\_\_ some cheese to put in this sauce?  
*a. chop                      b. grate                      c. grind                      d. powder*
14. Put the orange \_\_\_\_\_ in the waste basket, not on the floor!  
*a. peel                      b. string                      c. shell                      d. skin*
15. My mother always \_\_\_\_\_ her own bread.  
*a. bakes                      b. fries                      c. grills                      d. roasts*
16. Would you prefer \_\_\_\_\_ potatoes or chips?  
*a. poached                      b. ground                      c. mashed                      d. powdered*
17. Don't forget to buy a packet of \_\_\_\_\_ peas.  
*a. chilled                      b. frozen                      c. frosted                      d. chilly*
18. There was a wonderful smell of \_\_\_\_\_ bread in the kitchen.  
*a. cooking                      b. roasting                      c. baking                      d. grilling*

6

## Give the English equivalents to the following phrases.



Здирати шкірку з маринованих помідорів, різати ножицями зелену цибулю, терти на терці моркву та столовий буряк, змішувати інгредієнти для салату, видавлювати лимон, кришити овочі для салату, варити броколі та цвітну капусту на пару, випікати хліб, заправляти салат сметаною або майонезом, проціджувати вермішель, чистити рибу, розмішувати суп, занурювати відбивні в збиті яйця, смажити курку в духовці, розминати картоплю, розкачувати тісто для пирога, варити бульйон на малому вогні, пропускати яловичину через м'ясорубку, знімати піну з супу, кропити (бризкати) водою слойки, насаджувати помідори на паличку, просіювати муку, надавати каші смаку, різати кільцями цибулю, лущити горіхи, давити (чавити) часник, кип'ятити молоко, додавати оцет до салату за смаком, відділяти жовтки від білків, нарізати м'ясо, прикрашати страву овочами та зеленню, нарізати тонкими шматочками сир, поливати індичку жиром, розколювати волоські горіхи, обскубувати курку, шаткувати капусту, охолоджувати вино, відділяти м'ясо качки від кісток, тушкувати телятину з овочами, чистити моркву ножем, розморозувати м'ясо, різати на кубики ковбасу, фарширувати яйця паштетом, відрізати верхівку редьки, чистити картоплю, вмішувати масло в суміш, збивати яйця, молоти перець, розігрівати суп, смажити картоплю, розтоплювати шоколад, готувати яйця пашот, смажити свинину на рашпері, видаляти кісточки з персиків, доводити молоко до кипіння, підрум'янити картоплю, замочити горох на ніч, переварити креветки, недоварити квасолю, недосолити суп, нарізати соломкою огірки, додати перець за смаком, помішувати манну кашу.



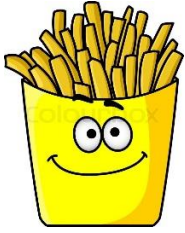
7

## Listen to the speaker telling about potatoes and French fries. Fill in the gaps. Answer the questions below.

### Potatoes

Potatoes are very important in my life. Actually, they're more **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ dinner plate. I love potatoes. They **2.** \_\_\_\_\_. I cannot count the number **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ cook a potato. Potatoes can be **4.** \_\_\_\_\_, boiled, sautéed, and lots more. You can also eat potatoes hot or cold – I **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ potato salad in the summer. Different countries cook potatoes in different ways too. Indian cooking **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ potatoes. My favourite Indian potato dish is called aloo gobi – that's potatoes and cauliflower **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ spices. One day, I'll have to find out how healthy potatoes are. I know fried potatoes are high in cholesterol, but I'm **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ potatoes.

## French Fries



Someone **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ that French fries are not French. There must be **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ between fries and France, **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ wouldn't be called French Fries. Wherever they are from, I love them. I guess they're the **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ food in the world. Everyone eats French fries. They are **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ – you can eat them with so many things. You can even have a French Fries sandwich. People **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ things on top of French fries. I love ketchup and mayonnaise on my fries – both together. You **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ salt. The only time I don't like fries is when they are cold. I get angry **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ fries that aren't hot in a fast food restaurant. I **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ immediately. All **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ of French fries has made me want to eat some.

- **1.** Do you like potatoes? How often do you eat them?
- **2.** How do you cook potatoes? What dishes with potatoes do you know? Which are your favourite?
- **3.** Give the detailed recipe of your favourite dish with potatoes.

8

**Fill in the table using the necessary adjectives, which describe taste.**

<b>1.</b> crisps, nuts, bacon	
<b>2.</b> pastries, cakes, chocolate, honey	
<b>3.</b> curry, chilli, Tabasco, chilli peppers	
<b>4.</b> dark chocolate, olives, black coffee	
<b>5.</b> chips, fried bacon, fried chicken	
<b>6.</b> bad milk, lemons, pickled onions	
<b>7.</b> whipped cream, yoghurt, milk	
<b>8.</b> cracker, breadcrumb, waffle	
<b>9.</b> orange, mango, watermelon	
<b>10.</b> factory bread, avocado, pita bread	

9

**Transcribe the words from the left column. Match the words with their definitions.**

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <b>1.</b> <i>appetizing</i> | <b>a)</b> thin or tasteless as a result of containing too much water                       |
| <b>2.</b> <i>fattening</i>  | <b>b)</b> unseasoned, mild-tasting, or insipid   |
| <b>3.</b> <i>seasoned</i>   | <b>c)</b> very juicy and very enjoyable to eat   |
| <b>4.</b> <i>stale</i>      | <b>d)</b> contains substances necessary for growth, health, and good condition             |
| <b>5.</b> <i>dainty</i>     | <b>e)</b> looks or smells extremely nice   |
| <b>6.</b> <i>tart</i>       | <b>f)</b> spoiled by being cooked for too long   |
| <b>7.</b> <i>refreshing</i> | <b>g)</b> it is safe to eat and not poisonous  |
| <b>8.</b> <i>stodgy</i>     | <b>h)</b> unpleasant and makes you feel slightly sick, often because it is extremely sweet |

- |                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| 9. <i>fatty</i>           | i) juicy and good to eat, especially meat or vegetables.  |
| 10. <i>crispy</i>         | j) no longer fresh or good to eat   |
| 11. <i>flavoured</i>      | k) it does not taste or smell strong, sharp, or bitter, especially when you like it because of this |
| 12. <i>more-ish</i>       | l) looks and smells good, so that you want to eat it  |
| 13. <i>juicy</i>          | m) pleasantly hard or crisp so that it makes a sharp noise when you eat or crush it                 |
| 14. <i>mouth-watering</i> | n) has salt, pepper, herbs, or spices added   |
| 15. <i>perishable</i>     | o) cooked for less time than necessary, and so is not pleasant to eat                               |
| 16. <i>bland</i>          | p) makes you feel energetic or cool again after you have been tired or hot                          |
| 17. <i>overdone</i>       | q) particularly good to eat and served in a small portion   |
| 18. <i>sickly</i>         | r) has a sharp taste and is acid in taste   |
| 19. <i>nourishing</i>     | s) it is only slightly warm   |
| 20. <i>succulent</i>      | t) contains a lot of fat  |
| 21. <i>underdone</i>      | u) very solid and heavy. It makes you feel very full, and is difficult to digest.                   |
| 22. <i>mild</i>           | v) has a hard, dry, and brittle surface or texture  |
| 23. <i>crunchy</i>        | w) goes bad after quite a short period of time  |
| 24. <i>edible</i>         | x) causes an increase in the weight of someone who eats it  |
| 25. <i>watery</i>         | y) various ingredients were added to it so that it has a distinctive flavour                        |
| 26. <i>lukewarm</i>       | z) It is so nice that you want to keep eating more of it once you have started.                     |

10

Fill in the blanks with the correct word.



1. Indian food is often very hot and \_\_\_\_\_. 2. I'm sorry for being so noisy, but this apple is really \_\_\_\_\_. 3. Haven't we got any fresh bread? This loaf is \_\_\_\_\_. 4. The meat was \_\_\_\_\_ because she forgot to take it out of the oven in time. 5. Fizzy drinks are very \_\_\_\_\_ and can be bad for your teeth. 6. I'm not sure that this wild mushroom is \_\_\_\_\_. 7. These pistachio nuts are so \_\_\_\_\_. I can't help eating them. 8. You haven't heated the soup properly. It's not hot, just \_\_\_\_\_. 9. She doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ food without salt, pepper and spices. 10. We never eat fried potatoes with roast meat for supper because they are very \_\_\_\_\_. 11. \_\_\_\_\_ coffee doesn't wake me up in the morning. 12. I always keep dairy products in the fridge because they are \_\_\_\_\_.

**11****Choose the right answer.**

1. What are you cooking? It \_\_\_\_\_ good.  
*a. feels                      b. flavours                      c. smells                      d. sniffs*
2. The dish had a very interesting taste as it was \_\_\_\_\_ with lemon.  
*a. flavoured                      b. pickled                      c. seasoned                      d. spiced*
3. The apple was so \_\_\_\_\_ that he put some sugar on it.  
*a. bad                      b. juicy                      c. ripe                      d. sour*
4. It tasted so \_\_\_\_\_ of mint that the other flavours were lost.  
*a. forcefully                      b. fully                      c. hardly                      d. strongly*
5. The apples had become so \_\_\_\_\_ that we had to throw them away.  
*a. overripe                      b. poisonous                      c. rotten                      d. green*
6. That milk smells \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. acid                      b. bitter                      c. sharp                      d. sour*
7. The sauce would be more \_\_\_\_\_ if you put more garlic.  
*a. taste                      b. tasteful                      c. tasteless                      d. tasty*
8. The delicious spread of sweets made the child's mouth \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. cold                      b. dry                      c. water                      d. wet*
9. Please, put some more water in my coffee because it is too \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. black                      b. dense                      c. strong                      d. thick*
10. If there is one thing I don't like, it is \_\_\_\_\_ tea.  
*a. delicate                      b. light                      c. pale                      d. weak*
11. I wouldn't eat those gooseberries if I were you, they don't look \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. formed                      b. ready                      c. ripe                      d. underdone*
12. There is nothing more \_\_\_\_\_ on a hot day than a glass of ice-cold fruit juice.  
*a. freshing                      b. quenching                      c. refreshing                      d. relaxing*
13. Mr. Forgetful didn't put the milk into the fridge so it \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. went back                      b. went down                      c. went off                      d. went out*
14. I don't like my steak cooked too long. I like it \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. hard                      b. raw                      c. underdone                      d. well-done*
15. James wants to slim, so he should avoid eating \_\_\_\_\_ foods such as bread or potatoes.  
*a. fatty                      b. greasy                      c. spicy                      d. starchy*

**12****Decide which answer a, b, c or d best fits each space.**

### *Pea Soup*



This is just right for a cold winter day, and is both **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ and cheap. If you use dried peas, **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ them for at least twelve hours in cold water. Drain them and put them in a large **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ with plenty of water. Bring them to the boil, and then



let them simmer gently 4. \_\_\_\_\_ the peas are soft. I find it easier to use 5. \_\_\_\_\_ peas, which are already cooked. This 6. \_\_\_\_\_ time, and also guarantees that the peas will be soft, since it can take hours of boiling before they 7. \_\_\_\_\_. Two small 450 gram cans are usually 8. \_\_\_\_\_. Strain the peas, but keep some of the liquid for the soup. 9. \_\_\_\_\_ about three tablespoons of olive oil in a clean saucepan, and gently heat a chopped 10. \_\_\_\_\_, two or three cloves of garlic and some 11. \_\_\_\_\_ carrot. 12. \_\_\_\_\_ half the peas and turn them in the oil over a low heat. Meanwhile blend the remaining peas in a food 13. \_\_\_\_\_ until they make a smooth cream. Add about half a litre of water to the vegetables and bring to the boil. Mix in the creamed peas and cook slowly. Add salt and 14. \_\_\_\_\_ and a pinch of mixed herbs. You can also add a stock cube or other vegetables. Some 15. \_\_\_\_\_ add lemon juice at the end. Serve hot with plenty of bread.

- |     |              |           |            |             |
|-----|--------------|-----------|------------|-------------|
| 1.  | a) expensive | b) tasty  | c) worth   | d) cold     |
| 2.  | a) soak      | b) bury   | c) wash    | d) water    |
| 3.  | a) kettle    | b) mug    | c) sink    | d) saucepan |
| 4.  | a) when      | b) until  | c) if      | d) enough   |
| 5.  | a) the       | b) to     | c) canned  | d) crude    |
| 6.  | a) makes     | b) takes  | c) saves   | d) gives    |
| 7.  | a) soften    | b) harden | c) widen   | d) lengthen |
| 8.  | a) much      | b) enough | c) mine    | d) few      |
| 9.  | a) Grate     | b) Peel   | c) Beat    | d) Pour     |
| 10. | a) onion     | b) up     | c) one     | d) water    |
| 11. | a) melted    | b) beaten | c) poached | d) sliced   |
| 12. | a) One       | b) Then   | c) Add     | d) Serve    |
| 13. | a) just      | b) not    | c) dish    | d) mixer    |
| 14. | a) paper     | b) puppy  | c) pepper  | d) poppy    |
| 15. | a) cookers   | b) cooks  | c) cookery | d) chiefs   |

13

a) Choose the correct words to complete the Internet forum entries.

**Mary:** I've got to cook a meal for the family tonight. Has anyone got a recipe for something easy?

**Sue:** Sorry – I can't do anything in the kitchen. I can't even 1. *boil/bake* an egg. I can 2. *pile/peel* the potatoes and 3. *grate/cut* some cheese, but as for 4. *doing/baking* cakes or 5. *roasting/baking* meat – no way. I once tried 6. *copying/following* a recipe for a meat dish and 7. *burned/fired* the saucepan!

**Bob:** My suggestion is to take a frozen meal out of the freezer, 8. *boil/cook* it in the microwave and then 9. *place/serve* it on posh plates. Works every time!

**Tim:** Mine would be to **10. prefer/choose** something from a takeaway menu, **11. order/call** it by phone and say you cooked it yourself. Just hope they don't ask for the **12. receipt/recipe!**

**b) Now complete these entries with the correct words in the box.**

seasonings    oven    appetite    chop    stir    sprinkle  
 ingredients    oil    heat    fry

**Caroline:** I'm attaching a really easy recipe for a lovely meal with several basic **1. \_\_\_\_\_**. Just **2. \_\_\_\_\_** all the vegetables and **3. \_\_\_\_\_** the meat in some hot **4. \_\_\_\_\_** for a few minutes, then put everything into a big pot and **5. \_\_\_\_\_** on some herbs and other **6. \_\_\_\_\_**. Add some tinned tomatoes and red wine. Cook on a low **7. \_\_\_\_\_** in the **8. \_\_\_\_\_** for two and a half hours. **9. \_\_\_\_\_** every fifteen minutes. Serve with a salad. Perfect every time.

**Sue:** If I have to wait two and a half hours, I can lose my **10. \_\_\_\_\_!** Take them out to a restaurant!

**14** a) You are going to hear a TV chef telling a group of people how to cook something. Look at the pictures, which show the things he uses.



Can you guess what he is going to make? \_\_\_\_\_

**b) Listen and check if you were right.**

**c) Listen again and fill in the gaps.**

1. Continue \_\_\_\_\_ this until the mixture begins to look pale and fluffy.
2. Avoid \_\_\_\_\_ the eggs all at the same time.
3. Keep \_\_\_\_\_ all the time.
4. Don't forget \_\_\_\_\_ the baking powder.
5. I recommend \_\_\_\_\_ sultanas and apricots.
6. If you prefer \_\_\_\_\_ dates or raisins, that's fine.
7. Some people like \_\_\_\_\_ some nuts too.
8. If you decide \_\_\_\_\_ nuts, chop them up small.
9. Remember \_\_\_\_\_ if the fruit cake is ready after about an hour.
10. I suggest \_\_\_\_\_ a little lemon juice as well.
11. Don't try \_\_\_\_\_ the cake until it's completely cold.
12. Don't expect \_\_\_\_\_ much fruit cake left after a couple of hours.





11. \_\_\_\_\_ pan and cook for about 12. \_\_\_\_\_ minute. Turn 13. \_\_\_\_\_ pancake over and cook a little longer. Serve hot, with 14. \_\_\_\_\_ sugar and 15. \_\_\_\_\_ lemon juice.

17

👂 Listen and explain why the answers A and B are incorrect. Then listen again and write what the correct answer could be.

**What has recently changed in culinary trends?**

x A. There have been fewer and fewer new TV shows about cooking.

x B. Nowadays a small number of famous cooks present their recipes to the public.

✓ C. (your answer) \_\_\_\_\_

18

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.



It was Sunday afternoon. I 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*watch*) a cookery program on TV when I 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*realize*) how hungry I was. But of course I was hungry; I 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/eat*) anything since lunch, and I 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*run*) a race in the morning. “Biscuits!” I 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*). My mother 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*give*) me a jar of delicious home-made biscuits.

I 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) into the kitchen, 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*open*) the fridge and 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*pour*) some milk in a big glass. Then I 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) for the kitchen chair but it 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/be*) there: somebody 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) it away. And there were no biscuits in the biscuit jar: somebody 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*eat*) them all! I was sure that I 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*put*) the jar there the previous day, and I 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*eat*) only one cookie. It was very strange.

A few minutes later, I 16. \_\_\_\_\_ (*drink*) my glass of milk when I 17. \_\_\_\_\_ (*hear*) a loud noise coming from the dining room. I 18. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) there quickly and I 19. \_\_\_\_\_ (*open*) the door. I couldn’t believe my eyes. An enormous monkey 20. \_\_\_\_\_ (*eat*) the biscuits excitedly on the kitchen chair.

19

👂 Listen and write the recipes you hear.

**Dish #1** \_\_\_\_\_

Ingredients: \_\_\_\_\_; Preparation steps: \_\_\_\_\_; How to serve \_\_\_\_\_

**Dish #2** \_\_\_\_\_

Ingredients: \_\_\_\_\_; Preparation steps: \_\_\_\_\_; How to serve \_\_\_\_\_

**Dish #3** \_\_\_\_\_

Ingredients: \_\_\_\_\_; Preparation steps: \_\_\_\_\_; How to serve \_\_\_\_\_

**Dish #4** \_\_\_\_\_

Ingredients: \_\_\_\_\_; Preparation steps: \_\_\_\_\_; How to serve \_\_\_\_\_

**Dish #5** \_\_\_\_\_

Ingredients: \_\_\_\_\_; Preparation steps: \_\_\_\_\_; How to serve \_\_\_\_\_

**Dish #6** \_\_\_\_\_

Ingredients: \_\_\_\_\_; Preparation steps: \_\_\_\_\_; How to serve \_\_\_\_\_

**Dish #7** \_\_\_\_\_

Ingredients: \_\_\_\_\_; Preparation steps: \_\_\_\_\_; How to serve \_\_\_\_\_

**Dish #8** \_\_\_\_\_

Ingredients: \_\_\_\_\_; Preparation steps: \_\_\_\_\_; How to serve \_\_\_\_\_

20

**Read and translate the recipes from/into English.**

## **Cookbook**

### **Vegetable Salads and Appetisers**

#### **(1) Грецький салат**

**Інгредієнти:** (на 7-8 порцій)

- 350 г болгарського перцю
- 500 г помідорів
- 200 г бринзи чи сиру Фета
- 400 г огірків
- 150 г маслин (без кісточок)
- 150 г цибулі
- зелень за смаком (петрушка, кріп)

**Соус:**

- 5 ст.л. оливкової або рослинної олії
- 2 ст.л. лимонного соку
- сіль, перець за смаком

**Рецепт приготування соусу:**

1. Змішати олію з лимонним соком, посолити та поперчити за смаком.

**Рецепт приготування салату:**

1. Овочі помити та висушити. Цибулю нарізати напівкільцями.
2. Помідори нарізати великими кубиками або шматочками.
3. Огірки розрізати вздовж, потім нарізати тонкими скибочками чи кубиками.
4. Перець почистити від зерняток, нарізати соломкою або кубиками.
5. Фету чи бринзу нарізати кубиками.
6. В салатницю викласти помідори, огірки, болгарський перець, цибулю.
7. Додати сіль, перець. Заправити соусом, все гарно перемішати.
8. Акуратно викласти бринзу чи сир Фета та цілі маслини. Перемішувати не потрібно, так як бринза та сир Фета дуже ніжні.
9. Прикрасити зеленню за смаком. Подавати холодним.

*Приємного апетиту!*



## (2) Салат "Вітамінний"

**Інгредієнти:** (на 8-10 порцій)

- 300 г червоної капусти
- 200 г помідорів
- 200 г огірків
- 100 г редьки
- 200 г болгарського перцю
- цибуля порей чи ріпчаста
- зелень за смаком (петрушка, кріп)
- сіль за смаком
- рослинна олія за смаком



**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Всі овочі старанно вимити та висушити.
2. Капусту нашинкувати, редьку нарізати тоненькими скибочками.
3. Цибулю нарізати напівкільцями.
4. Огірки нарізати соломкою, помідори нарізати кубиками.
5. Перець почистити від зерняток, нарізати соломкою або кубиками.
6. Зелень мілко нарізати ножом або ножицями.
7. Змішати капусту, редьку, цибулю, огірки, помідори, зелень.
8. Посолити та заправити рослинною олією. Подавати холодним.

*Приємного апетиту!*

## (3) Салат "Простий"

**Інгредієнти:** (на 8-10 порцій)

- 400 г консервованого зеленого горошку
- 350 г огірків, кілька листочків зеленого салату
- 3 яйця
- сіль, майонез за смаком



**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Огірки помити та нарізати кубиками.
2. Яйця зварити вкруту та натерти на тертці.
3. Зелений салат промити, висушити та порвати руками.
4. Додати огірки, яйця, горошок (рідину злити), посолити за смаком.
5. Заправити майонезом. Подавати холодним.

*Приємного апетиту!*

## (4) Салат "Осінь"

**Інгредієнти:** (на 8-10 порцій)

- 300 г будь-яких маринованих грибів
- 250 г кислих яблук
- 18-20 помідорок черрі чи 2-3 звичайних помідори
- майонез чи рослинна олія за смаком
- сіль за смаком



**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Помідори черрі помити, розрізати на дві частини (звичайні помідори нарізати кубиками).



2. Помити гриби. Якщо гриби великі, їх потрібно порізати.
3. Яблука помити, почистити, видалити з них серцевину, нарізати кубиками.
4. Змішати помідори, гриби, яблука. Посолити за смаком.
5. Заправити майонезом. Подавати холодним.

*Приємного апетиту!*

### **(5) Салат "Свіжість"**

**Інгредієнти:** (на 6-8 порцій)

- 500 г кольрабі чи редьки
- 150 г стебел селери
- 300 г яблука
- рослинна олія
- 200 г моркви
- сіль за смаком
- сік половини лайму чи лимону



**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Кольрабі чи редьку помити, натерти на тертці. Якщо соку багато, його потрібно віджати.
2. Моркву та селеру помити, почистити, натерти на тертці.
3. Яблука помити, почистити, видалити серцевину, нарізати соломкою.
4. Додати сік лайму, все перемішати.
5. Додати кольрабі, моркву, селеру.
6. Заправити рослинною олією, посолити за смаком. Подавати холодним.

*Приємного апетиту!*

### **(6) Салат "Пікантний"**

**Інгредієнти:** (на 6-8 порцій)

- 200 г капусти (білої та/чи червоної)
- 150 г родзинок без кісточок
- 200 г яблук
- 150 г моркви
- рослинна олія



**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Родзинки замочити в теплій воді на 20-30 хвилин.
2. Капусту помити та нашинкувати.
3. Яблука помити, видалити серцевину, нарізати кубиками.
4. Моркву помити, почистити та натерти соломкою.
5. Змішати капусту, родзинки, яблуко, моркву.
6. Заправити рослинною олією. Подавати холодним.

*Приємного апетиту!*

### **(7) Помідори з сиром та часником**

**Інгредієнти:** (на 6-8 порцій (12-15 штук))

- 350 г помідорів
- 100 г сиру (твердого, напівтвердого чи плавленого)
- 2-3 зубки часнику
- 2-3 яйця
- майонез, зелень за смаком





### **Рецепт приготування:**

1. Сир натерти на тертці.
2. Часник почистити, подавити на часникодавці та додати до сиру.
3. Яйця зварити, почистити, натерти на тертці.
4. Додати майонез, все перемішати.
5. Помідори помити, нарізати кружальцями (товщиною біля 6-8 мм).
6. Викласти на помідори сирну масу та прикрасити зеленню за смаком.
7. Подавати холодними.

*Приємного апетиту!*

## **Main Dishes**

### **(8) Salmon with honey-coriander glaze**

**Prep Time:** 5 minutes **Total Time:** 35 minutes

#### **Ingredients:**

- *1/4 cup honey*
- *5 tablespoons soy sauce*
- *2 teaspoons fresh lemon juice*
- *1 tablespoon whole coriander seeds*
- *4 skinned salmon fillets*
- *2 teaspoons vegetable oil*



#### **How to cook:**

1. Toast the coriander seeds in a dry, large nonstick frying pan over medium-high heat, stirring constantly, until golden, about 3 minutes.
2. Remove from heat; let cool. Grind the seeds in a spice grinder or crush with a mortar and pestle until coarsely ground; reserve the frying pan.
3. Make glaze: Stir together the crushed coriander seeds, honey, soy sauce, and lemon juice in a small bowl until combined.
4. Lightly brush the top of each salmon fillet with glaze; reserve remainder. Heat the oil in the nonstick frying pan over medium heat until hot but not smoking. Cook the salmon fillets, glazed sides down, for 1 minute; reduce heat to medium-low, and cook for 2 minutes more. Turn the fillets over, and cook for 3 minutes for medium-rare (salmon will be slightly pink in the middle), or longer if desired. Transfer to a plate; loosely cover with foil to keep warm.
5. Pour the remaining glaze into the frying pan; bring to the boil over medium heat. Cook until the glaze has thickened to the consistency of syrup, for about 1 minute. Serve the salmon with some glaze on the side.

*Bon appetite!*

### **(9) Lasagna**

#### **Ingredients:**

- *1 pound lasagna noodles or packaged precooked lasagna noodles*
- *coarse salt*
- *5 links sweet Italian sausage, or a mixture of hot and sweet, pierced with a fork*

- *1 large egg*
- *1 pound ricotta cheese*
- *3/4 cup freshly grated pecorino Romano or Parmesan cheese, plus more for serving*
- *5 cups Basic Italian Tomato Sauce, (double the recipe and cook for 30 minutes longer to thicken)*
- *1 pound fresh or prepackaged mozzarella cheese, cut crosswise into 1/3-inch-thick slices*
- *extra virgin olive oil, for sprinkling (drizzling)*

### **Preparation:**

1. Bring a large pot of water to a boil over high heat. Add the noodles and a generous pinch of salt and cook for half as long as the package suggests. Drain in cold water. (Skip this step if noodles are precooked.)
2. Preheat the oven. In a medium skillet over medium-high heat, fry the sausage links until cooked through, about 10 minutes. With kitchen scissors, snip the sausage into disks in the pan and continue to fry over low heat until the cut surfaces are crispy, about 20 minutes. Drain off the fat.
3. In a medium bowl, stir together the egg, ricotta, and 1/2 cup of the pecorino.
4. To assemble the lasagna, spread 1 cup of the tomato sauce in the bottom of a greased 9-by-13-inch baking dish. Drain the noodles. Overlap one third of the noodles atop the sauce to cover the pan bottom. Spread all the cooked sausage over the noodles and spoon over another cup of sauce. Lay down the second third of noodles. Evenly spread all the ricotta mixture on top of the noodles and flatten with the spoon to make an even layer. Top with the remaining noodles to completely cover the cheese. Pour over 1 1/2 to 2 cups sauce to cover. Evenly lay all the mozzarella slices on top. Sprinkle around the remaining 1/4 cup pecorino and drizzle with olive oil.
5. Bake uncovered for 40 minutes, or until the lasagna is bubbling all over and lightly golden on top. Let rest for 10 to 15 minutes before slicing. Serve with grated cheese and warmed extra sauce at the table.

### **Basic Italian Tomato Sauce**

#### **Ingredients:**

- *1 1/2 tablespoons extra-virgin olive oil*
- *2 cloves garlic, minced*
- *1/8 teaspoon crushed red pepper flakes*
- *1 28-ounce can best-quality tomatoes, chopped in a blender*
- *1 sprig of fresh basil (optional)*
- *1/2 teaspoon coarse salt*
- *1 tablespoon unsalted butter (optional)*

### **Preparation:**

1. Heat a medium saucepan over medium heat. Swirl around the olive oil to coat the pan, and when the oil is hot, add the garlic and red pepper flakes. Stir constantly for 30 seconds, just long enough to release the garlic's fragrance and transform it slightly from its raw state. Don't cook it to golden.
2. Raise the heat to high and stir in the tomatoes and salt. Bring to a boil, reduce the heat, and simmer, uncovered, for 30 minutes. In the last 5 minutes of cooking, add the basil sprig, if using. Remove the basil before serving and swirl in the butter, if using.

*Bon appetite!*

## **(10) Shepherd's pie**

### **Ingredients:**

- |                     |                    |                     |
|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| ▪ 450 g minced beef | ▪ 700 g potatoes   | ▪ 50 g flour        |
| ▪ 1 large onion     | ▪ 25 g butter      | ▪ 300 ml beef stock |
| ▪ 2 carrots         | ▪ 60 ml fresh milk | ▪ salt to taste     |
| ▪ 50 g mushrooms    | ▪ 50 g cheese      | ▪ pepper to taste   |

### **How to make:**

1. Slice the onion, carrots and mushrooms.
2. Fry them in a pan with the minced beef for about 10 minutes, stirring all the time.
3. Add the flour and stir for one more minute.
4. Add the beef stock and some salt and pepper and stir again until the mixture becomes thicker.
5. Transfer into a casserole dish and put into the oven at 190°C for 25 minutes.
6. Meanwhile cook the peeled potatoes in boiling salted water for 20 minutes.
7. Then drain and mash together with the butter and milk.
8. Put the potato on top of the minced mixture, grate the cheese and sprinkle it on top.
9. Return the dish to the oven for 15 minutes.
10. Serve hot with green vegetables.

*Bon appetite!*

## **(11) Гаспачо**

### **Інгредієнти:** (на 8-10 порцій)

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| ▪ 500 г помідорів   | ▪ 300 г болгарського перцю               |
| ▪ 300 г огірків     | ▪ 100 мл оливкової олії                  |
| ▪ 150 г цибулі      | ▪ сок 1/2 лимону чи 2 ч.л. винного оцету |
| ▪ 1-2 зубки часнику | ▪ сіль, перець, зелень за смаком         |



### **Рецепт приготування:**

1. Нарізати цибулю та часник.

2. Болгарський перець помити, очистити від зерняток, нарізати шматочками.
3. Огірки помити, очистити від шкірки, нарізати шматочками.
4. Помідори бланшувати, очистити від шкірки, розрізати на 3-4 частини.
5. У блендері подрібнити помідори, болгарський перець, огірки, цибулю, часник.
6. Додати сік лимону, оливкову олію, посолити, поперчити за смаком.
7. Все ще раз збити.
8. Суп покласти в холодильник на 3-4 години.
9. Готовий суп посипати зеленню. Подавати холодним з сухариками.

*Приємного апетиту!*

## (12) Сирний суп

**Інгредієнти:** (на 5-7 порцій)

- 500 г курячого філе
- 150 г моркви
- 400 г плавленого сиру
- 150 г цибулі
- 150 г рису
- сіль, перець за смаком
- 400 г картоплі
- зелень за смаком



**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Куряче філе промити, залити 3 л води, посолити, поперчити і варити до готовності (біля 20 хвилин після закипання).
2. Коли філе буде готовим, його потрібно дістати.
3. У киплячий бульйон засипати рис, варити 10 хвилин.
4. Цибулю мілко нарізати. Моркву помити, почистити і натерти на тертці.
5. Картоплю помити, почистити, нарізати кубиками.
6. М'ясо нарізати невеликими шматочками.
7. У бульйон додати картоплю, цибулю та моркву та варити 5-7 хвилин.
8. Додати м'ясо, варити до готовності картоплі.
9. Додати плавлений сир, гарно перемішати та зняти з вогню.
10. При подачі посипати зеленню. Подавати гарячим чи теплим.

*Приємного апетиту!*

## (13) Запіканка "Рататуй"

**Інгредієнти:** (на 5-7 порцій)

- 500 г баклажанів
- 500 г цукіні чи кабачків
- 500 г помідорів
- бальзамічний оцет

**Інгредієнти для соусу:**

- 350 г помідорів
- 350 г болгарського перцю
- 200 г цибулі
- 2-3 гілочки тим'яну за бажанням
- сіль
- рослинна олія

**Інгредієнти для заправки:**

- 5 ст.л. рослинної олії
- зелень за смаку
- 2-3 зубчики часнику
- сіль, перець за смаком



### **Рецепт приготування соусу:**

1. Перець помити, викласти в форму для запікання, поставити в духовку.
2. Запекати при температурі 180 градусів до тих пір, поки шкірка не почне чорніти (близько 30 хвилин).
3. Гарячий перець покласти в поліетиленовий пакет та остудити.
4. Перець очистити від шкірки та насіння, нарізати кубиками.
5. Цибулю дрібно нарізати.
6. Помідори помити, очистити від шкірки, нарізати кубиками.
7. На рослинній олії обсмажити цибулю, додати перець, смажити 2-3 хв.
8. Додати помідори, посолити, поперчити.
9. Смажити до тих пір, поки соус не почне густіти (близько 5-7 хвилин).
10. Подрібнити соус в блендері.
11. Додати листочки чебрецю, перемішати.
12. Викласти соус в форму, розрівняти.

### **Рецепт приготування заправки:**

1. Зелень промити, дрібно нарізати.
2. Часник почистити, дрібно нарізати.
3. Змішати олію, зелень, часник.
4. Посолити, поперчити, перемішати.

### **Рецепт приготування блюда:**

1. Цукіні помити та нарізати дуже тонкими кружечками.
2. Баклажани помити та нарізати тонкими кружечками (якщо баклажани гіркі, їх треба посолити, залишити на 30 хвилин, потім промити в холодній воді, віджати).
3. Помідори помити, нарізати тонкими кружечками.
4. У форму, чергуючи, викласти баклажани, помідори, цукіні.
5. Овочі полити заправкою, форму накрити фольгою.
6. Запекати в духовці при температурі 180 градусів протягом години.
7. При бажанні, при подачі можна збризнути овочі бальзамічним оцтом.

*Приємного апетиту!*

## **(14) Яєчня з грибами**

### **Інгредієнти:** (на 2 порції)

- 4 яйця
- рослинна олія за смаком
- 200 г грибів
- сіль за смаком
- 100 г цибулі
- перець за смаком

### **Рецепт приготування:**

1. Цибулю нарізати напівкільцями.
2. Гриби мілко нарізати.
3. На рослинній олії обсмажити цибулю.
4. Додати гриби, посолити, поперчити, смажити до тих пір, поки не випарується вся волога (біля 10-15 хв.).



5. Окремо посмажити яйця, посолити, поперчити.
  6. Яєчню викласти на тарілочку, поряд викласти гриби.
  7. Прикрасити петрушкою чи кропом. Подавати гарячою.
- Приємного апетиту!*

### **(15) Карі-мікс**

#### **Інгредієнти:** (на 5-7 порцій)

- 0,5-1 л. кокосового молока
- 1 морква
- 1 цибулина
- 1 болгарський перець
- 1 кабачок або цукіні
- 1 баклажан
- 0,5 ч.л. солі
- 1 ч.л. кунжутної олії
- 1 ст.л. соєвого соусу
- 100 г спаржевої квасолі
- 100 г печериць
- 100 г креветок
- 100 г курячого філе
- 100 г броколі
- 100 г цвітної капусти
- карі, червоний мелений перець за смаком
- зелень за смаком (петрушку, базилік, кріп, материнку)

#### **Рецепт приготування:**

1. Помити та просушити всі овочі.
2. Відварити креветки та куряче філе (окремо) у підсоленій воді зі спеціями та лавровим листям. Філе порізати на шматочки.
3. Моркву натерти, цибулю порізати кубиками, болгарський перець та печериці порізати невеликими шматочками, кабачок (цукіні) та баклажан порізати напівкрусечками.
4. Броколі та цвітну капусту розділити на суцвіття. Спаржеву квасоллю порізати на 2-3 частини.
5. У високій сковороді вок підрум'янити цибулю з морквою протягом 1 хвилини, додати 200 мл кокосового молока.
6. Коли молоко почне кипіти, додати спаржеву квасоллю та тушкувати 1 хвилину. Потім по черзі додавати інгредієнти з інтервалом в 1 хвилину в такому порядку: болгарський перець, баклажан, кабачок (цукіні), печериці, куряче філе, креветки, броколі, цвітну капусту.
7. Кокосове молоко додавати по мірі необхідності. Можна додати води.
8. Приправити червоним гострим перцем та карі. Додати сіль за смаком.
9. Зняти з вогню, додати соєвий соус та кунжутну олію.
10. За бажанням додати зелень.
11. Подавати гарячим, теплим або холодним.

*Приємного апетиту!*



# Sweet Dishes

## (16) Apple cake

### Ingredients:

- 250 g apples
- 100 g raisins
- 1 egg
- 175 g butter
- 50 ml milk
- 350 g self-raising flour
- 200 g sugar

### How to cook:

1. Peel and chop the apples.
2. Mix the apples, raisins, milk and sugar together.
3. Mix the flour and butter (softened) together in another bowl.
4. Add the fruit mixture and the egg and mix very well.
5. Put into a buttered 20-centimetre square cake tin. Put a little sugar on top.
6. Cook in the oven at 170°C for 1 hour 45 minutes.
7. Serve hot or cold with fresh cream.

*Bon appetite!*

## (17) Сирна запіканка

### Інгредієнти: (на 6-8 порцій) ▪ 2 яйця

- 600 г домашнього сиру (6-9%)
- 250 мл молока
- 100-150 г цукру
- 50 г крохмалю
- 1 ч.л. ванільного цукру
- вершкове масло
- 100 г цукатів, фруктів, горіхів за смаком



### Рецепт приготування:

1. Білки відділити від жовтків, потім жовтки змішати з домашнім сиrom.
2. Додати молоко, перемішати.
3. Додати цукор, ванільний цукор, крохмаль, перемішати.
4. Білки збити в піну, додати до сирної маси, акуратно перемішати.
5. Цукати мілко нарізати, додати до суміші, перемішати.
6. Форму (діам. 24 см) змастити маслом або застелити бумагою для випічки.
7. Викласти сирну масу у форму.
8. Зверху викласти шматочки вершкового масла.
9. Покласти в розігріту до 180 градусів духовку.
10. Запекати біля години до золотистої шкірочки.
11. Прикрасити листочком м'яти. Можна полити згущеним молоком.
12. Подавати запіканку холодною.

*Приємного апетиту!*



## (18) Фруктовий салат в ананасі

**Інгредієнти:** (на 6-8 порцій)

- 1 ананас
- 1 апельсин
- 1-2 банани
- 1 яблуко
- 1-2 ківі
- горішки (волоські, арахіс)

**Заправка:**

- цукрова пудра чи йогурт

**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Ананас розрізати вздовж на 2 частини. Вирізати м'якоть. Видалити жорстку серцевину, м'якоть нарізати кубиками.
2. Банан, ківі та яблуко помити, почистити та нарізати кубиками.
3. Апельсин помити, почистити, видалити плівочки, нарізати невеликими кусочками.
4. Подрібнити великі горішки (такі як волоські).
5. Акуратно перемішати шматочки ананаса, банана, ківі, апельсина, яблука, горішки.
6. Заправити цукровою пудрою або йогуртом, лікером чи вином.
7. Викласти салат в половинки ананаса.
8. Прикрасити половинкою ківі та ягодами. Подавати холодним.

*Приємного апетиту!*



## (19) Фруктовий салат

**Інгредієнти:** (на 5-7 порцій)

- 1-2 банани
- 2-3 мандарини
- 1-2 яблука
- 3-4 ст. л. горішків (волоських, кедрових, арахісу)
- 3-4 сливи
- 2-3 ківі

**Заправка на вибір:**

- цукрова пудра
- йогурт
- згущене молоко
- мед

**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Банани та ківі помити, почистити та нарізати кубиками.
2. Сливи помити. З слив видалити кісточку. Сливи нарізати кубиками.
3. Мандарини помити, почистити, розділити на дольки, дольки нарізати кубиками.
4. Яблуко помити, почистити, видалити серцевину, нарізати кубиками.
5. Подрібнити великі горішки (такі як волоські).
6. Все акуратно перемішати.
7. Заправити цукровою пудрою чи йогуртом або додати трохи меду чи згущеного молока. Прикрасити шариком морозива.
8. Подавати холодним.

*Приємного апетиту!*



## (20) Фруктове канапе

**Інгредієнти:** (на 5-7 порцій)

- банани
- ківі
- виноград
- яблука
- груші
- персики чи нектарини

**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Всі фрукти та ягоди гарно вимити та висушити.
2. Груші і персики нарізати кубиками.
3. Банани, яблука і ківі почистити та нарізати невеликими шматочками.
4. На шпажки нанизати шматочки фруктів та винограду, чергуючи їх по кольору.
5. Прикрасити листочками м'яти. Подавати холодним.  
*Приємного апетиту!*



## (21) Фруктова фантазія

**Інгредієнти:** (на 5-7 порцій)

- 300 г свіжих абрикосів чи персиків
- 200 мл білого яблучного чи виноградного соку
- 2 ст.л. лимонного соку
- 3 ст.л. цукру
- 1 ч.л. крохмалю
- 2 яйця

**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Готуємо крем.
  - а) Яйця збити з цукром.
  - б) Додати крохмаль, лимонний сік, гарно перемішати.
  - в) Додати яблучний чи виноградний сік, перемішати.
  - г) Масу варити на маленькому вогні до загущення близько 5 хвилин.
2. Абрикоси (персики) вимити, видалити кісточку, нарізати на шматочки.
3. Викласти їх в формочки для запікання.
4. Викласти крем на фрукти, покласти в розігріту до 180 градусів духовку.
5. Запекати протягом 15-20 хвилин.
6. Подавати теплим чи холодним за смаком.  
*Приємного апетиту!*



## (22) Бананове сорбе

**Інгредієнти:** (на 6-8 порцій)

- 1 кг бананів
- 200 г апельсинів
- 400 г лимонів
- 150 г цукру
- 200 мл яблучного чи виноградного соку

**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Лимони та апельсини помити, почистити, видалити кісточку і подрібнити в блендері. Банани помити, почистити, подрібнити в блендері.
2. Змішати апельсиново-лимонну та бананову маси.



3. Додати сік, перемішати. Додати цукор. Гарно перемішати.
  4. Суміш перелити в форму, в якій можна заморожувати.
  5. Поставити в морозилку на 5-6 годин (краще на ніч). Подавати холодним.
- Приємного апетиту!*

### (23) Морозиво "Лимонне"

**Інгредієнти:** (на 8-10 порцій)

- 500 мл вершків 33-35%
- 1 баночка згущеного молока (380 мл)
- 1 лимон

**Рецепт приготування:**

1. З лимону вижати сік (потрібно біля 50 мл).
2. Вершки збити, поки не стануть густими. Дуже важливо не перезбивати, інакше морозиво буде жирним.
3. У вершки додати згущене молоко, перемішати.
4. Додати лимонний сік, перемішати.
5. Масу вилити в форму, в якій можна заморожувати.
6. Покласти в морозильник.
7. Через 2 години морозиво дістати, перемішати виделкою чи вінчиком, покласти в морозильник до повного заморожування на 6-8 годин.
8. Подавати холодним. Прикрасити ягодами, горіхами, шоколадом чи м'ятою.

*Приємного апетиту!*

### (24) Згущене молоко "Домашнє"

**Інгредієнти:** (на 8-10 порцій)

- 250 мл молока
- 150 г сухого молока
- 300 г цукру

**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Змішати молоко, цукор та сухе молоко.
2. Варити 1 годину на водяній бані, постійно помішуючи.
3. Подавати холодним.

*Приємного апетиту!*



# Drinks

## (25) Grog

*That is not the recipe of real grog, it is just another delicious coffee beverage. Taste and the world will smile to you.*

### **Ingredients:**

- 2 tablespoons softened butter
- 1/4 teaspoon ground cloves
- 1/4 teaspoon ground nutmeg
- 1/4 teaspoon cinnamon
- 3 cups coffee
- 1/2 cup heavy cream
- 1 cup brown sugar
- 1 lemon
- 1 orange

### **Preparation:**

1. A slice of one large orange, broken into 6 pieces.
2. A slice of one large lemon, broken into 6 pieces.
3. Place one piece of each slice into cups.
4. Mix butter, sugar, cloves, nutmeg and cinnamon.
5. Mix coffee and cream.
6. Pour both mixtures into cups and stir.

*Bon appetite!*

## (26) Mulled wine

**Prep Time:** 15 minutes

**Total Time:** 45 minutes

### **Ingredients:**

- 1 large orange
- 2 cardamom pods
- 6 whole cloves
- 6 allspice berries
- 6 whole black peppercorns
- 1 cinnamon stick, plus 4 for garnish (optional)
- 1 bottle (3 cups) fruity red wine
- 1/2 cup sugar
- 1/4 cup brandy

### **Preparation:**

1. With a fine grater, zest (citron), then juice (squeeze) the orange.
2. With the flat side of a knife, press firmly on the cardamom pods to bruise them. In a large pot (not aluminum), combine the zest, juice, cardamom, cloves, allspice, peppercorns, cinnamon, wine, sugar, and brandy. Cook over medium heat, stirring, until sugar dissolves, 1 to 2 minutes.
3. Reduce heat to low; simmer until flavors have melded, about 30 minutes. Pour through a fine-mesh sieve; garnish with a cinnamon stick, if desired. Serve immediately.

*Bon appetite!*

## (27) European coffee

### **Ingredients:**

- 1 cup strong coffee
- 1 egg white
- 1/4 teaspoon vanilla extract
- 2 tablespoons half and half

### **Preparation:**

1. Beat egg white until it forms soft peaks.
2. Gently add vanilla, and continue to beat until stiff peaks are formed.
3. Place into 2 coffee mugs.
4. Pour the coffee over the egg white.
5. Top with half and half.

*Bon appetite!*

## **(28) Irish Coffee**

### **Ingredients:**

- 1 Measure (3 cl) of Irish Whiskey
- 1 teaspoon of raw sugar
- 1 heaped desert spoon of whipped cream
- Hot strong coffee to fill the glass

### **Preparation:**

1. Pre-warm a stemmed glass.
2. Add the whiskey. Add the sugar and stir in the coffee.
3. Float the whipped cream on top.
4. Drink the coffee through the cream (i.e. do not stir after adding the cream).

*Bon appetite!*



## **(29) Viennese Coffee**

### **Ingredients:**

- 1/2 cup chocolate
- 2 1/2 cups strong coffee
- 4 tablespoons light cream
- 2/3 cup heavy cream
- 1 teaspoon sugar
- dash of cinnamon
- dash of cocoa

### **Preparation:**

1. Melt the chocolate in a saucepan.
2. Stir in the light cream.
3. Slowly add the coffee, beating until frothy.
4. In a cold bowl whip the heavy cream and sugar.
5. Pour the coffee mixture into cups. Top off with heavy cream.
6. Garnish with sprinkle of cinnamon and cocoa.

*Bon appetite!*

## **(30) Гарбузовий сік**

### **Інгредієнти:** (на 8-10 порцій)

- 500 г гарбуза
- 100 г цукру
- 1 лимон

### **Рецепт приготування:**

1. Гарбуз помити, почистити, натерти на тертці.
2. З лимону вижати сік (близько 50 мл).
3. Цукор закип'ятити з 1 л води.
4. В воду з цукром покласти гарбуз, довести до кипіння та охолодити.





5. Додати лимонний сік до гарбуза.
6. Маса збити в блендері (або міксером).
7. Прикрасити кружечком лимону чи апельсину. Подавати холодним.  
*Приємного апетиту!*

### (31) Мохіто

**Інгредієнти:** (на 1 порцію)

- лайм                   ▪ 3 ч.л. тростинного цукру
- пучок м'яти       ▪ 150-200 мл содової (Schweppes, Sprite)
- 50 мл рому       ▪ лід



**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Лайм помити, розрізати на 2 частини. Для 1 порції – 1/2 лайму.
2. Половину лайму розрізати на 2 чи 3 частини.
3. У склянку на ніжці насипати цукор.
4. Вижати сік з лайму. Шкірку покласти в склянку.
5. Додати м'яту, все перемішати, трохи потовкти листки м'яти.
6. Наповнити 1/3 склянки льодом, додати ром та содову.
7. Прикрасити кружальцем лайму чи м'ятою. Подавати холодними.

*Приємного апетиту!*

### (32) Банановий коктейль

**Інгредієнти:** (на 2 порції)

- 1 банан (200-250 г)
- 100 г морозива
- 150 мл молока



**Рецепт приготування:**

1. Банан помити, почистити, поламати чи порізати великими шматочками.
2. Додати морозиво та молоко. Збити в блендері чи міксером.
3. Подавати холодним.

*Приємного апетиту!*

## ENGLISH LANGUAGE EXAM TOPICS

1. How you cook. What are pleasant and unpleasant aspects for you?
2. My favourite dish (a detailed recipe).

## SECTION III: EATING HABITS

### GRAMMAR:

- Tenses (Revision)

### Vocabulary

amino acid	амінокислота
antioxidant	антиоксидант, інгібітор окислення
benefit	користь
• <i>to gain ~ / to benefit</i>	<i>отримувати ~</i>
beta-carotene	бета каротин
calcium	кальцій
caloric content	калорійність
cancer	рак
carbohydrate	вуглевод
cholesterol	холестерин
a couch potato	лежебока
a diet	харчування, дієта; їжа
• <i>a balanced ~</i>	• <i>збалансоване харчування</i>
• <i>a healthy ~</i>	• <i>здорове харчування</i>
• <i>a reducing ~</i>	• <i>дієта для втрати ваги</i>
• <i>an unhealthy ~</i>	• <i>нездорове харчування</i>
dietary / eating habits	манери, звички харчування
digestion	травлення; засвоєння їжі
digestive system	травна система
essential / vital	необхідний, обов'язковий
energy	енергія
• <i>the expenditure of ~</i>	• <i>енерговитрати</i>
fast food / junk food	їжа, яку можна перехопити на швидку руку
fat	жир
• <i>saturated ~</i>	• <i>насичений ~</i>
• <i>unsaturated ~</i>	• <i>ненасичений ~</i>
• <i>low-fat</i>	• <i>низькокалорійний</i>
• <i>high-fat</i>	• <i>висококалорійний</i>
fibre	клітковина
free radical	вільний радикал
immune system	імунна система
• <i>~ booster</i>	• <i>імуностимулятор</i>
• <i>to boost the ~</i>	• <i>підвищувати імунітет</i>



metabolism	обмін речовин
mineral	мінерал
nutrient	живильна, поживна речовина
obesity	ожиріння; надмірна повнота
protein	білок
vitamin	вітамін
water consumption / intake schedule	питний режим
weight	вага
• <i>to gain ~ / to put on ~</i>	• <i>набирати ~, гладшати</i>
• <i>to lose ~</i>	• <i>скинути ~, схуднути</i>
to assimilate	засвоювати (про харчову речовину)
to be abundant <b>in sth.</b>	міститися у великій кількості у чомусь
to be high <b>in sth.</b>	мати високий вміст чогось
to be low <b>in sth.</b>	мати низький вміст чогось
• <i>to have a high / low content of ...</i>	• <i>мати високий / низький вміст (чого-небудь у чому-небудь)</i>
to be found <b>in sth.</b>	міститися у чомусь
to cause problems	спричиняти проблеми
to consume / to take <b>in</b> / to eat	споживати, їсти
to contain	містити
to do good	приносити користь
to do harm	заподіювати шкоду
to decrease / to reduce	зменшувати; знижувати
to increase	збільшувати, підвищувати
to limit <i>sth.</i>	обмежувати <i>щось</i>
to normalize / to make normal	приводити в норму, нормалізувати
to occur	зустрічатися, траплятися
• <i>~ naturally</i>	• <i>зустрічатися природньо у природньому вигляді</i>
to protect against	захищати від, охороняти, запобігати
to result <b>in</b>	кінчатися (чим-небудь), мати (своїм) результатом (що-небудь)
to suffer <b>from</b>	страждати від
to ward off	відвертати

1

a) Read the following text and translate it into Ukrainian.

### *What Our Food Contains*

Practicing good **dietary habits** over a lifetime is a key to living long and well. Food is fuel and we depend on it for the energy to be healthy and strong. Not just any food **does good**, though, and a bad diet can be **unhealthy**.

So, what is it in food, which our minds and bodies need? Well, the answer comes in six parts: **vitamins, minerals, carbohydrates, fibre, protein, fat**.

Naturally, different foods **contain** different amounts and combinations of these six. Some **are high in** protein or carbohydrates, while others **are low in** fibre or fat. It can all seem very confusing, but it isn't really. All you need to know is a few simple facts, then it's easy **to avoid** what's bad for you and to choose a **balanced, healthy diet**.

### **Vitamins and Minerals**

These nutrients play especially important roles in **warding off** illnesses and minimizing the normal effects of growing older. Some nutrients seem **to boost the immune system**. Others act as **antioxidants** and **help prevent** the damage caused by **free radicals**.

- ✓ **Beta-carotene** is an antioxidant and is thought to be **an immune-system booster**. It is found in such foods as apricots, cantaloupe, and orange or leafy green vegetables.
- ✓ **Vitamin C**, found in citrus fruits, strawberries, potatoes, and tomatoes, is another antioxidant and may also help prevent problems with eyes.
- ✓ **Vitamin D**, found in fish oils and such fish as tuna, salmon, cod, and herring, may help **protect against** breast and colon cancer. It also enhances absorption of calcium, an important nutrient.
- ✓ **Vitamin E** is a nutrient in many foods and it **is abundant in** vegetable oils and olives. It may be especially helpful in preventing the build-up of fatty deposits in arteries.
- ✓ **Calcium**, which **occurs naturally** in leafy green vegetables, dairy products, legumes, helps prevent osteoporosis.

### **Carbohydrates**



**Carbohydrates (Carbs)** are energy-providing nutrients. The body receives 4 calories per 1 gram of carbohydrates consumed. Carbohydrates are separated into simple carbohydrates (**sugar**), complex carbohydrates (**fiber**) and **starch**.

### **Fibre**

Adults need 30 grams of fibre per day. It helps the digestive system work properly and protects it against diseases like cancer. Vegetables, nuts, cereals, beans, fruit, wholemeal bread and pasta **have a high fibre content**.

## Sugar

Sugar contains energy (in the form of **calories**), but that's all. Very sweet foods don't give you any vitamins, minerals, fibre, fat or protein. So, although sweets, cakes, cola drinks and chocolate are delicious, they are not very healthy – they **cause obesity** and they **are also bad for** your teeth and skin.

## Protein

**Protein** is a nutrient that is **essential** for the human body as it is required for building, **maintaining**, and replacing tissue. When protein is consumed it is broken down during **digestion** into **amino acids**. They are considered “**vital**” because the body cannot make them naturally, and therefore, they must be supplied by the food you eat. Sources of protein include meat products, poultry, fish, dairy products (cheese, milk, yogurt, cottage cheese), eggs, tofu, lentils, nuts and soymilk.

## Fat

There are two kinds of fat – **saturated** and **unsaturated**. The healthy kind is unsaturated and you can find this in fish, which contain a lot of oil (e.g. trout and mackerel), nuts and soya oil. Saturated fat is found in meat, dairy products, crisps, cakes, biscuits and chocolate. Too much of this variety can **cause** your body serious **problems**. It contains a lot of **calories** and can make you **gain weight**. Seriously overweight people often **suffer from** a long list of health problems. Fat also contains **cholesterol** that gradually starts to **block** your **arteries** and can **result in** heart diseases.

So, if you want to increase your chance of staying healthy, follow this **general advice**:

- ✓ Eat less salt, sugar and saturated fat.
- ✓ Eat more raw fruit and vegetables, wholemeal bread and other foods rich in fiber, vitamins and minerals.
- ✓ Eat more fruit (it contains all the sugar your body needs) and fewer cakes, biscuits and chocolate.
- ✓ **To reduce** the saturated fat in your diet you should grill food, not fry it and choose low-fat products (cheeses, milk, etc.) whenever possible.
- ✓ If you want to lose weight, do it gradually. People who lose weight quickly usually put it back on quickly, too.
- ✓ Eat regularly – your body needs a steady flow of energy.
- ✓ Drink five or six glasses of water per day.
- ✓ Get plenty of variety in your diet.
- ✓ Enjoy your food!



### b) Answer the following questions.

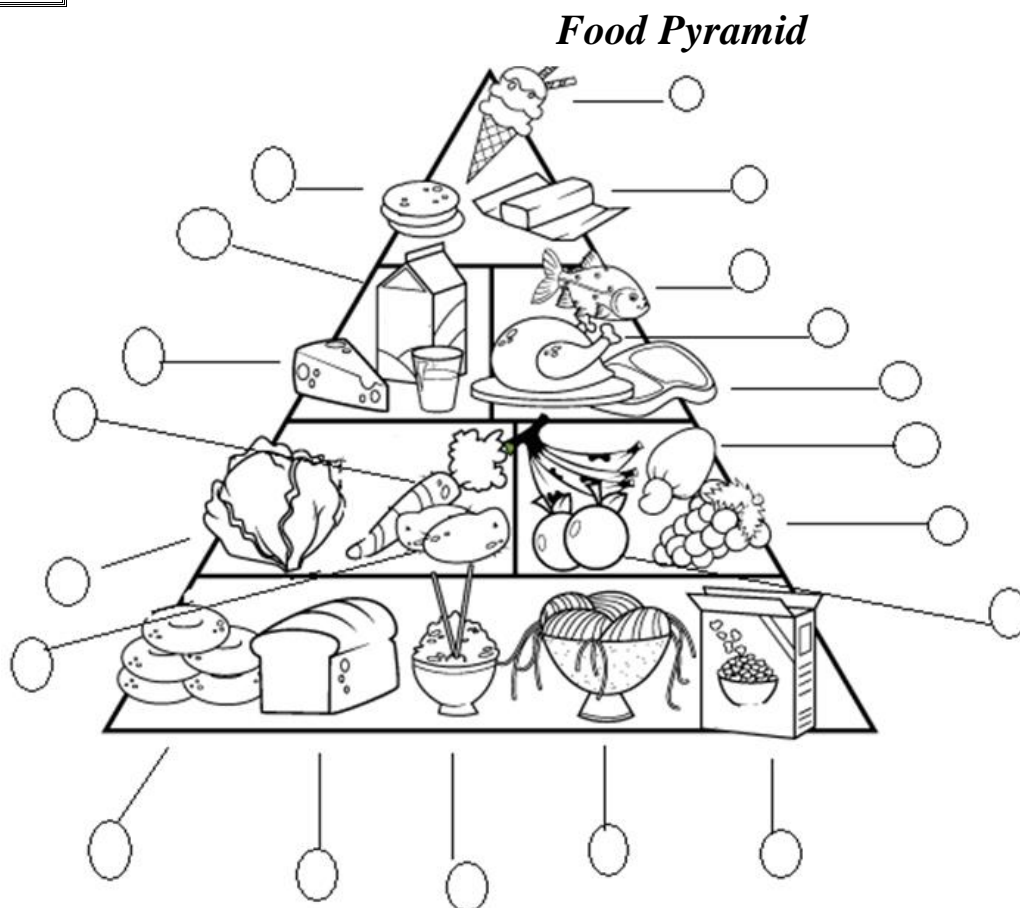
- 1. Why do we need to eat foods containing different kinds of vitamins and minerals?
- 2. What vitamin(s) may prevent cataracts?

- 3. What foods may contain vitamin C?
- 4. What vitamins may help to protect against breast cancer?
- 5. What enhances absorption of calcium?
- 6. What vitamin may prevent the build-up of fatty deposits in arteries?
- 7. What mineral may decrease the risk of osteoporosis?
- 8. What products may contain vitamin E?
- 9. What nutrient seems to boost the immune system?
- 10. What are carbohydrates? What types of them do you know?
- 11. What food contains fibre? Why is fibre important?
- 12. What does sugar contain? Is it healthy?
- 13. Why is protein necessary for people?
- 14. What sources of protein do you know?
- 15. Is fat healthy? Why? Where is it found?
- 16. How should people organize their diets to stay healthy?



2

a) Fill in the *Food Pyramid* with the correct word from the list below.



1. *pasta*
2. *fish*
3. *bread*
4. *ice cream*
5. *rice*
6. *lettuce*
7. *chicken*
8. *butter*
9. *cereal*
10. *oranges*
11. *carrot*
12. *biscuits*
13. *grapes*
14. *steak*
15. *milk*
16. *bananas*
17. *potatoes*
18. *cheese*
19. *cashew*

b) 🗨️ **“Eating healthy does not mean following a super-restrictive diet. But you have to watch what you put into your mouth”. What does this statement mean? How do you understand the Food Pyramid? How are the statement and the Pyramid connected? Discuss it with your partner.**

**3**

**Write 10 questions on the text using the following words and phrases. Then discuss them in pairs.**



A balanced healthy diet, to be healthy and strong, carbohydrates, protein, fat, vitamins, minerals, fibre, a digestive system, to be high in, to protect against, vegetables, nuts, cereals, beans, fruit, wholemeal bread, pasta, saturated and unsaturated fats, to suffer from, to contain, to eat regularly, to cause problems with health, cholesterol, to make someone overweight, heart disease / attacks.

**4**

**Give the English equivalents to the following words and phrases.**



пальне, вуглевод, білок, жир, клітковина, система органів травлення, хліб з висівками, макаронні вироби, насичені жири, молочні продукти, такий, що має зайву вагу, хвороби серця, холестерин, смачний, ожиріння, порада, підвищувати імунітет, поглинання кальцію, зменшити кількість цукру,

міститися в натуральному вигляді, відвертати хвороби, збільшувати / зменшувати ризик захворювання на рак, вибирати збалансовану дієту, закупорювати артерії, вільні радикали.

**5**

**Listen to the speaker telling about *calories* and *exercise*. Fill in the gaps. Answer the questions below.**

### *Calories*

Do you ever think about **1.** \_\_\_\_ the number **2.** \_\_\_\_ eat and drink every day. It's not really something I **3.** \_\_\_\_ when I was younger. But now I have to think about my **4.** \_\_\_\_\_. I'm putting on weight and so need to be more careful **5.** \_\_\_\_ eat. This is difficult because all of the yummiest food has the most calories. I've found an **6.** \_\_\_\_ problem. If I do lots of exercise, I can eat what I want and not have to **7.** \_\_\_\_ calories. I **8.** \_\_\_\_ 500 calories when I jog for an hour. This means I can have a pizza and dessert and **9.** \_\_\_\_\_. I wish there was more information about calories in restaurants. It would make it easier for me to know what to eat and **10.** \_\_\_\_\_.

### *Exercise*

Exercise is something most of us **1.** \_\_\_\_\_. A lot of us avoid it altogether. I do a lot of exercise, but not because I like it. I do it because **2.** \_\_\_\_ stay slim and healthy. I always feel great after exercising, so **3.** \_\_\_\_ parts to it. The thing I hate most is getting ready. It's really difficult after a **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ to come home and then prepare for your exercises. I really **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ do it when I'm getting changed. I hate **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ stretching. I also hate **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ minutes of a run, swim or cycle. But then once my lungs **8.** \_\_\_\_\_, I settle into a rhythm and things **9.** \_\_\_\_\_. Recently I bought an exercise bike. Sitting in my house cycling to **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ watching TV is a great way to get some exercise.



- 1. Is your food high in calories? How many calories do you eat and drink a day?
- 2. How do you burn calories?
- 3. How are calories and exercise connected?
- 4. How much exercise do you take a day/week?
- 5. What exercise do you like the best/least?



**6** a) You are going to read a newspaper article about unhealthy food. Six paragraphs have been removed from the article. Choose from paragraphs A – G the one, which fits each gap (1-5). There is one extra paragraph, which you do not need to use. There is an example at the beginning (0).

### *Junk Food*



In today's fast-moving world, people have less and less time to spend eating, **let alone** cooking. It is probably for this reason that junk food has become so popular, and there's no doubt that it's here to stay. In fact, it seems that you simply can't get away from it. One British hotel group recently **announced** that its guests are able to order fast food through room service, a move which is seen by many as signifying a new **era** in the **couch potato** lifestyle. So what exactly is junk food?

**0**

**B**

Obviously, a diet of junk food is not the best thing for your health, particularly as it is high in **saturated fat**. In 1993, the *Journal of National Cancer Institute* reported this type of fat to be associated with a greater risk of cancer.

**1**

The best advice, then, for those who cannot live without their hamburgers or chocolate bars, is to limit the amount of junk food they eat. A little now and then will probably do no harm. But why have our eating habits changed? "It's **lack** of time and **loss** of tradition", says one expert.

**2**

Another **alarming** thing about people's lifestyle today is that while the amount of junk food we eat has **increased**, the amount of exercise we do has actually decreased. Exercise plays an important part in keeping the body fit and healthy; it helps to **control** our weight and, if taken regularly, can also decrease our chances of having a **heart attack** in later life.

**3**

Even though people nowadays are actually far more aware of the importance of exercise and healthy diet than they were a few years ago, the new unhealthy way of life is surprisingly popular. This is **illustrated** by statistics gathered by researchers over the past two **decades**.

4

---

Researchers suggest that the new generation will be much more likely to suffer from heart and liver disease. What can't be emphasized enough is the fact that a balanced diet and regular exercise bring significant **health benefits**.

5

---

Ironically, if they were to make time to exercise and **improve** their eating habits, they would probably find that they were far better equipped to deal with their **stressful** lifestyles than they are now.

- A. Recent research has shown that young French people, who prefer burgers and chips to rich gourmet dishes, tend to become overweight. Weight gained in adolescence is extremely hard to lose in later life, so researchers are predicting that the new French generation is not going to be admired for their slim figures as the French have traditionally been.
- B. Basically, it is anything that is high in **calories** but lacking in nutrition. Hamburgers, crisps, chocolate bars and hot dogs fall into this category. Pizzas, although they can have vegetable and **cheese toppings**, are also included as they contain a lot of fat.
- C. Not all junk food is bad for your health, however. Some hamburgers, for example, are very high in nutrients and low in fat. It is just a question of finding out what goes into the food before you decide to eat it.
- D. Apart from the risk of cancer, another side effect of consuming highly fattening junk food is that you are likely to gain weight. This is especially true because you tend to eat more, as junk food is less **satisfying** and lower in **vital** nutrients than healthier food.
- E. You can gain anything from glowing skin to an all-round feeling of good health. One way or another, the vast majority of people seem to be missing out on this, mainly due to the pressure of modern life.
- F. What is more, you don't have to exercise much to gain **visible benefits**. Doctors say that 20 minutes' exercise 3 times a week is all that is necessary.
- G. He explains that people are too busy to cook and eat proper meals, so they **grab** whatever is available – and that is usually junk food. Also, the style of life represented on TV, especially in music videos, is fast. Young people **pick up the idea** that speed means excitement, whereas anything traditional is slow and boring. As a result, they turn down traditional food and go for junk food instead.



**b) Answer the questions.**

- 1. What is junk food? What example do you follow?
- 2. What is your attitude to junk food? Why do people like it? Do you know the reasons for the popularity of junk food?
- 3. Why is junk food unhealthy? What risks does it hide?
- 4. What is the couch potato lifestyle?
- 5. What nations suffer from unhealthy diets mostly? Why?
- 6. What positive effects of eating healthy food do you know?

7

**Give the English equivalents to the following words and phrases.**

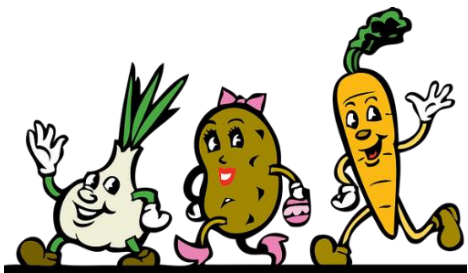
насичений жир, нестача часу, втрата традицій, уникати чогось, тривожний сигнал, лежебока, не кажучи вже про ..., захопитися ідеєю, побічний ефект, серцевий напад, спричиняти проблеми з травленням, споживати жирну їжу, приносити користь, обмежувати кількість цукру, зменшувати кількість нездорової їжі, заподіювати шкоду, здоровий колір обличчя, хапати шкідливу їжу, призводити до хвороби печінки, приносити покращення здоров'я, набирати вагу, контролювати вагу, фізичні вправи, усвідомлювати щось, мати справу з чимось, бути схильним до переїдання, пропускати щось, споживати газовані напої, поживні речовини, менш ситний, споживати висококалорійну їжу, відхиляти традиційну їжу, схуднути, звички харчування.



8

**Fill in the correct word(s) from the list below. There are synonymous words and phrases at the end of each sentence to help you.**

let alone, signify, nutrients, rejecting, gain, limit, predicting, glowing skin, research, adolescence, consume, tend to



1. Vegetables are an essential part of our diet as they contain a lot of \_\_\_\_\_. (*healthy substances*)
2. I don't even know what a breadfruit looks like, \_\_\_\_\_ what it tastes like! (*not to mention*)
3. You should \_\_\_\_\_ the amount of chocolate you eat if you want to lose weight. (*restrict*)
4. The stars on the label \_\_\_\_\_ that the brandy is of the best quality. (*mean*)
5. Scientific \_\_\_\_\_ has shown that saturated fats are a major cause of cancer. (*investigation*)
6. People who eat lots of sweets \_\_\_\_\_ have dental problems. (*are likely to*)
7. Jill is overweight because she ate so much junk food during her \_\_\_\_\_. (*teenage years*)
8. Her \_\_\_\_\_ is a result of all the fruit and vegetables she eats. (*healthy-looking complexion*)
9. More and more people are \_\_\_\_\_ meat in favor of more fruit and vegetables. (*not accepting*)
10. Unless you cut down on junk

food and sweets, you will \_\_\_\_\_ weight! (*put on*) **11.** Nutritionists are \_\_\_\_\_ that junk food consumption will increase in the near future. (*foreseeing*) **12.** Young people \_\_\_\_\_ large amounts of carbonated drinks with their meals. (*take in*)

**9** Fill in the correct word(s) from the list below. Use the words only once.

room, eating, gourmet, fast-moving, vast, couch-potato, balanced, side, the pressure, chocolate, to do, heart, high, junk, to keep, saturated

- |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. a(n) _____ world     | 9. _____ of modern life |
| 2. _____ bars           | 10. _____ fat           |
| 3. a(n) _____ lifestyle | 11. _____ service       |
| 4. _____ the body fit   | 12. _____ no harm       |
| 5. _____ in calories    | 13. a(n) _____ diet     |
| 6. _____ food           | 14. _____ dishes        |
| 7. _____ habits         | 15. the _____ majority  |
| 8. a(n) _____ disease   | 16. _____ effects       |



**10** Fill in the correct preposition, then choose any five items and make your own sentences.

1. to be popular \_\_\_\_\_ sb; 2. to be high \_\_\_\_\_ calories; 3. to be associated \_\_\_\_\_ sb/sth; 4. to be aware \_\_\_\_\_ sth; 5. to suffer \_\_\_\_\_ sth; 6. to deal \_\_\_\_\_ sb/sth; 7. to be lacking \_\_\_\_\_ sth; 8. the loss \_\_\_\_\_ sb/sth; 9. to miss out \_\_\_\_\_ sth; 10. to prefer sb/sth \_\_\_\_\_ sb/sth else.

**11** Listen to the speaker telling about *fast food* and *sugar*. Fill in the gaps. Answer the questions below.

### *Fast Food*



Do you like fast food? Lots of people **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ but I think a lot of it's quite tasty – **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ go to one of the international chains like McDonalds or Kentucky. I think in today's world, it's **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ eating in fast food restaurants. They are so convenient **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ everywhere. Of course they are not the same as real restaurants. I wonder if they are restaurants. **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ waiters. Anyway, the most important thing to remember about fast food is that it **6.** \_\_\_\_\_. People who eat **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ develop health problems. I don't understand why schools serve **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ during lunch time. Schools **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ students to eat healthily. If you have time, look at a website **10.** \_\_\_\_\_.

### *Sugar*

Sugar is an interesting food. Is it food? **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ sugar is. It seems as though the **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ sugar. We cannot do without it. I wonder how much sugar we have every day. When I was a kid, I **3.** \_\_\_\_\_. I even used to eat sugar cubes. That's

so bad for your teeth. I still have 4. \_\_\_\_\_ but I have cut down 5. \_\_\_\_\_ sugar I have. I used to have three sugars in my tea. Now I have none – three sugars in tea is 6. \_\_\_\_\_. There are two things about sugar I love. I love sprinkling a little sugar on strawberries and I love sugar cane juice. 7. \_\_\_\_\_, I think I could easily live without sugar. I'm not sure if other people can. What 8. \_\_\_\_\_ without sugar?

- 1. What is fast food? Do you eat it? If yes, when and how often?
- 2. What fast food restaurants do you go to? How often? What dishes do they serve? What are your favourite?
- 3. How much sugar do you consume?
- 4. Have you ever tried to reduce the amount of sugar you add to the dishes?
- 5. Can you cut sugar down completely? Why? / Why not?
- 6. Can you live without sugar?

12

**Read the text and fill in the gaps with the correct grammar form of the verbs in brackets.**

*Hands up Who is Addicted to Sugar!*



Do you enjoy 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*eat*) sweets every day? Do you have a hard time 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*say*) no when someone offers you a piece of chocolate? Do you walk into shops only 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) soft drinks or sweets? If you answered “yes” to the questions above, then you’re probably a sugar addict! Sugar addiction is a serious problem because it can cause many diseases. If you are someone who can’t 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*resist*) sugary foods, it’s important to act now! Spend time on the Internet 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*learn*) about the types of food that are full of sugar. Also avoid 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*drink*) soft drinks and eat fruit whenever you desire something sweet. At first, you will have difficulty 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*cut down*) all your favourite sweets. But very quickly, you’ll appreciate 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) healthier and fitter.

13

**🎧 a) Listen to a sportsman talking about his lifestyle and tick (✓) the things he mentions.**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> going on a diet  | <input type="checkbox"/> needing carbohydrate for energy |
| <input type="checkbox"/> eating lean meat | <input type="checkbox"/> eating substantial portions     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> cutting out fat  | <input type="checkbox"/> doing regular training          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> drinking coffee  | <input type="checkbox"/> getting enough sleep            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> handling stress  | <input type="checkbox"/> not putting on weight           |

**b) Listen again. What would the sportsman say to these statements? *True* or *False*?**

1. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables. \_\_\_\_\_
2. I’ve stopped eating dairy products. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I’ve cut down on chocolate. \_\_\_\_\_

4. I occasionally eat junk food. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I go to the gym regularly. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I've recently given up smoking. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I drink lots of water. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I don't get much sleep at the weekend. \_\_\_\_\_



c) Are the statements in **b)** true or false for you? Rewrite any false statements to make them true for you.

14

Translate into English.



1. Люди, які мають проблеми зі здоров'ям, не можуть їсти жирну, смажену та гостру їжу.
2. Їжа, яка має високий вміст поживних речовин, підвищує імунітет та відвертає хвороби.
3. Широкий загаль людеї споживає нездорову їжу, яка багата на калорії, проте бідна на життєво необхідні поживні речовини.
4. Тривожним сигналом щодо малорухомого способу життя є те, що кількість нездорової їжі, яку ми споживаємо, збільшується, а кількість вправ, які ми робимо, зменшується.
5. Сьогодні багато людей страждає від зайвої ваги, бо вони не можуть відмовитися від споживання великої кількості жирної їжі та газованих напоїв.
6. Дієтологи передбачають, що в найближчому майбутньому споживання неповноцінної їжі зросте.
7. Наші звички щодо харчування змінилися через нестачу часу та втрату традицій; люди хапають те, що є в наявності, а це, зазвичай, некорисна їжа.
8. Їжте більше сирих овочів та фруктів, хліб з цілнозернового борошна та іншу їжу багату на клітковину, і як результат у вас буде здоровий колір шкіри, красива фігура та гарний настрій.
9. Відверто кажучи, я ласунка, проте я не їм багато шоколаду та солодоців, тому що я обізнана щодо шкоди, яку вони можуть спричинити моєму здоров'ю.



10. Моя мама надає перевагу меду ніж цукру, тому що він містить багато корисних речовин і вітамінів. Крім того, він не має побічних ефектів від вживання у великій кількості, за винятком людей, що страждають від алергії.

15

Complete the paragraph below using the correct form of these phrasal verbs.

come down with, cut down on, get round, to go for, keep to,  
live on, put on, take up

If you want to stay healthy, you need to **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ a healthy diet. Eat plenty of fruit, vegetables and salad and **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ salt, fat and processed sugar. And if you want to avoid **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ weight, it's definitely best not to **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ junk food, because it contains all those things. Also, whatever your age, it's important to **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ doing exercise on a regular basis, so think about **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ a sport, or **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ a regular walk or run. By doing all these things, you should build up a healthy immune system and avoid **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ colds all the time.

**16**

**Read the following text and think of the word, which best fits each gap, 1-9. Use only one word in each gap.**

### *The Importance of Physical Activity*



The pace **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ modern life is very fast, and most people have busy and demanding lives. Consequently, eating **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ balanced diet and doing physical activity make a big difference to overall health. **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ we are all aware of how important exercise is for us, from our brains to our bones, many people spend far **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ little time exercising. The good news is that **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ is easier than you think to fit physical activity **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ your day because you can do it at **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ time and wherever suits you.

Remember that your feet were made for walking, so use them **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ you get the chance. Walk around town, ignore lifts and escalators, and build up your leg muscles by climbing stairs. Next, get out and have fun. For example, kicking a ball about is a great way to spend time together **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ a family, or with friends.

**17**

**Fill in the correct tense forms.**



My friend, Herbert, has always been fat, but things **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) so bad recently that he decided to go on a diet. He **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*begin*) his diet a week ago. First of all, he **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*write*) out a long list of all the foods, which were forbidden. The list included most of the food he **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*love*): butter, potatoes, rice, beer, milk, chocolate, sweets and so on. Yesterday, I **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*pay*) him a visit. I **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*ring*) the bell and was not surprised to see Herbert as fat as ever. He **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*lead*) me to his room and hurriedly **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*hide*) a large parcel under his desk. He **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) very embarrassed. When I **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*ask*) him what he **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) he **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*smile*) guiltily and then **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*put*) the parcel on the desk. He **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*show*) me the contents of the parcel. It **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*contain*) five large bars of chocolate and three bags of sweets!



**Translate into English.**

Правильне харчування допомагає людині зберігати працездатність, підтримувати нормальну вагу та форму, уникати різних захворювань, збільшити тривалість життя. Щоб організм отримував всі необхідні поживні речовини і повністю їх засвоював, **потрібно знати** основні правила здорового харчування та принципи правильного харчування.

**Ось 15 правил та принципів здорового харчування на кожен день:*****Правило № 1 Різноманітне повноцінне харчування:***

Правильне харчування повинно бути не тільки помірним і регулярним, але й різноманітним, тобто охоплювати всі ті продукти рослинного й тваринного походження, які необхідні людині.

***Правило № 2 Калорійність добового раціону:***

Калорійність раціону повинна бути прив'язана до енерговитрат, тобто чим більше калорій споживаєте – тим більше фізичної активності потребує організм. З віком калорійність добового раціону повинна знижуватися в основному за рахунок (due to) тваринних жирів і вуглеводів (хліб, картопля, цукор). Кількість білків повинна залишатися незмінною.

***Правило № 3 Харчування 5 разів у день:***

Нерегулярний прийом їжі призводить до порушення травлення. Найбільш раціональним є 5-разове харчування, приблизно в один і той же час. Тоді людина не переїдає, а травна система працює належним чином.

***Правило № 4 Повільна їжа:***

Якщо ви перевтомилися, не приступайте відразу до їжі, відпочиньте трохи. Під час їжі не потрібно думати про роботу, про справи, не слід вести серйозних розмов, читати або дивитися телевізор. Їсти треба повільно, добре пережовуючи, не на ходу.

***Правило № 5 Овочі та фрукти:***

Їжте більше свіжих овочів і фруктів. Вони містять необхідні організму вітаміни, мінерали, органічні кислоти, клітковину та інші корисні речовини. Вони покращують травлення, нормалізують обмін речовин.

***Правило № 6 Питний режим:***

Витримуйте питний режим. Пийте не менше 1,5–2,0 літрів води на добу. Більш корисна некип'ячена вода, мінеральна без газу. У спеку, при інтенсивній фізичній роботі та після вживання багатої на білки їжі води треба пити більше.

***Правило № 7 На вечерю – молочні, круп'яні, овочеві страви:***

Вечеряти не пізніше ніж за 2 години до сну.





## SECTION IV: UKRAINIAN CUISINE AND FOOD AROUND THE WORLD

### Vocabulary

<b>Ukrainian Cuisine</b>	<b>Українська Кухня</b>
a blending	суміш, поєднання
a breadbasket	житниця
cured pork fat	сало, шпик (кусками)
• <i>cracklings</i>	• <i>шкварки</i>
a “holy trinity”	“свята трійця”
goodness	висока якість, доброякісність
the mainstay	оплот, “голова”
a mound	горстка, гірка
predominance	перевага
processing	обробка
prosperity	процвітання, успіх
a set	набір, підбірка
simplicity	простота
to be determined <b>by</b> <i>sth.</i>	визначатися, обумовлюватися <i>чимось</i>
to be subjected <b>to</b> <i>sth.</i>	піддаватися <i>чому-небудь</i>
to date back	датуватися; відноситися до певного часу, до певної епохи
to last	зберігатися (у гарному стані)
to preserve	зберігати; заготовлювати про запас
braided	плетений
culinary	кулінарний, куховарський
distinctive	характерний, особливий
sophisticated	вишуканий, витончений
subtle	тонкий, ніжний
pleasing	приємний; який подобається
preserved	консервований
<b>International Cuisine</b>	<b>Кухня Світу</b>
a banquet	банкет, урочистий обід
the basics	основи
foie gras	фуа-гра, паштет з гусячої печінки
fondness <b>of</b> <i>sth.</i>	любов, пристрасть до <i>чого-небудь</i>
a gourmet	гурман, знавець страв та вин
• <i>a ~ dish / meal</i>	• <i>вишукана страва для гурманів</i>
home <b>of</b> <i>sth.</i>	батьківщина, місце виникнення <i>чогось</i>
a melting pot	плавильний горщик

tamale	тамале (гостра мексиканська страва)
taste buds	смакові рецептори язика
bite-sized	крихітний, малесенький
exquisitely	вишукано, витончено
objectively	об'єктивно, неупереджено
to be associated <b>with sth.</b>	асоціювати з чимось
to be identified <b>with sth.</b>	ототожнюватися з чимось
to bring together	збирати разом, примиряти
to ensure	забезпечувати; гарантувати
to find one's way <b>into</b>	потрапляти кудись
to go hungry	ходити голодним, голодувати
to mouth water	виділяти слинки, текти (про слинки)

1

a) Read the following text and translate it into Ukrainian.

### *Ukrainian Cuisine*

**Ukrainian cuisine** is a characteristic style of cooking, practice and traditions associated with Ukrainian culture, culinary art in Ukraine. Many food products **are subjected to** a complex heat processing – at first they are fried or boiled, and then stewed or baked. This is one of the most **distinctive features** of Ukrainian cuisine.

This complex heat processing allows **to preserve** the aroma of the dishes and gives them juiciness. Various dishes of meat and vegetables are especially tasty and healthy, for example, **cabbage rolls** with meat.

Ukrainian dishes are known for their variety and high taste qualities. They show a **sophisticated simplicity** based on the **goodness** of the ingredients themselves and their **natural flavors**. Dishes are neither highly spiced nor bland, but **subtle** and **pleasing**, seasoned to perfection. Some dishes have a centuries-old history, for example, Ukrainian borshch.

Many features of Ukrainian cuisine **were determined by** the way of life of the people, the vast majority of whom were engaged in heavy agricultural labor. Ukrainian cuisine **is characterized by** dishes rich in fats, proteins and carbohydrates. For most dishes, a complex **set of components** is characteristic (for example, in borshch there are up to 20 components).

Bread is **the mainstay** of the Ukrainian diet and it is marvelous. For Ukrainians bread was always a symbol of well-being and **prosperity** and it was considered as a gift of God. The fertile black soils and vast fields gave Ukrainians the possibility to grow wheat, that's why Ukraine has been considered as an agricultural country from long ago. In many written sources **dating back** to at least last two centuries Ukraine is referred to as the **breadbasket** of Europe.



There are many different types and recipes of bread. The French writer Honore de Balzac, who lived in Ukraine from 1847 through 1850, counted 77 ways of preparing bread.

Bread is so important a part of life that Ukrainians have a custom of greeting honored guests with **a loaf of bread** topped with **a mound of salt**. Ukrainians still use this custom today in welcoming ceremonies for dignitaries and important persons.

In the 19th century, potatoes became **widely spread** in Ukraine and used to make first and second courses and side dishes for fish and meat dishes. This vegetable became the “**second bread**” in Ukraine – practically all the first dishes are cooked with potatoes replacing such traditional vegetables as parsnip and turnip. The other most important vegetables are beets, cabbage, cucumbers, tomatoes, onions, garlic and beans.

Food in Ukraine is **seasonal**, therefore, it is preserved and pickled **to last through the winter**; pickled cucumbers, cabbage, tomatoes, mushrooms, peppers, and even apples lend flavor and tartness to many dishes. Salads are very common, not the lettuce-based kind Americans eat, but combinations of fresh, cooked and occasionally preserved vegetables, often mixed with meats and cheeses in creative yet subtle blendings of flavors.

### **Main Features of Ukrainian Cuisine and Meals:**

- ✓ **Significant consumption** of dishes from flour and cereals: bread, pies, dumplings, pancakes and hot porridges.
- ✓ **Predominance** of boiling and stewing over frying, salting over smoking.
- ✓ Complex heat processing of products for cooking second courses (boil then stew or fry, or slightly fry then stew).
- ✓ Special non-alcoholic and alcoholic beverages of Ukrainian cuisine are drinks from fruits and honey such as mead, kvass, stewed fruit, uzvar.
- ✓ Variety of tastes is achieved by combining different types of fats and local traditional spices such as onions, horseradish, parsley, cumin, thyme, and the so-called “**holy trinity**” of Ukrainian cuisine – garlic, vinegar, and dill.
- ✓ Daily consumption of liquid hot and cold first courses cooked mainly with meat and vegetables: borshch, okroshka, yushka, chicken broth, noodle soup, pea soup, mushroom soup, milk soup and other soups.
- ✓ Wide use of pork and fat, sour cream, sunflower oil and eggs.

### **b) Answer the following questions.**

- **1.** What is the distinctive feature of Ukrainian cuisine?
- **2.** What is characteristic to Ukrainian cuisine?
- **3.** Are Ukrainian dishes highly spiced?
- **4.** What is the mainstay of the Ukrainian diet? Why?
- **5.** How do Ukrainians greet honored guests?
- **6.** What vegetables are the most popular among Ukrainians?

- 7. What is the “holy trinity” of Ukrainian cuisine?
- 8. Do Ukrainians preserve fruit and vegetables to last through the winter? How?
- 9. What is the common formula in Ukrainian salads in comparison with other cuisines?
- 10. What are the main features of Ukrainian cuisine and meals?

2

### Give English equivalents.



витончена простота, піддаватися термічній обробці, зберігати аромат і смакові властивості, доброякісність продуктів харчування, натуральний присмак і запах, ніжний та приємний смак, обумовлюватися способом життя та традиціями, складний підбір компонентів, символ процвітання, оплот, відноситься до певного часу,

зберігатися у гарному стані протягом зими, заготовляти фрукти й овочі про запас, вітати шановних гостей, буханка хліба та гірка солі, “свята трійця” української кухні, широко розповсюджений.

3

### a) Match the names of Ukrainian specialties with their definitions.

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| 1. <i>borshch</i>   | a) a rich millet soup  |
| 2. <i>kholodnyk</i> | b) fried cakes of grated or ground potato with flour and egg   |
| 3. <i>nalysnyky</i> | c) thick, soft dumplings made with wheat or corn flour   |
| 4. <i>kutia</i>     | d) a thick vegetable soup made of sauerkraut and/or white cabbage  |
| 5. <i>kholodets</i> | e) dumplings or boiled dough with diverse fillings, such as meat, mushrooms, vegetables, berries and curds               |
| 6. <i>pampushky</i> | f) a maize porridge with sour cream and brynza   |
| 7. <i>korovai</i>   | g) a sausage made with cooked blood, usually with a buckwheat filling  |
| 8. <i>uzvar</i>     | h) a soup based on sorrel leaves and broth, often with eggs and vegetables   |
| 9. <i>halushky</i>  | i) cooked cabbage leaves wrapped around a filling of meat, rice, and spices  |
| 10. <i>yushka</i>   | j) buns made of yeast dough from wheat, rye or buckwheat flour which are seasoned with garlic sauce                      |
| 11. <i>varenyky</i> | k) jellied meat  |
| 12. <i>pechenia</i> | l) a rich, sweet grain pudding made of wheat, poppy seeds and honey  |
| 13. <i>kalach</i>   | m) a thick soup made with beets, cabbage, potatoes, or other vegetables and served hot or chilled, often with sour cream |

14. *kulich* n) a cutlet of boneless chicken breast that is pounded and rolled around cold garlic butter with herbs, then breaded and either fried or baked
15. *paska* o) a lump of cold baked pork
16. *krovianka* p) thick pancakes with yeast or soda, served with sour cream or honey
17. *holubtsi* q) fried pancakes with curds served with sour cream, jam, or honey
18. *banosh* r) a clear fish soup usually containing sliced vegetables
19. *kapustniak* s) fried and steamed meat served in a clay pot
20. *oladky* t) a type of sweet braided bread, which has a circular form and is decorated intricately with birds and other ornaments made of dough. It is used during wedding ceremonies.
21. *green borsch* u) ring-shaped bread which is usually served at funerals and during Christmas celebrations
22. *verhuny* v) Easter bread of tall cylindrical form which top is often decorated with roses or crosses
23. *chicken Kiev* w) a beverage, made with dried fruits, berries and honey
24. *buzhenyna* x) a beetroot soup that is served cold with sour cream
25. *syryny* y) thin crepes wrapped around a filling of curds, meat, jam, mushrooms, berries, etc.
26. *deruny* z) crisp sweet strips of dough, shaped into thin twisted ribbons, which are deep-fried and dusted with powdered sugar

b) 🍷 Answer the following questions.



- 1. Do you like Ukrainian cuisine? What exactly do you like about it?
- 2. What Ukrainian dishes are your favourite? Do you know their recipes? Can you cook these dishes?
- 3. What Ukrainian dishes are your pet hates? Why?
- 4. Which Ukrainian specialities have you never tried? Why?
- 5. Have you ever tasted any extraordinary Ukrainian food?
- 6. Which Ukrainian dishes do you usually cook to treat foreigners?
- 7. Do you know any other dishes, which were not mentioned in this exercise? What are they? Can you give their recipes?
- 8. Does your family have any special recipes that are passed down from generation to generation?



4

Fill in the gaps with a suitable verb from the list below.

### *Varenyky with Potato Filling and Zazharka*

#### **Ingredients:**



#### **dough:**

- 1 egg
- 320 gr wheat flour
- 250 ml water
- a pinch of salt

#### **filling:**

- 5-6 potatoes
- 3 onions
- 100 gr butter
- 2 tbsp vegetable oil
- salt, pepper to taste

#### **zazharka:**

- 100 gr bacon
- 1 onion

cover, pour, roll, sprinkle, cut, continue, knead, mix\*(2), warm, put\*(2), place\*(2), beat, boil\*(2), add\*(4), stick, mash, chop, fry, leave, tight, bring, cook, sauté

#### **How to cook the filling:**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ potatoes for 20 minutes and then 2. \_\_\_\_\_ them. 3. \_\_\_\_\_ onion and 4. \_\_\_\_\_ it finely on the hot pan with vegetable oil. 5. \_\_\_\_\_ fried onion, butter, salt and pepper to the mashed potatoes. 6. \_\_\_\_\_ all ingredients.

#### **How to make the dough:**

7. \_\_\_\_\_ one cup of flour into the deep bowl. 8. \_\_\_\_\_ salt. 9. \_\_\_\_\_ up water till 30-35 degrees and 10. \_\_\_\_\_ it to the bowl. 11. \_\_\_\_\_ up one egg. 12. \_\_\_\_\_ all ingredients thoroughly. 13. \_\_\_\_\_ the second cup of flour and 14. \_\_\_\_\_ the mixture on surface covered with flour. 15. \_\_\_\_\_ the dough with your hands. If it is sticking 16. \_\_\_\_\_ some flour. 17. \_\_\_\_\_ kneading the dough until it becomes elastic. 18. \_\_\_\_\_ the kneaded dough with a bowl or a damp tea cloth and 19. \_\_\_\_\_ it for the “rest” for 40 minutes.

#### **How to cook varenyky:**

When the dough is ready, 20. \_\_\_\_\_ it out and then using a special round shape or a cup 21. \_\_\_\_\_ out circles. Then 22. \_\_\_\_\_ the filling in the center of each circle and 23. \_\_\_\_\_ up the edges. 24. \_\_\_\_\_ a large pot of water to boil with 1 tbsp salt. 25. \_\_\_\_\_ varenyky to the boiling water and 26. \_\_\_\_\_ for several minutes. 27. \_\_\_\_\_ until they float to the top and for an additional couple minutes, stirring occasionally to make sure they don't 28. \_\_\_\_\_ to the bottom. Then 29. \_\_\_\_\_ them with a slotted spoon and 30. \_\_\_\_\_.



To make “zazharka”, 31. \_\_\_\_\_ bacon until it releases its fat, add onion and sauté until golden. 32. \_\_\_\_\_ over finished varenyky.

5

**Fill in the missing words.**

***Holubtsi (Cabbage Rolls)***

1. \_\_\_\_\_ cabbage. Place a large cabbage head in a deep pot of 2. \_\_\_\_\_ water. Let stand until leaves are 3. \_\_\_\_\_ soft. 4. \_\_\_\_\_ from water, 5. \_\_\_\_\_ leaves from the head. Return head to boiling water if inside leaves require softening. Pare down hard centre rib on each leaf.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ salt and rice to the boiling water. Let stand until rice 7. \_\_\_\_\_ all water.

In a large 8. \_\_\_\_\_, sauté one medium onion in bacon drippings until tender. 9. \_\_\_\_\_ this with rice (1 cup) and 250 grams of 10. \_\_\_\_\_ meat, and 11. \_\_\_\_\_ one egg, garlic, salt and pepper.



Place a heaping tablespoon of the meat mixture onto a cabbage 12. \_\_\_\_\_. Arrange rolls in layers in a 13. \_\_\_\_\_.

14. \_\_\_\_\_ each layer with salt and pepper. 15. \_\_\_\_\_ tomato juice over rolls. Cover with two or three large cabbage leaves.

Cover tightly. Bake 16. \_\_\_\_\_ 180° C for 1,5 hour.

Serve 17. \_\_\_\_\_ with 18. \_\_\_\_\_ or tomato 19. \_\_\_\_\_.

6

**🔊 Listen to the speakers and write down the recipe of Ukrainian Easter bread.**

7

**Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Українська кухня тісно пов'язана з традиціями, культурою і способом життя українців. Вона відома своїм розмаїттям і неймовірними смаками.



2. Найпопулярніша українська страва – це борщ. Цей густий і смачний суп готують із безлічі інгредієнтів, включаючи м'ясо, гриби, квасоллю і навіть чорнослив. Але основними інгредієнтами, що саме й роблять його особливим і неповторним, є буряк та капуста.

3. Відомі також грибні супи, квасолевий і гороховий супи, супи з галушками, рибні юшки та густі юшки з пшоном (кулеші).

4. Голубці – ще одна улюблена страва, як і вареники з картоплею, домашнім сиром, м'ясом, кислою капустою або з ягодами: із чорницею або з вишнями.

5. Українці люблять молочні продукти, наприклад сирники й ряжанку (кисле пражене молоко). Жодне свято не обходиться без пирогів, пампушок, коржів-медовиків та традиційного українського напою узвару – компоту з сушених яблук і груш.

6. Дуже смачна українська домашня ковбаса. Її зберігають давнім способом – у керамічних горщиках, заповнених розтопленим смальцем.



7. Якщо ви хочете пригостити своїх друзів незвичайним блюдом, приготуйте їм смачні деруни. Це рум'яні і пишні картопляні оладки, які зверху покриті хрусткою скоринкою. А всередині вони соковиті й ніжні. Їх швидко і легко готувати. Традиційно ця страва готується з тертої

сирої картоплі з додаванням цибулі, часнику і яєць. Існують різні рецепти – з грибами, сиром і фаршем. Головне, що процес приготування є простий.

8. Банош – це трава з гуцульської кухні. Здавалося б, чим може здивувати кукурудзяна каша? Весь секрет у тому, чим її приправляють: під час приготування додають сметану або вершки, а зверху кладуть обсмажені шкварки і бринзу.

9. Печеня – це страва в горщиках, до її складу входять картопля, квашена капуста і м'ясо. Дуже ситна й апетитна страва.

10. Картопляники готуються з вареної товченої картоплі, до якої додають ложку-другу білого борошна та сире яйце. Потім з цієї суміші виробляють котлетки та, викачавши їх у борошні, смажать на олії чи смальці. Іноді їх начиняють м'ясом, шкварками, грибами – тоді вони схожі на зрази.

8

Write an essay about Ukrainian cuisine (140-190 words) and give recipes of the most popular dishes.

9

Read the following text and translate it into Ukrainian.

### *Food around the World*



In most cultures, food is a way for people to gather. It **brings** family and friends **together** for banquets and holidays. Delicious food is made all over the world and every region has its own characteristics. From the hot and spicy Asian cuisine, through the exquisitely cooked dishes of France to the barbeques of Northern America you can **be ensured** to never **go hungry** if you are open and willing to try new taste experiences.

It is impossible to **objectively decide** which cuisine is most delicious, but if you consider your **taste buds**, they know what will **make** you **mouth water**.

Over recent years, different cuisines have taken on a new popularity. Most cities now have cuisines from all corners of the globe. For new cooking ideas or restaurant options, read about some of these global cuisines.

### **Mexican**



Chicken, tamales, tortillas, corn, rice and beans are **the basics** of Mexican food. Spiced up with lots of chili, cinnamon, cumin, garlic and onions. Sweet potatoes, peanuts, avocado, guava, tomato and chocolate also **find their way into** Mexican meals.

## Italian

**Home of** the pasta and the pizza, Italian food is simple dishes with only a few ingredients but of extraordinary quality. Tomatoes and basil, olive oil and Prosciutto de Parma are typical Italian products. Italians are also known for their **fondness** of desserts like cheese, cake, ice cream, fruit, sweets and cookies.



## Japanese



You cannot avoid the sushi, but Japanese cooking is so much more. Based on noodles or rice the Japanese meals are usually made of seafood, tofu or vegetables. Ingredients are grilled, simmered, deep-fried, steamed, dressed or raw (sashimi).

## French

Home of the **gourmet** meal, French cooking is known for its class and superb ingredients. Onions, foie gras, truffles, sea food, croissants and the baguette, everything is arranged with exceptional attention to detail and served with a glass of wine.



## Greek



Lamb, seafood, olives, tomatoes and Feta cheese. Greek food consists of pita, gyros, tzatziki and souvlaki often served with Retsina or Ouzo. Garlic, mint, thyme, oregano and honey are often used as flavour makers.

## Chinese

Most meals are served in **bite-sized** pieces ready to be picked up by chopsticks. The basics include rice and noodles. Meat includes every variety known to man. Vegetables including chilies are always a part of the dishes as well as fish sauce.



## Indian



Hot curries with lots of chili and a side of raita to cool down. Dishes are based on rice and often vegetarian or with seafood. Coriander, ginger, cumin, cardamom, saffron and nutmeg a favored flavour makers.

## German

Potatoes, pork, beef and poultry – often pot-roasted – provide the meals for many Germans. Sausages, sauerkraut and strudel are also widely eaten. Served with a mug of beer.





## Spanish

Paella and tapas, stews, chorizo, serrano ham, beans and seafood. Spanish food is also potato tortillas and Gazpacho soup.

## English

Fish and chips, pies and stews are the foods often **associated with** The British Isles. English breakfasts consisting of white beans, bacon, tomatoes, scrambled eggs, sausages and hash browns are also widely known worldwide.



## North American

Hot dogs, burgers, hot wings, French fries and spareribs **are commonly identified with** the North American barbecue food style. Soup, seafood, chicken and a good steak are also commonly eaten, but like most other thing in North America the cuisine is **a melting pot** of different tastes brought in from all over the world.



## Arab



Couscous, shish kebab, hummus, baklawa and falafel. Dates, garlic, yogurt, rice and lots of spices like cinnamon, saffron, cumin and saffron make up the Arabian cuisine. Salad is often served as a side dish.

## Thai

Thai cooking places emphasis on **lightly prepared** dishes with strong aroma and various spices. It demonstrates intricacy, attention to detail, color, taste and the use of ingredients with medicinal benefits, as well as good flavor. Stir-fried rice and noodle dishes with lots of vegetables and curry-sauces. Chili is widely used as well as Thai basil, lemon grass and coconut.



10

**How much do you know about international foods? Test yourself by answering the questions. Every correct answer is 1 point.**

1. What is the name of the Spanish soup served cold?
2. What meat is traditionally eaten in the USA for Thanksgiving?
3. What is the name of the traditional Belgian dish made of potatoes?
4. Where does Guinness come from?
5. In which country would you get the wurst sausage?
6. Which country is famous for its pasta dishes and fantastic pizza?
7. What is the name of a Greek or Turkish pastry filled with nuts and honey?



8. Which country would you associate with curry?
9. What is the name of a cold yogurt beverage mixed with salt that is extremely popular in Turkey?
10. What is the name of the Spanish rice dish, which is usually served with seafood?
11. In Indian cuisine, what dairy product is Lassi (a drink) made with?
12. What is the most popular drink at French dinner tables?
13. In Italian cuisine, what is Panna Cotta?
14. Which country does tzatziki come from?
15. How is the food prepared in accordance with Jewish law called?
16. Can you name at least one popular Mexican ingredient?
17. In which country would you eat bacon, sausages and eggs for breakfast?
18. What is the name of traditional South American caffeine-rich infused drink?
19. Where do varenyky come from?
20. What is the name of Japanese food, which consists of rice, seafood and vegetables?



### Score Key

**1-5 points:** *You don't know much about international foods. Maybe you should try eating out more? Try being more adventurous in your eating and you will discover a whole new world of delicious tastes.*

**6-10 points:** *Food is a wonderful part of your life. Go on to eat widely and well as you discover the joys of eating from around the world.*

**11-15 points:** *You are a true gourmet! You are always on the search for new culinary possibilities, enjoying every new taste and flavour you find on your way.*

### Answers

1. Gazpacho 2. Turkey 3. French Fries 4. Ireland 5. Germany 6. Italy 7. Baklava  
 8. India 9. Ayran 10. Paella 11. Yogurt 12. Wine 13. It is a dessert made by blending thick cream, egg white and honey 14. Greece 15. Kosher 16. Beans, corn, chili peppers  
 17. UK 18. Yerba mate 19. Ukraine 20. Sushi

11

**a) Listen to three people. What kind of food is each person describing Mexican, Italian or Chinese?**

Speaker 1: \_\_\_\_\_ Speaker 2: \_\_\_\_\_ Speaker 3: \_\_\_\_\_

**b) Listen again and write down the words that gave you the correct answers.**

Speaker 1: \_\_\_\_\_ Speaker 2: \_\_\_\_\_ Speaker 3: \_\_\_\_\_

a) \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_

a) \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_

a) \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_



12

🗨️ Answer and discuss the following questions.



- 1. Do you like food from other countries? If yes, which do you like the most?
- 2. What is your opinion of Mexican/American/Spanish/Italian/Indian/Greek /French food?
- 3. What do you think of Thai/Chinese/Japanese food?
- 4. What differences do you notice in the preparation of American/British/French and Chinese/Japanese/Thai foods?
- 5. Have you ever tasted African/Arab food? How do you find it?
- 6. Is Italian cuisine popular with you and your friends? Why?
- 7. Do you think that food defines a culture? If so, how?
- 8. How do you understand the saying: “*There is no easier way to travel the world than through food.*”?

13

Complete the text with the correct words. Some letters are given.

### *My British Food Adventure*



I know British food doesn't have the greatest reputation in the world, but I've just got back from a week in a lovely English country hotel and we had some really **1. d \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ s** meals! We had an early **2. \_ r \_ \_ \_ \_ s** every day and my dad went for the **3. \_ \_ l** English! It was **4. s \_ \_ - s \_ \_ \_ \_** and he had three helpings of fried eggs, **5. \_ \_ k \_** beans, and sausages covered in half a bottle of tomato **6. \_ \_ t \_ \_ u**! Mum and I only had one **7. r \_ \_ \_ \_** of bacon and a couple of slices of toast each, and my sister is a **8. \_ \_ g \_ \_ r \_ \_**, so she just had cereal and fruit. We did a lot of walking during the day, and the hotel gave us a **9. \_ \_ c \_ \_** lunch to take with us, with sandwiches, **10. \_ \_ f** drinks, some fruit – usually an apple or a banana – and a **11. \_ \_ \_ \_ t** of crisps. Oh yes, and some **12. \_ \_ m \_ - \_ d** biscuits. The Brits have **13. \_ e** about 4:30 p.m. in the afternoon, where you drink tea (of course!) and eat small cakes and **14. \_ \_ s \_ u \_ \_**. Then it was more food again with dinner in the hotel restaurant at 8:30 p.m. Every night there were three **15. \_ \_ u \_ \_ \_**, including a starter and a dessert, and mum and dad had a bottle of local **16. \_ \_ y** white wine too. Yes, the British do produce wine! My favourite meal was the chicken curry (not too **17. \_ p \_ \_**) and the apple **18. \_ i** with fresh cream! It was my birthday during the week and the chef **19. \_ \_ e** me a special birthday cake. Back home now and no surprise – I've put on weight – so it's a **20. \_ \_ \_ s** diet before school starts!

**14****Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Сувлакі – найбільш відома та найбільш визнана національна страва грецької кухні. Сувлакі – такий собі грецький “фастфуд”, приготовлений із невеликих шматків м’яса та овочів на шпажках. Найчастіше готують страву із свинини, але також використовують курятину й баранину. Смакує сувлакі із картопляним гарніром та під різними соусами.



2. Найпопулярнішою в Італії є піца Маргарита, оскільки названа вона на честь королеви, а її основні інгредієнти репрезентують кольори прапору (червоний – помідор, зелений – базилік, білий – моцарелла).

3. Дуже тонкі солодкі млинці, що готують із білої муки відображають витонченість та вишуканість французів загалом. Їх подають із найрізноманітнішими начинками – джемами, фруктами, шоколадом.

4. Бігус – традиційна страва польської кухні, що складається із тушкованих овочів та м’яса. Цей наїдок готують із розмаїття інгредієнтів – свіжої та квашеної капусти, різних сортів м’яса та сосисок, меду, помідорів, грибів, перцю, тмину та інших спецій. Найчастіше бігус подають всередині хлібної булки, що робить страву не лише смачною, а й оригінальною.



5. Класичний віденський шніцель – дуже тонкий шматок відбитої телятини в паніровці, підсмажений до золотисто-коричневого кольору у великій кількості жиру чи вершкового

масла. Як гарнір до нього, як правило, подають картоплю чи рис, а прикрашають лимоном і петрушкою.

6. Курка в тандирі – класична індійська страва. Шматочки курятини маринують в йогурті з додаванням спецій, а потім запікають на великому вогні в глиняній печі. Подається страва, як правило, з овочами і рисом.

**15****✪ Speak about your favourite cuisine according to the plan below.****Plan:**

1. *Type of cuisine*
2. *Main foods*
3. *Characteristic features*
4. *Name of dishes*
5. *A detailed recipe of your favourite dish*

**ENGLISH LANGUAGE EXAM TOPICS**

1. Ukrainian cuisine.
2. Italian / French / German / Greek / Spanish cuisine.

## SECTION V: EATING OUT. AT THE RESTAURANT

### GRAMMAR:

- Tense Forms (Revision)
- Tag Questions (Revision)

### Vocabulary

Types of Restaurant	Види Ресторанів
a bar	1) бар; буфет 2) стійка (для подачі алкогольних напоїв)
• <i>a sandwich bar</i>	• <i>бутербродна</i>
• <i>a snack bar</i>	• <i>бар, буфет, закусошна</i>
a bistro	бістро; маленьке кафе; закусошна
a café	кафе; кав'ярня
• <i>a coffeehouse</i>	• <i>мережева кав'ярня</i>
a cafeteria	кафетерій, їдальня самообслуговування
a canteen / a dining hall	їдальня, буфет (на заводі, у навчальному закладі)
an eatery	закусошна, ресторан
a food truck	пересувна кав'ярня; закусошна
a pizzeria	піцерія
a pub	паб, пивна
a restaurant	ресторан
• <i>a ~ buffet</i>	• <i>буфет, шведський стіл, буфетна стойка в ресторані</i>
• <i>a casual dining ~ / a family ~</i>	• <i>сімейний ~</i>
• <i>a chain ~</i>	• <i>мережевий ~</i>
• <i>an ethnic ~</i>	• <i>~ національної кухні</i>
• <i>a family-run ~</i>	• <i>~, що є сімейним бізнесом родини</i>
• <i>a fast food ~</i>	• <i>~ швидкої їжі</i>
• <i>a fine dining ~</i>	• <i>вишуканий, дорогий ~</i>
• <i>a pop-up ~</i>	• <i>~ у незвичному місці, з незвичним антуражем</i>
• <i>a self-service ~</i>	• <i>~ самообслуговування</i>
• <i>a take-away ~</i>	• <i>~ що відпускає (обіди, їжу) додому</i>
clientele	клієнтура, постійні відвідувачі
a code of conduct	кодекс поведінки, правила поведінки
décor	декор, оформлення
exclusivity	винятковість
finger food	їжа, яку можна їсти руками

karaoke	караоке
kitsch	кітч
a set-up	організація, обстановка
table à la carte	порційні страви з меню
table d'hôte	комплексний обід
table service	обслуговування за столиком
uniformity	однаковість, дотримання єдиного стилю
affordable	що можна собі дозволити (по ціні)
ambivalent	роздвоєний (про почуття); двоїстий (про відношення)
classy	“класний”, перший сорт; шикарний; стильний;
gastronomic(al)	гастрономічний
immaculate	ідеальний, бездоганний
out-of-the-box	винятково та незвично гарний
stereotypical	стереотипний
upscale	вище середнього гатунку, високоякісний
vibrant	оживлений, гучний
to add <b>up to</b> <i>sth.</i>	зводиться до <i>чого-небудь</i>
to aim <b>at</b> <i>sth.</i>	ставити <i>що-небудь</i> за свою мету, прагнути <i>чого-небудь</i>
to dine out / to eat out	їсти не вдома
to have a meal out	поїсти десь
• <i>to have a full-course meal</i>	• <i>мати прийом їжі з декількох страв</i>
• <i>to have a light meal</i>	• <i>трохи поїсти</i>
• <i>to have a quick meal</i>	• <i>швидко поїсти</i>
to enhance	підвищувати якість
to patronize	бути постійним відвідувачем, клієнтом
to place an order	розміщувати замовлення
to specialize <b>in</b> <i>sth.</i>	спеціалізуватися на <i>чомусь</i>
to splash <b>out on</b> <i>sth.</i>	розщедритися, розкошелитися на <i>щось</i>
<b>At the Restaurant</b>	<b>У Ресторані</b>
a bill	рахунок
• <i>to meet / to pay ~</i>	• <i>оплатити рахунок</i>
• <i>The bill is on me / you / him.</i>	• <i>Я плачу / ти платиш / він платить.</i>
a chef	шеф-кухар, головний кухар
a course	страва
• <i>the first ~</i>	• <i>перша страва за обідом</i>
• <i>the second ~</i>	• <i>друга страва за обідом</i>
• <i>the main ~ / the entrée</i>	• <i>головна страва за обідом</i>

• <i>an appetizer / an hors d'oeuvre / a starter</i>	• <i>закуска</i>
• <i>a dessert / afters / pudding</i>	• <i>десерт</i>
a helping / a portion	порція
• <i>a second / another helping</i>	• <i>добавка (додаткова порція)</i>
a menu	меню
• <i>to be on the ~</i>	• <i>бути в меню</i>
a side dish / a garnish	гарнір
a tip / to tip	чайові / давати “на чай”
• <i>to tip a waiter</i>	• <i>дати офіціантові “на чай”</i>
• <i>tips / service included</i>	• <i>чайові включені у вартість послуги</i>
a waiter / a waitress	офіціант / офіціантка
a wine card / a wine list	карта вин
• <i>to be on the ~</i>	• <i>бути в карті вин</i>
to book / to reserve a table	резервувати, замовляти столик
to help oneself <b>to sth.</b>	пригоститися <i>чимось</i>
• <i>Help yourself!</i>	• <i>Пригощайтеся, будь ласка!</i>
to treat <i>sb. to sth.</i>	пригостити <i>кого-небудь чимось</i>

1

Read the following text, translate it into Ukrainian and answer the questions below according to the model.

### *Places to Eat Out*

**Dining at restaurants** has been a part of our social lives since most of us can remember. The reasons for eating at restaurants are so varied that it is rather an impossible task to list them. However, one thing is obvious, that **eating out** is usually a result of necessity, or a need to explore a new **gastronomic dimension**. Either way, we can safely assume that it is the **type of the restaurant**, which includes its architecture, **decor** and atmosphere, the cuisine it serves, the way the **setup** is presented, and above all, the **service** that it provides, that **adds up to** the unforgettable experience of **dining out**. All these composites of a restaurant make us love it, hate it, or remain **ambivalent about** it. The reason we prefer some restaurants to the rest is that a certain aspect about them appeals to us. Therefore, take a look at some of the popular types of restaurants to know them better and **to enhance** your own experience of dining out.

#### **Fast Food Restaurants**

Fast food is a type of restaurant in which customers have a **quick meal**. This consists mainly of burgers, hot dogs, steaks, French fries, pizzas, sandwiches and the massive use of different sauces like mustard, mayonnaise and ketchup.

These restaurants are characterized by a relatively **modest cost** and **quick service**, typically between 1 to 3 minutes of **placing an order**.



So, it is not surprising that this type of restaurants is popular the world over. The **clientele** features mainly the younger age groups, but also an increasing proportion of adults for reasons related to working rhythms.

Fast food is often considered synonymous of unhealthy food for the poor quality and variety of ingredients and for the abundance of fried, fatty, salty and sugary items.

### Cafeteria / Canteen



These are small restaurants within or close to a workplace **patronized** by employees. A cafeteria is also inside schools and universities where it is referred to as a **dining hall**.

There is no **table service**; customers take the food they want and place it on a tray.

### Sandwich Bar

A sandwich bar is an informal restaurant, which mainly serves **sandwiches**, toasts, and drinks. Some of them also offer other types of food such as salads and meat. Usually, they are busy during working days for workers who look for a **light meal** at a convenient price.

### Restaurant Buffet



These characterize a breakfast, lunch or dinner where **guests serve themselves** from various types of food displayed on counters or tables.

The buffet is offered in various places, especially in hotel restaurants. It typically features a menu according to the formula of “**all you can eat**” at a pre-fixed price.

In a buffet, you’ll find both hot dishes and cold ones. Usually it requires the use of cutlery, but there is also the possibility of a “**buffet finger**” (finger food) where you can consume food one by one with your hands.

### Self-service Restaurant

These are informal places where customers serve themselves. The owners of these restaurants **aim at** quickness rather than quality, having **customers in a hurry** as their target.

Self-service restaurants are almost everywhere: supermarkets, shopping centers, hotels, close to offices and schools, and so on.

### Take-away Restaurants

Take-away restaurants are very popular. They cook food, which you can **take out** and eat elsewhere. It is cheaper than eating in the restaurant and you can even **order by phone** and have all the food brought to your home.



## Snack Bar

Generally, a snack bar indicates a **low-priced food counter**, which is a part of another structure where snacks, soft drinks and light meals are sold.

Also, they might be found on the beaches where sandwiches, hot dogs, hamburgers, French fries, salads and other foods are sold.

## Pizzeria



The pizzeria indicates a particular type of **Italian restaurant** where you can eat mainly pizzas. You often find other types of dishes such as fries, salads and starters of mozzarella and meats there.

As with any restaurant, the customers **are served at the table** by waiters and **choose their orders from the menu**.

## Café

Cafés are small restaurants serving **hot beverages** such as coffee, espresso, latte, cappuccino, tea. They also sell light meals such as sandwiches and cake.

They range from **neighborhood cafes** to big chains called **coffeehouses**.

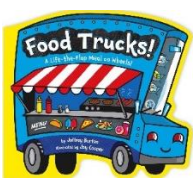
## Bistro

A bistro is a small restaurant born in Paris, serving economical simple food in an informal setting. It is a very simple place with a reduced size, where the manager and chef converge in one person. In the bistros, customers may enjoy **French cuisine** or sip a glass of wine or coffee.

## Pubs

Traditionally, **pubs** were beer houses. However, in modern times, pubs have started serving all types of alcohol, non-alcoholic beverages, and food items. Pubs provide full table service and bar service to their customers. Music, **casual decor**, a dance floor, a projection screen, and a **well-equipped bar** are some of the important features of a pub. Pubs have a moderate price range for all the items they serve.

## Food Truck



The **food truck** is a vehicle equipped with cooking appliances that offers food of any kind from ice creams to hamburgers and pizzas.

## Casual Dining Restaurants

Casual dining restaurants, also known as **family restaurants**, provide families with a relatively **upscale**, yet **affordable**, dining experience. The menu at these restaurants is **moderately priced**. They can serve multiple cuisines, **fusion cuisine** or can **specialize in** one type of cuisine (**ethnic restaurants**). These restaurants serve a **full-course meal**, with proper table service, and liquor too.

Here you can have a “**table d’hôte**”. These meals are known as **regular dinners**. It means that you are served with meals of several **courses**, at a fixed price. Many restaurants also offer “**table à la carte**”, which means that the meals are ordered course by course, from the **menu card**, each **dish** separately. “Table d’hôte” is cheaper than “table à la carte”, but the choice is limited.

### Pop-up Restaurants

**Pop-up restaurants** are a fairly recent trend in the food world. The peculiarity of these restaurants is that they have **unique locations** and **decor**. They are not like other **stereotypical** restaurants that serve people. Old warehouses, garages, rooftops, and residential buildings are some **out-of-the-box** locations for these restaurants. The attractive aspect about these restaurants is that they come as a total surprise, and offer a truly different experience to their customers.

### Fine Dining Restaurants



**Fine dining restaurants** offer their customers an upscale and proper full-course meal experience. These restaurants try to create a **classy** atmosphere that speaks of **immaculate taste**, both in decor and food making. Right from crockery, cutlery, to the waiters, everything follows a **code of conduct** and strict **uniformity**. They either operate in chains or

have a single unit of operation to maintain **exclusivity**. They may serve multiple cuisines, but with specialization in one type, or a certain **signature dish**. The prices in these restaurants range from moderate to expensive.

So, these were the most popular types of restaurants that are seen around the world. These broad types have further **variations** and **sub types**. For instance, a bistro is very similar to a café. There are slight changes, but the general idea of relaxed service remains the same. What really matters beyond the type of a restaurant is the experience you get. Despite the differences in the service and **mode of operation**, the common **meeting point** for all the restaurants around the world remains the same – *providing customers with the best service and food!*

- 1. What/Which types of the above-mentioned restaurants are available in the place where you live?
- 2. Can you give their names and describe them as in the example?

**Model:** As for coffeehouses, there is *Aroma Kava* and *Coffee House* in Kyiv. They offer and serve very tasty coffee, tea, coffee drinks and lemonade.

2

### Give English equivalents.

Подавати страви різноманітних кухонь світу, комплексний обід, замовляти порційні страви з меню, бездоганний смак, винятково та незвично гарний,

фірмова страва, обід з декількох страв, спільна кінцева мета, зберігати ексклюзивність, витримувати все в одному стилі, обслуговування високої якості, подавати гарячі та холодні напої, добре оснащений бар, клієнтура, виявляти нові гастрономічні аспекти, вишукана атмосфера та декор ресторану, двоїсте враження, швидко поїсти, швидке обслуговування, робити замовлення, відвідувати їдальню, мережева кав'ярня, відсутність обслуговування за столиком, самообслуговування, буфет, що відпускає (обіди) додому, їжа, яку можна їсти руками, легка їжа за помірною ціною, замовити обід по телефону, закусочна, робити замовлення з меню, маленька місцева кав'ярня, спеціалізуватися на певній кухні, пересувна закусочна.



**3** **Listen to the speaker telling about *restaurants*. Fill in the gaps.**  
***Restaurants***

I love restaurants. I never **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ to them. I go to restaurants a lot. Maybe three times a week. I have my favourite restaurants, **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ regularly. The waiters know me and I usually get very good service. But **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ new restaurants. It's exciting to see what's on the menu and how the food will taste. Most of the **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ new restaurant is a great experience. But sometimes, I **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ friend recommended a restaurant. I've been to a few restaurants where the food was so bad, **6.** \_\_\_\_\_, I didn't want to pay. My favourite restaurants are Indian. I **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ of Indian food. I love the smells inside Indian restaurants. And of **8.** \_\_\_\_\_.

**4** **a) Read these reviews, written about a variety of restaurants in London, translate them into Ukrainian and write out any vocabulary or phrases that can help you to describe these restaurants.**

**1. The Ritz**

**Food: traditional British or fusion cuisine**

**Price per person: £80**

This spectacular palace-style dining room is famous as one of London's most luxurious, romantic restaurants. It is hard to resist splashing out on the exquisite 5-course menu. The staff are discreet and extremely polite. It is hardly surprising that the clients are a mixture of celebrities, business executives and wealthy tourists. Come here for a memorable dining experience, which will certainly do damage to your bank account!

**2. Yo sushi!**

**Food: Japanese**

**Price per person: £10-15**

The best known sushi place in town. This restaurant is great both for its raw fish and its kitsch Japanese décor. Service is efficient and speedy. You can eat delicious sushi for a few pounds, serve yourself unlimited beer, select food from a conveyor belt and even have a relaxing head massage! Sometimes there are karaoke nights here. This restaurant is bright and unromantic but great fun.

### **3. Amaretto**

**Food: Italian**

**Price per person: £15-20**

A family-owned restaurant that has faithful clients coming back again and again. Amaretto offers classic Italian food in warm and friendly surroundings. Whatever time you come here, this restaurant is always busy and lively. The pizzas and pasta dishes are well recommended as being tasty and excellent value for money. Great for families or big groups of friends.

### **4. Levant**

**Food: Lebanese/Middle Eastern**

**Price per person: £20-30**

An exotic Middle Eastern restaurant, which is perfect for a romantic evening. The atmosphere is moody and intimate, with lots of candles, soft cushions and coloured glass lanterns. When you find the entrance, hidden away down a small street, you are greeted by luscious plants and the smell of incense and exotic perfumes. The menu offers a feast of authentic Lebanese food for people who like to try something new and unusual. If you stay late, you will even be able to watch a belly-dancing show!

### **5. The George Inn**

**Food: traditional British pub food**

**Price per person: £5-10**

A dark and smoky pub, which was built in 1780. Come here if you want to taste traditional English fish and chips or steak and kidney pie in a lively atmosphere. The food isn't great, the service is slow, but this pub serves a good range of beers and ales.

### **6. Food for Thought**

**Food: vegetarian**

**Price per person: £5-10**

This tiny colourful vegetarian restaurant and takeaway offers food free of chemicals, pesticides and preservatives. The food is good and the menu changes every day, but this place is also great if you just want a coffee. Don't come here at busy times if you want a slow, leisurely meal.

### **7. Café Sol**

**Food: Mexican**

**Price: £20-30**

Café Sol is a great place to go at any time. Enjoy authentic Mexican cuisine at lunchtime (watch out for the chilli!) or go for a drink and a dance when it gets dark. The atmosphere is always buzzing and vibrant, and the food is reasonably priced. On a Saturday night, the young crowds in Café Sol are usually very loud and merry after sampling the extensive list of tequilas!

## 8. The Hard Rock Café

**Food: Tex-Mex and burgers**

**Price per person: £10-20**

A genuine celebration of rock ‘n’ roll! This is the original Hard Rock Café, here since the 1970s, and it’s the first ever theme restaurant. The queue to get in is legendary. You can’t make reservations and you will find a queue almost all day long, every day of the year. But this actually adds to the memorable experience. Once in, there’s good food and a great atmosphere, created by rock music, dim lighting and walls covered in rock memorabilia.

### b) Match the words and phrases to their definitions.

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>fusion cuisine</i>     | a) polite and careful in what you do or say, because you want to avoid embarrassing or offending someone                          |
| 2. <i>takeaway</i>           | b) someone who is employed by a business at a senior level  |
| 3. <i>to splash out on</i>   | c) to try the qualities of (food or drink) by tasting it  |
| 4. <i>vibrant</i>            | d) food or cooking which incorporates elements of both Eastern and Western cuisine  |
| 5. <i>luscious</i>           | e) full of life, energy, and enthusiasm   |
| 6. <i>buzzing atmosphere</i> | f) objects that are kept or collected because of their historical interest, esp. those associated with memorable people or events |
| 7. <i>an executive</i>       | g) when people are moving around quickly and busily   |
| 8. <i>lantern</i>            | h) buy something even though it costs a lot of money  |
| 9. <i>memorabilia</i>        | i) beautiful in a dramatic and eye-catching way   |
| 10. <i>kitsch</i>            | j) an entertainment of Japanese origin in which people take it in turns to sing well-known songs over a prerecorded backing tape  |
| 11. <i>Tex-Mex</i>           | k) showy and thought by some people to be in bad taste  |
| 12. <i>discreet</i>          | l) having a pleasingly rich, sweet taste  |
| 13. <i>incense</i>           | m) substance that is burned for the sweet smell it produces   |
| 14. <i>to sample</i>         | n) a lamp in a metal frame with glass side and with a handle on top so you can carry it   |
| 15. <i>karaoke</i>           | o) having a blend of Mexican and southern American features originally characteristic of the border regions of Texas and Mexico   |
| 16. <i>spectacular</i>       | p) a shop or restaurant which sells hot cooked food that you eat somewhere else   |

c) Fill in the table with the relevant topical vocabulary from the text and report these restaurants to your group.

Restaurant	Cuisine & Food	Décor & Atmosphere	Customers	Price
1. <i>The Ritz</i>				
2. <i>Yo sushi!</i>				
3. <i>Amaretto</i>				
4. <i>Levant</i>				
5. <i>The George Inn</i>				
6. <i>Food for Thought</i>				
7. <i>Café Sol</i>				
8. <i>The Hard Rock Café</i>				

d) Answer the questions.

- 1. Which restaurant would you like to go to? Why?
- 2. Explain which restaurant you would recommend for ...
  - a. music fans who don't mind queueing! \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. a tourist wanting to try different English beers and ales. \_\_\_\_\_
  - c. a person looking for a fun evening and good food on a budget. \_\_\_\_\_
  - d. some young and hip professionals who like to dance. \_\_\_\_\_
  - e. an adventurous couple looking for a romantic night out. \_\_\_\_\_
  - f. a family looking for value for money. \_\_\_\_\_
  - g. a health-conscious person on a budget. \_\_\_\_\_
  - h. a person who enjoys spending money on high class dining. \_\_\_\_\_

**5** Listen to people expressing their opinions about the restaurants and fill in the table below. Then speak about these restaurants, commenting on quality of food, service, atmosphere and price.

	Mexican	Fast Food	Italian
quality of food	_____ quality, _____ and spicy	_____, not greasy or too _____	only the freshest _____
service	efficient, _____	_____ _____	_____, unhurried
atmosphere	_____	_____	relaxed, _____
price	_____	overpriced	_____ value for money

**6** Read the text about American students having a barbecue party and answer the questions.





At the end of her first semester in an American college, Elsa, a student from Greece, was invited to a **barbeque party**, but a bit different – the so-called **potluck party**. Elsa was happy to have the chance to try some American home cooking, after eating in the college **cafeteria** all semester. After Elsa found out that “potluck” meant that the guests would each bring some food themselves, she decided to prepare a traditional Greek dish called spanakopitta, a spinach pie. Her classmate, Jeanette, prepared a salad out of grains, parsley and tomatoes called tabbouleh. This dish is famous in Lebanon. Rick, Jeanette’s boyfriend, decided to bring three bags of potato chips and prepare hot dogs, grilled meat and sausages.

- 1. Is this party different from ours?
- 2. What does potluck party mean? What do you think about the custom?
- 3. Have you ever been to a potluck party? What did you bring to that party?
- 4. How do you usually organize a barbecue party? What do you usually eat and drink at this party?

7

**Read the conversations. Complete it with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Mind the word order in interrogative sentences.**



– Have you decided what you 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) this weekend?  
– Yes, we 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a quiet day on Saturday and then on Sunday we 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) a bus up into the mountains to do some walking. And we probably 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*book*) a hotel for the night. And what about you? You 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) lots of work as usual?

– Well, no. Mark phoned last night about coming down this weekend. He 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) on Friday.

– Oh, I’d like to see him. I think I 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*phone*) him up tonight and arrange something.

– We 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*plan*) to spend the day on the beach on Saturday. We 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) some swimming and sunbathing. I just hope the weather 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) warm enough. And then on Saturday night we 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) that new film with Tom Cruise.

– Well, as I’ve got nothing planned, I 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*join*) you at the beach on Sunday then, if that’s O.K.

– Of course, it is. I 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*pick*) you up from your flat some time after breakfast.



– Oh, thanks. I 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*bring*) a picnic?

– Yes. Why not? I tell you what: Mark and I 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) some sandwiches and you 16. \_\_\_\_\_ (*bring*) some salad and fruit? – Yes, fine. I 17. \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) that. Good. That 18. \_\_\_\_\_ (*save*) us all the cost of eating out. And what about

the film? What time you **19.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) that?

– We **20.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) the early showing at 6.00 p.m.? And then we **21.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*try out*) that new disco in town.

– Right. Well, I think I **22.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*spend*) the evening at home with Sarah.

– O.K. So, I **23.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) you on Saturday morning, probably at around 10 o'clock.

**8**

**Answer the questions below and discuss your ways of eating out with your groupmates.**

- **1.** How often do you eat out? Where do you usually go?
- **2.** Who do you usually go with when you eat out?
- **3.** Who pays when you go out for dinner? How much do you usually pay when you eat out?



- **4.** What do you think about fast food restaurants?
- **5.** Do you ever eat at McDonalds? KFC? Other fast food restaurants? What is your traditional menu at McDonald's?
- **6.** Do you like western food? Japanese? Thai? Italian?
- **7.** Can you name restaurants in this area that serve food from other countries? What kinds of foods do they serve? Have you ever eaten at any of them?
- **8.** Which type of restaurant do you prefer? What does it depend on?
- **9.** Do you care what a restaurant looks like, or is the food the only thing you care about?
- **10.** Do you like to try new restaurants, or do you prefer to go to those you have already been to? Why?
- **11.** Do you like eating food from food trucks? Why or why not? Where was the best food truck you've ever eaten from? What kinds of foods were there?
- **12.** Which restaurant would you choose to have a dinner with your boy/girlfriend: a bright with loud music and karaoke or the one with dim light and candles on the tables?



- **13.** Do you ever order out from a restaurant? What kind of foods?
- **14.** What types of take out (take away) food do you enjoy eating?
- **15.** What was the most unusual restaurant you ate at? Where was it? What were the atmosphere and food like?

**9**

**You are going to listen to the conversation between two friends about where they are planning to go for dinner. For questions (1-7), decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

**1.** They are going out on Friday night.

*True False*

**2.** They don't choose the Chinese restaurant because the food is greasy and very spicy.

3. Steve has been to the Ethiopian restaurant before.
4. The main dish at the Ethiopian restaurant consists of various kinds of food.
5. Bouillabaisse is made with fish and vegetables.
6. The French bistro closed down last Monday.
7. Steve is going to make the reservation.

10

Put the verbs in brackets into a suitable tense form. Explain the use of tenses.



I 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*like*) eating out and I never 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*miss*) a chance to eat something new or unusual. While I 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) on a vacation last week, I 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*decide*) to visit some restaurants, which I never 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*attend*) before, to try some of the local cuisine. However, I 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not / have*) a clue about the types of restaurants available, as I 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*read*) nothing about them before my journey. So, I 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*check*) an online restaurant guide to give me some ideas and tips. Mainly, I 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) interested in seafood restaurants, so I 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*search*) for restaurants within a reasonable walking distance from my hotel, and I 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) seven of them. Next, I 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*review*) the online menus of the places to check the dishes they 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*prepare*) and the average cost of a meal. However, price 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/be*) my first consideration; I 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*enjoy*) restaurants that 16. \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a wide selection from which to choose. Next, a restaurant's decor always 17. \_\_\_\_\_ (*add*) to the dining experience (background music, decorations and wall hangings, seats and tables, etc.). I mean if I 18. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to a Mexican restaurant, I 19. \_\_\_\_\_ (*expect*) to see that the restaurant 20. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) decorated in the Mexican flavor. Finally, I always 21. \_\_\_\_\_ (*consult*) restaurant reviews to find out what other people 22. \_\_\_\_\_ (*write*) about the restaurant and their experiences. The visitors usually 23. \_\_\_\_\_ (*mention*) what the quality of the food 24. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) and if the server 25. \_\_\_\_\_ (*provide*) fast and friendly service. So, I'm strongly convinced that if you 26. \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) some research before you 27. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*), dining 28. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a more pleasurable and predictable experience.

11

You will hear five different people talking about a restaurant they have all been to. a) For questions 1-5, choose from the list (a-f) what they say about the restaurant. Use the letters only once. There is one extra letter, which you do not need to use.

Speaker 1 \_\_\_\_\_ Speaker 2 \_\_\_\_\_ Speaker 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
 Speaker 4 \_\_\_\_\_ Speaker 5 \_\_\_\_\_

- a) *The prices were high.*
- b) *There wasn't much variety of food.*
- c) *The service was poor.*
- d) *The food wasn't cooked properly.*
- e) *The portions were too small.*
- f) *The atmosphere was wrong.*



**b) Answer the following questions.**

- 1. What was the name of the restaurant?
- 2. Why did they go there?
- 3. Did the speakers like the place?
- 4. What did the speakers say about the food, its variety and quality?
- 5. How did they find the service and the waiters?
- 6. How much did it cost them to eat out there? Did they tip?

12

**Complete the conversation. Put in *who, which or that*. There is always more than one possible answer.**

*Emma: Shall we have something to eat?*

*Matthew: Yes, but not here. I don't like cafes 1. \_\_\_\_\_ don't have chairs. I'm not one of those people 2. \_\_\_\_\_ can eat standing up.*

*Emma: There's another restaurant over there.*

*Matthew: It looks expensive, one of those places 3. \_\_\_\_\_ charge very high prices. The only customers 4. \_\_\_\_\_ can afford to eat there are business executives 5. \_\_\_\_\_ get their expenses paid. Anyway, I can't see a menu. I'm not going into a restaurant 6. \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't display a menu.*

*Emma: We just passed a cafe 7. \_\_\_\_\_ does snacks.*

*Matthew: Oh, I didn't like the look of that.*

*Emma: You're one of those people 8. \_\_\_\_\_ are never satisfied, aren't you?*

13

**Translate into English.**



1. Ласкаво просимо до нашого ресторану! Це стильний та ексклюзивний ресторан з багатим, різноманітним меню. Ви можете насолодитися класичною європейською та екзотичною східною кухнями. Ми пропонуємо великий вибір закусок, гарячих страв, вишуканих десертів. Тільки в нашій винній карті Ви знайдете вина усіх європейських країн та навіть латиноамериканських. На Вас очікує приємна жива музика, сучасний інтер'єр, м'яке освітлення, першокласне обслуговування. Чекаємо на Вас з ранку до останнього клієнта.



**2.** Традиційні англійські паби пропонують гостям багато сортів пива. Там Ви також можете поспілкуватися з друзями, послухати музику або переглянути футбольний матч. Сьогодні у більшості пабів можна також поїсти: замовити салати і навіть гарячі страви.



**3.** Останнім часом у нашому місті з'явилося багато нових ресторанів, які пропонують кухні різних країн. Особливо мені подобається японська кухня, в якій багато овочів та морепродуктів. Я часто запрошую моїх друзів до свого улюбленого кафе в центрі міста. Ми завжди замовляємо легкі овочеві закуски та суші.

**4.** У будь-якому сучасному великому місті є ціла мережа ресторанів "фаст фуд". З одного боку, відвідувачі можуть швидко та недорого поїсти, але з іншого боку, всі ці ресторани подають нездорову їжу. Це ресторани самообслуговування; там немає офіціантів. Відвідувач отримує їжу на касі або вибирає сам та сплачує на касі. В таких ресторанах ви можете взяти їжу з собою.

**5.** Якщо у вас немає часу пообідати вдома, ви можете це зробити у ресторані замовивши комплексний обід. Як правило, такі обіди дешеві та можуть задовольнити будь-які смаки. Але якщо ви гурме і хочете скуштувати щось особливе, замовляйте порційні страви.

**6.** Біля нашого університету є декілька ресторанів швидкого харчування, бутербродна та чайна. Але ми надаємо перевагу піцерії, до якої йти 15 хвилин, тому що там краще обслуговування, ціни значно нижчі, а піца, яка подається, завжди смачна та свіжа.



**7.** Якщо я раптом зголоднію в університеті, я завжди можу заскочити до кафетерію на першому поверсі та перехопити щось, наприклад, з'їсти якусь булочку, бутерброд та випити чаю або кави. Але якщо я хочу добре поїсти, з гарячою стравною або супом, я інколи відвідую нашу університетську їдальню. Там немає обслуговування за столиком, студенти

самі вибирають різноманітні заздалегідь приготовлені страви, ставлять їх на таці та розраховуються на касі. Ціни у нашій їдальні фіксовані та прийнятні, тому можна завжди взяти комплексний обід, який буде вам по кишені. На жаль, ми не можемо замовляти порційні страви з меню, оскільки наша університетська їдальня на це не розрахована. Вона націлена на швидке обслуговування та корисні, приготовлені по-домашньому страви.

**8.** Вчора ми шукали ресторан, де подають страви традиційної української кухні, бо наші друзі хотіли покуштувати борщ та тушковане м'ясо з білими грибами у горщиках. Але ціни у ресторанах були непомірні, і ми вирішили самі приготувати обід вдома.

14

🎧 Listen to three conversations and fill in the chart.

	<i>Speaker 1</i>	<i>Speaker 2</i>	<i>Speaker 3</i>
1. What kind of restaurant is the speaker in?			
2. What does the speaker order?			
3. How much does it cost?			

15

Complete the sentences with the words from the list below.

appetizer, atmosphere, beverage, bill, chef, dessert, fork, main course, meal, menu, napkin, order, reservation, waiter, to stay



1. Excuse me. I have a knife and a spoon, but I don't have a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I really like the \_\_\_\_\_ of that restaurant. The soft music and lights make me feel relaxed.
3. Now that we've finished the main course, let's order \_\_\_\_\_. Maybe ice cream?
4. Coffee is my favourite \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Breakfast is my favourite \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Are you ready to \_\_\_\_\_ your food?
7. Should I eat our food at the restaurant or take it home? Should I have it \_\_\_\_\_ or to go?
8. If you're really hungry, you can order a small \_\_\_\_\_ before you eat your meal.
9. The \_\_\_\_\_ at this restaurant is great. He knows how to cook many different kinds of food.
10. Let's take a look at the \_\_\_\_\_ and then we can decide what food to order.
11. How much is the total cost of our meal? Let's ask for the \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Could I have another \_\_\_\_\_, please? I need to wipe my hands.
13. It's my friend's birthday next week. Could I please make a \_\_\_\_\_ for next Monday?
14. First an appetizer, then the \_\_\_\_\_, and then we can have dessert!
15. Here comes a \_\_\_\_\_ to take our order.

16

Choose the most suitable word or phrase in each sentence.



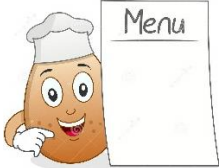
1. Waiter, could you bring me my **account** / **bill** / **addition** please?
2. It's a very popular restaurant – we should **apply for** / **book** / **keep** a table.
3. If you're hungry, why don't you ask for a large **dish** / **plate** / **portion**?
4. Please **help** / **serve** / **wait** yourself to salads from the salad bar.
5. Waiter, can I see the **catalogue** / **directory** / **menu**, please?
6. This fish is not what I **called** / **commanded** / **ordered**.
7. This **dish** / **plate** / **serving** is a speciality of our restaurant.
8. Have you tried the **crude** / **raw** / **undercooked** fish at the new Japanese restaurant?
9. Paul never eats meat, he's a **vegetable** / **vegetarian** / **vegetation**.
10. Have you decided what to have for your main **course** / **food** / **helping**?
11. Can you give me the **prescription** / **instructions** / **recipe** of this pie? It's delicious.
12. Waiter, I can't eat this meat.



It's **under-done / developed / nourished**. **13.** Is the hamburger for you to eat here or to **go out / take away / carry on**? **14.** That was fantastic! Could I have a second **course / service / helping**, please?

**17** a) Arrange these foods on the menu below.

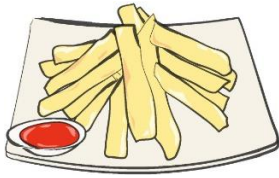
- |                          |   |                               |
|--------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| <i>beefsteak</i>         | <i>spaghetti with cockle sauce</i>        | <i>vegetarian chilli</i>      |
| <i>fresh fruit salad</i> | <i>banana cream pie</i>                   | <i>prawn cocktail</i>         |
| <i>mixed salad</i>       | <i>freshly-squeezed orange juice</i>      | <i>chicken casserole</i>      |
| <i>green mint tea</i>    | <i>avocado and shrimp salad</i>           | <i>stuffed duck</i>           |
| <i>Irish stew</i>        | <i>oven-roasted asparagus</i>             | <i>mineral water</i>          |
| <i>smoked salmon</i>     | <i>mashed potato</i>                      | <i>soup of the day</i>        |
| <i>broccoli</i>          | <i>roasted garlic cauliflower</i>         | <i>strawberry ice cream</i>   |
| <i>French fries</i>      | <i>baked tomato slices</i>                | <i>pâté and toast</i>         |
| <i>caviar</i>            | <i>Cuban black beans</i>                  | <i>apple pie with custard</i> |
| <i>cabbage rolls</i>     | <i>steamed vegetables</i>                 | <i>cherry cheesecake</i>      |
| <i>stewed fruit</i>      | <i>iced coffee with ice-cream topping</i> | <i>apple juice</i>            |
| <i>chopped steak</i>     | <i>stuffed eggs</i>                       | <i>roast beef</i>             |
| <i>jellied tongue</i>    | <i>chocolate fudge cake</i>               | <i>fried rice</i>             |
| <i>shepherd's pie</i>    | <i>mushrooms with soy sauce glaze</i>     | <i>iced tea</i>               |
| <i>white wine</i>        | <i>grilled trout</i>                      | <i>sorbet</i>                 |

	<b>Starters:</b>	<b>Main Dishes:</b>
	<b>Side Dishes:</b>	<b>Desserts:</b>

**b) Make up a perfect menu for you party. You may choose dished according to your liking.**

**18** Translate into English.

- Шеф-кухар цього ресторану гарно готує закуски. Цей ресторан користується такою популярністю, що там потрібно замовляти столик заздалегідь.
- Я дуже хочу пити та їсти, але я не хочу псувати апетит, перекусивши в кафе. Ти не проти пообідати в ресторані? Візьмемо комплексний обід чи замовимо за меню? Що в них на комплексний обід?



3. У ресторані “Київ” добре готують. Але їх фірмова страва була трохи недопеченою. Хоча приготування усіх їхніх страв займає багато часу, ціни дуже помірні й можна замовити другу порцію. До картоплі фрі пропонується великий вибір приправ.

4. У столовій я замовила обід з трьох страв: на закуску я взяла салат олів'є, на основну страву – біфштекс із картопляним пюре, а на десерт – пиріг з чорною смородиною.

5. Важко знайти ресторан, який пропонує широкий вибір свіжих фруктових салатів.

6. Чи є в меню те, що вам подобається? Як щодо рибної страви? Уха смачна? Що бажаєте на третє?

7. Якщо ви бажаєте отримати гарний стіл з чудовим виглядом із вікна, то вам потрібно замовити його наперед.

8. Як тобі біфштекс? По-моєму, він недосмажений. Що сьогодні на друге? Які вина ви порекомендуєте до м'яса?

9. Ні я, ні мій батько не могли їсти те м'ясо. Воно було недосмажене і занадто солоне. І, взагалі, ми вирішили не їсти м'яса ні в якому вигляді в тому новому ресторані.



10. У цьому ресторані надзвичайно смачно готують та обслуговування теж дуже добре. Я хотів би тут пообідати. На закуску візьму салат з креветками, на перше я б замовив бульйон з грінками, а на друге – тушковану курку з пюре, а також овочевий салат до головної страви. На десерт я хотів би полуницю з вершками та каву з молоком.

11. – Скажіть мені, будь ласка, де я можу швидко поїсти. Я дуже зголоднів. – Тут недалеко є непоганий кафетерій. – А що ви мені порадите там взяти? – Там дуже смачно готують тушковане м'ясо з грибами та спагеті. – А чи дорого там пообідати? – Ні, ціни цілком прийнятні. Я саме збирався туди зайти. Ходімо разом, я вас пригощу.

19

✪ **Answer the questions below and discuss the ways you behave at the restaurant with your groupmates.**

- 1. Is it compulsory to book early to have delicious food at a restaurant?
- 2. Do you prefer fresh ingredients prepared by a chef as you order or do you prefer pre-cooked food?
- 3. What is your favourite appetizer? Main course? Dessert?
- 4. Do you ever drink hard beverages when you eat out? If so, what do you drink?
- 5. Would you send a dish back if it did not taste good or if you received the wrong food?

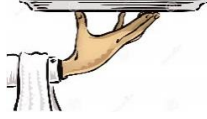


- 6. Do you ever leave a tip at a restaurant? How much?
- 7. Did you enjoy eating out in other countries you have visited? Which country had the best food? Which foods did you enjoy the most? Do you think the cost was high or low?
- 8. What's the worst experience you have ever had at a restaurant?
- 9. What's the most disgusting food you have ever eaten in a restaurant?
- 10. Do you know how to order food in English? Have you ever done so? If so, was it easy to do so?

**20** ✎ **Speak about the way you eat out according to your plan. Do not forget to dwell on your favourite places of going out and the dishes served there, atmosphere and prices.**

**21** **Do you know what to say when you are eating out? Below there are some examples of useful language used in this situation. Use these expressions in the examples of your own.**

WAITER / WAITRESS	CUSTOMER
<p><b>Taking notes about the order:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Would you like to order?</li> <li>➤ Can I help you?</li> <li>➤ Are you ready to order?</li> <li>➤ Are you going to try any of our...?</li> <li>➤ May I take your order?</li> <li>➤ Is there anything to your liking on the menu?</li> <li>➤ Will you dine table d'hôte or à la carte?</li> </ul> <p><b>Offering Food:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Would you like a/an/some...?</li> <li>➤ What about a/an/some...?</li> <li>➤ Can I get you a/an/some...?</li> <li>➤ Won't you go for a/an/some...?</li> <li>➤ I suggest... / I recommend...</li> <li>➤ Would you care for...?</li> <li>➤ There's nothing like ...</li> </ul> <p><b>Asking about preferences:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Do you prefer...?</li> <li>➤ How would you like it?</li> <li>➤ Would you like...with that?</li> </ul>	<p><b>Ordering a meal:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Excuse me, waiter, we'd like to order.</li> <li>➤ We are ready to order now.</li> <li>➤ I'd like a/an/some...and...</li> <li>➤ I want a/an/some...and...</li> <li>➤ I'll go for a/an/some...</li> <li>➤ Please bring me a/an/some...</li> <li>➤ Could you please bring me ...?</li> <li>➤ What is the speciality today?</li> <li>➤ What's the soup of the day?</li> <li>➤ What exactly is that?</li> <li>➤ To start... / as a starter...</li> <li>➤ To follow... / as a main course...</li> <li>➤ For dessert...</li> </ul> <p><b>To accept / refuse the offer:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Yes, please.</li> <li>➤ No, thanks. I'd like/prefer a/an/some...</li> <li>➤ That's not what I ordered.</li> <li>➤ Can you change it?</li> </ul>

<p><b>Asking about drinks:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ What would you like to drink?</li> <li>➤ Anything to drink?</li> <li>➤ Shall I get you anything to drink?</li> <li>➤ What do you say to ...?</li> </ul> 	<p><b>Deciding about drinks:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ I'd like...</li> <li>➤ Could you bring me..., please?</li> <li>➤ I don't feel like drinking tea.</li> </ul> <p><b>Asking about the bill:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Could I have the bill, please?</li> <li>➤ Could you bring me the bill, please?</li> </ul>
---	---

**22** Read the following dialogues, translate it into Ukrainian and act them out.

**1.**

- Here is a restaurant. I hope **they serve good meals here**.
- Won't it be too expensive?
- No, **the prices** here are **quite reasonable**. It won't be much more expensive than cafeteria. There'll be fewer people and we'll **have a better service**. Besides, I see it has a license.
- A license? What does it mean?
- It means **they serve** wine, cognac and so on but only at certain hours. And they won't serve you unless you're over 18.
- Well, we are much older than that.

**2.**

*Waiter: A table for two?*

- Yes, please. By the window. And the menu, please.
- **Is there anything to your liking on the menu\*?**
- Oh, yes, many things. **Let's have some** clear soup, perhaps.
- I don't think I'll have any soup. **I'd rather have** some vegetable salad **to start with**.
- **Let's have some** sliced cucumbers and tomatoes with sour cream, **as a starter**.
- I don't mind. Then I'll have roast beef with new potatoes and peas, jam tart and iced coffee.
- The same for me. **There's nothing like\*** a juicy piece of roast beef, just slightly underdone.

*Waiter: Shall I get you anything to drink?*

- **What do you say to\*** a bottle of beer?
- No beer, thanks. I prefer a glass of mineral water or just a cup of tea.
- All right. A glass of mineral water and an apple juice for me, then. And iced coffee for two.

3.

- It's 8 p.m. High time for supper.
- Well, **I could do with a bite\***. I don't eat much in the evening. Some light meal, perhaps.
- What do you usually have for supper?
- A cup of tea and a sandwich or a glass of milk and a biscuit?
- I prefer something more substantial, say, a chop or steak and chips or cold meat with potatoes, or sausages, or an omelette with tea or coffee to follow.
- Then you should take a good stroll after supper. As an English saying goes, "After dinner sleep a while, after supper walk a mile".

4.

- What would you like for dinner? **Shall we dine table d'hôte or á la carte\***?
- What have they got for table d'hôte?
- Clear soup with chicken, steamed fish with mashed potatoes and coffee.
- I don't care for fish. Let's see what they've got for á la carte.
- There's a great variety of dishes: boiled meat, beefsteak, rumpsteak, cutlets. There's poultry, too: chicken and goose. Which would you like?
- And what do they have for afters?
- Ice-cream, pastry, fresh fruit, jelly and tea.
- Then I'll have beefsteak with fried potatoes and an ice-cream.
- As **I'm as hungry as a hunter**, I could do with a square meal. I'll have a clear soup with a meat pie, a rumpsteak with stewed cabbage, a couple of cakes and tea with a slice of lemon.
- I'm thirsty, but **I don't feel like drinking tea\***.
- Care for some lemonade?
- Yes, please.

23

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences or questions. Then use them to complete the conversation between the waiter and two customers.**

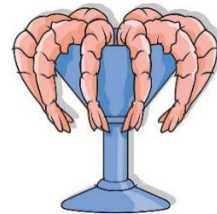
- a) coffee / you / like / some / Would
- b) order / to / wine / you / like / some / Would
- c) water / Fizzy / still / mineral / or
- d) table / two / a / We'd / for / like
- e) bill / have / Can / the / we
- f) menu / have / we / the / Could
- g) included / service / the / Is
- h) First / pâté / I'd / the / like
- i) like / How / you / steak / would / the
- j) lamb / like / course / the / I'd / chops / the / for / main
- k) like / vegetables / you / What / would



Waiter: *Good evening, sir. Good evening, madam.*  
 John: Good evening. **1.** \_\_\_\_\_, please.  
 Waiter: *Certainly. Is this table all right?*  
 John: That's fine. **2.** \_\_\_\_\_, please?  
 Waiter: *Certainly. The soup of the day is French onion soup.*

*a few minutes later*

Waiter: *Are you ready to order?*  
 John: Yes. **3.** \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Mary: And for me the prawn cocktail.  
 Waiter: *Yes, madam.*  
 John: And then **4.** \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Mary: And I'd like a steak.  
 Waiter: **5.** \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Mary: Medium, please.  
 Waiter: *That's fine. 6.* \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Mary: Potatoes and cauliflower, please.  
 Waiter: **7.** \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Mary: Yes. Can I see the wine list? A bottle of French red.  
 John: And some mineral water, please.  
 Waiter: **8.** \_\_\_\_\_.  
 John: Still, please.



*at the end of the meal*

John: That was delicious!  
 Waiter: *Thank you very much. 9.* \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Mary: Yes. Black, please.  
 John: And **10.** \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Waiter: *Of course.*  
 John: **11.** \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Waiter: *No, it isn't, sir.*  
 John: Can I pay by credit card?  
 Waiter: *Yes, that's fine.*

24

**🔊 Read the following dialogue between a customer and a waiter, and try to fill in the missing words. Then, listen to the recording and see if your answers were correct. Roleplay the dialogue.**

*At a Restaurant*

**W:** *Good evening, sir. Are you ready to 1.* \_\_\_\_\_?  
**C:** Yes, thank you.  
**W:** *What would you like for 2.* \_\_\_\_\_, sir?  
**C:** Mmm, let me see ... Yes, I'll have the crab soup for starters.



- W:** *The crab soup is an excellent 3. \_\_\_\_\_, sir! And what about the 4. \_\_\_\_\_?*
- C:** *I think 5. \_\_\_\_\_ the steak with chips... No, make that the steak with steamed vegetables.*
- W:** *Very well. How would you like your steak, sir? 6. \_\_\_\_\_, medium rare or well done?*
- C:** *Medium rare, please.*
- W:** *Would you like anything to drink?*
- C:** *Yes, I'll have a glass of 7. \_\_\_\_\_ water, please.*
- W:** *Would you care for 8. \_\_\_\_\_ afterwards, sir?*
- C:** *What have you got?*
- W:** *Apple pie and ice-cream, sir.*
- C:** *No, I think I'll 9. \_\_\_\_\_, then.*
- W:** *Thank you very much, sir.*

25

👂👄 Listen to the dialogue in ex. 24 again, then, in pairs, act out a similar dialogue using the menu below.

### MENU

#### Starters

- ✚ Chef's salad € 2.50
- ✚ Ham and cheese crepes € 2.45
- ✚ French onion soup € 2.00

#### Desserts

- ✚ Strawberries and cream € 2.50
- ✚ Apple pie and custard € 2.00

#### Main Course

- ✚ Fish and chips € 3.60
- ✚ Vegetable curry € 3.00
- ✚ Spaghetti Bolognese € 3.00
- ✚ Steak with roast potatoes € 4.50

#### Cold Beverages

- ✚ Beer € 2.00
- ✚ Wine € 1.50
- ✚ Soda water € 0.50
- ✚ Mineral water € 1.00

26

👂👄 Listen to the dialogue and complete the sentences.

#### Ordering a Meal

- Jean:** *Where shall we sit? Look! There are some free 1. \_\_\_\_\_.*
- Jill:** *The seats 2. \_\_\_\_\_ are better. 3. \_\_\_\_\_.*
- Jean:** *Okay. What would you like to eat?*
- Jill:** *I'm 4. \_\_\_\_\_. I think I'll have 5. \_\_\_\_\_ and 6. \_\_\_\_\_ with 7. \_\_\_\_\_. Why don't you have 8. \_\_\_\_\_ too?*
- Jean:** *I don't eat meat. It makes me ill. I'll have a 9. \_\_\_\_\_.*
- Jill:** *And what about drinks? I think I'll have 10. \_\_\_\_\_.*
- Jean:** *No that's really expensive! It's three dollars sixty cents! I'll have 11. \_\_\_\_\_; it's 12. \_\_\_\_\_.*

Waiter: Good evening.

**Jill:** Good evening. We'll have **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ and **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ with **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ and one **16.** \_\_\_\_\_, please.

Waiter: No problem! What would you like to drink?

**Jean:** A **17.** \_\_\_\_\_ and a **18.** \_\_\_\_\_, please. Oh – and please bring me **19.** \_\_\_\_\_ for the **20.** \_\_\_\_\_.

Waiter: Okay. Let me repeat your order. **21.** \_\_\_\_\_ and **22.** \_\_\_\_\_ with **23.** \_\_\_\_\_, one **24.** \_\_\_\_\_, a **25.** \_\_\_\_\_ and a **26.** \_\_\_\_\_ with **27.** \_\_\_\_\_.

### Ways to ASK for something POLITELY:

- <b>May</b> + ask?	- <b>May</b> I ask you to bring me a glass of water?
- <b>Could</b> + trouble?	- <b>Could</b> I trouble you to bring me a glass of water?
- <b>Could</b> + please?	- <b>Could</b> you please bring me a glass of water?
- <b>Would</b> + kind?	- <b>Would</b> you be so kind to bring me a glass of water?
- <b>Will</b> + favour + and?	- <b>Will</b> you do me a favour and bring a glass of water?
- <b>Would</b> + mind +ing?	- <b>Would</b> you mind bringing me a glass of water?

27

**Make up questions to get what you need according to the instructions.**

1. Ask a waiter for a cup of coffee.
2. Ask to give you the document.
3. Ask about the relevant invoice.
4. Ask to add cinnamon to your cappuccino.
5. Ask to add honey to your coffee.
6. Ask to bring a chair for your partner.
7. Ask to brew a cup of café latte for your friend.
8. Ask to close the window.
9. Ask to give you the laptop.
10. Ask to show you the schedule.
11. Ask to switch on the light.
12. Ask to make a medium cup of herbal tea.

### Ways to SUGGEST something POLITELY:

1. <b>How about</b> (+ing)	<b>How about</b> (having) <u>some</u> cake? (together)
2. <b>What about</b> (+ing)	<b>What about</b> (having) <u>some</u> cake? (together)
3. <b>What would</b> + <b>say to</b> + <u>sth.</u>	<b>What would you say to</b> <u>some</u> cake?
4. <b>Would you like</b> + <u>smth.</u>	<b>Would you like</b> <u>some</u> cake?
5. <b>Will you</b> + infinitive + <u>sth.</u>	<b>Will you have</b> <u>some</u> cake?
6. <b>May I suggest</b> + <u>sth.</u>	<b>May I suggest you</b> <u>some</u> cake?
7. <b>Would</b> + <b>mind</b> +ing + <u>sth.</u>	<b>Would you mind</b> having <u>some</u> cake?
8. <b>Don't</b> + <b>mind</b> +ing + <u>sth.</u>	<b>Don't you mind</b> having <u>some</u> cake?

**28****Make up questions to suggest something you need according to the instructions.**

1. Suggest your guest some coffee.
2. Suggest your colleague some champagne.
3. Suggest your colleague white or black coffee.
4. Suggest a visitor cinnamon to his cappuccino.
5. Suggest your partner to add honey to his coffee.
6. Suggest your child some cocoa.
7. Suggest your friend a cup of green or black tea.
8. Suggest your colleague coffee or tea.
9. Suggest your friend to add cream or milk to his coffee.
10. Suggest your child some ice cream.

**29****Make up questions to suggest or ask about something you need according to the instructions.**

1. Запропонуйте зручне крісло.
2. Попросіть ручку.
3. Запропонуйте сісти ближче.
4. Попросіть підписати документ.
5. Запропонуйте підвезти до офісу.
6. Попросіть дати вам пораду щодо вашого питання.
7. Запропонуйте зустрітися вранці.
8. Попросіть не говорити по телефону під час зустрічі.
9. Запропонуйте перенести зустріч на інший день.
10. Попросіть сісти поруч.
11. Запропонуйте обговорити питання детально.
12. Попросіть відповісти на ваше запитання.
13. Запропонуйте почати урок раніше.
14. Попросіть приходити вчасно.
15. Запропонуйте підготувати план зустрічі.
16. Попросіть номер телефону.
17. Запропонуйте завершити обговорення.
18. Попросіть аркуш паперу.
19. Запропонуйте почати зустріч.
20. Попросіть олівець.
21. Запропонуйте чашку кави.
22. Попросіть пояснити ситуацію детально.
23. Запропонуйте пообідати в ресторані внизу.
24. Попросіть перетелефонувати вам ввечері.

**Translate the following dialogues into English.**

**1.**

- Не хотіли б ви випити чашку кави?
- Спасибі, так.
- Як ви п'єте каву?
- З подвійними вершками і цукром.
- Будь ласка.
- Спасибі.
- А як щодо шматочка торта?
- Спасибі, ні. Я на дієті.



**2.**

- Що ви замовлятимете?
- Мені хотілося б узяти комплексний обід з ростбіфом.
- Суп або томатний сік?
- Суп.
- Що з овочів?
- Картоплю, що смажитья скибочками, і зелену квасолю.
- Будете що-небудь пити?
- Чорну каву.

\*\*\*

- Принесіть, будь ласка, рахунок.
- Так, звичайно. Ось, будь ласка.



**3.**

- Пробачте. Передайте, будь ласка, масло.
- Будь ласка. Передайте мені сіль, будь ласка.
- Будь ласка.
- Спасибі. Що ви збираєтеся взяти на десерт?
- Морозиво і шматок яблучного пирога.
- Я візьму те ж саме.



**4.**

- Доброго дня! Раді Вас бачити в нашому закладі. Готові зробити замовлення?
- Доброго дня! Можливо, Ви б мені щось могли порадити?
- В нашій кав'ярні дуже добре готують і лате, і капучіно, і какао. Чому ви надаєте перевагу?
- Я люблю і лате, і какао однаково.
- Тоді, можливо, спробуєте шокачіно?
- А підкажіть, будь ласка, з чого воно складається.

- Шокачіно в нашому закладі – це американо з молочком та какао.
- Дуже цікаво! Я спробую. І ще, будь ласка, “Тірамісу”.
- Добре!
- Офіціанте, чек, будь ласка.
- Зараз принесу. Вам все сподобалось?
- Так, тепер я – Ваш постійний відвідувач!



## 5.

- Що у вас є на десерт?
- Молочні коктейлі, морозиво і яблучний пиріг.
- Мені, будь ласка, молочний коктейль ... До речі, з якими він добавками?
- Ваніль, ананас, чорна смородина, банан і шоколад.
- Мені банановий, будь ласка, і шматочок яблучного пирога.
- Що-небудь ще?
- Ні, спасибі.

## 6.

- Дайте мені, будь ласка, шматочок холодного м'яса і шматочок сиру.
- Будь ласка.
- Спасибі.
- Я не бачу солі на столі.
- Ось вона. Будь ласка.
- Дякую.

## 7.

- Ви що-небудь вже вибрали, сер?
- Так. Я візьму форель.
- Чи не хочете ви рибного салату? Він дуже смачний.
- Спасибі. Я з'їм трохи.
- Що Ви будете потім?
- Я думаю, яблучний пиріг.
- Що-небудь ще?
- Апельсиновий сік. І принесіть, будь ласка, ще один стакан.

## 8.

- Добрий день! Ми замовляли столик на двох на сьогодні.
- Добрий день. Будь ласка, проходите. Вас влаштує оцей столик біля вікна?
- Так, дякуємо.
- *(Підходить офіціант)*
- Будь ласка, подивіться меню. Ви готові зробити замовлення?
- Так.

- З чого Ви б бажали почати?
- Я гадаю ми почнемо з холодних закусок. Ми візьмемо салат з креветками, м'ясне асорті, салат з картоплею та заливний язик.
- А що Ви замовите на гаряче? Наша фірмова страва на сьогодні – біфстроганов зі смаженою картоплею.
- Гаразд, я візьму саме це, а моя дружина надає перевагу рибним стравам. Що Ви можете запропонувати?
- Лосось на грилі.
- Добре, щодо напоїв, ми візьмемо по склянці червоного та білого вина.
- Що б Ви бажали на десерт?
- Нічого, лише дві кави. Чорну, будь ласка.

## 9.

**Офіціант:** *Добрий вечір, сер. Ласкаво просимо у наш ресторан. Що я можу зробити для вас? Ви забронювали стіл?*

**Клієнт:** Так. Я подзвонив вам вчора ввечері. Мене звать Бертон.

**Офіціант:** *Так, сер. Ви один. О, ні, вибачте, столик на двох.*

**Клієнт:** Моя дружина буде тут досить скоро.

**Офіціант:** *Хотіли б ви цей стіл?*

**Клієнт:** О, ні. Моя дружина любить сидіти біля вікна та дивитись на перехожих.

**Дружина клієнта:** Пітер! Мені дуже шкода, я спізнилась.

**Клієнт:** Краще пізно, ніж ніколи.

**Дружина клієнта:** Будь ласка, не бурчи! Я щойно відвідала свого перукаря. Крім того, жінки мають право спізнитися. Чоловіки – ніколи!

**Клієнт:** Так, ви праві. Чи подобається вам це місце?

**Дружина клієнта:** О, я страшенно рада!

**Офіціант:** *Ось меню. З чого ви б хотіли почати, мадам?*

**Дружина клієнта:** Хвилиночку. Страви в меню виглядають так апетитно ... Ну, я хотіла би почати з запечених у дині грибів.

**Офіціант:** *А ви, сер?*

**Клієнт:** Що стосується мене, я хотів би почати з чогось більш цікавого. Що ви можете сказати про ваші стейки?

**Офіціант:** *О, вони дійсно смачні сьогодні! Які овочі ви хочете зі стейками? Смажені помідори зі сметаною, цвітну капусту або квасолю?*

**Клієнт:** Отже, два стейки зі смаженими помідорами.

**Офіціант:** *Що ще?*

**Клієнт:** Хороша порція смаженої картоплі.

**Дружина клієнта:** Офіціант, те ж саме для мене, будь ласка.

**Клієнт:** А як щодо вашої дієти, любя?

**Дружина клієнта:** Давайте забудемо про це!



**Офіціант:** Щось випити?

**Клієнт:** Пляшку французького червоного вина, дві філіжанки міцної кави ...

**Дружина клієнта:** І апельсиновий сік, будь ласка!

**Клієнт:** Звичайно! Як я міг забути!

**Офіціант:** Будь ласка, зачекайте кілька секунд. Ось, будь ласка.

**Дружина клієнта:** Здається, пахне фантастично!

**Клієнт:** Відмінно!

**Офіціант:** Приємного апетиту! Насолоджуйтесь. Що бажаєте на десерт?

**Дружина клієнта:** Ванільне морозиво змішати зі шматочками шоколаду й ананасу, хороший шмат яблучного пирога для мене і ... абсолютно нічого для мого чоловіка, я вважаю.

**Клієнт:** Ти права, люба! Не могли б ви принести мені рахунок, офіціант?

**Офіціант:** Звичайно, сер.

31

☛ **Role-play the following situations and make up dialogues.**

1. Invite the friend to take coffee, ask him, what coffee he likes (black, white, with cream). Offer a piece of pie or cake.
2. Invite your foreign colleague to a restaurant and ask him what he would like to have for dinner. Order the meal. Speak about your hobbies over the meal. Then ask a waiter to bring you the bill.
3. It's time to have dinner. Invite the friend to join you.
4. Your friend and I are in the restaurant. Discuss what you are going to order.
5. You came into a restaurant to have dinner. Ask a waiter what he can offer you.
6. You ask your friend when he is going to the dining-room. You are very busy and cannot go with him. Ask him to buy you a sandwich and a glass of orange juice.

32

☛ **Fill in the prepositions where needed. Discuss the table manners you use and those you find awkward.**

### *English Table Manners*



Don't put your elbows 1. \_\_\_\_\_ the table. Sit facing the table and keep your feet 2. \_\_\_\_\_ you, don't stretch them all the way 3. \_\_\_\_\_ the table. Never stretch 4. \_\_\_\_\_ the table 5. \_\_\_\_\_ something you want, ask your neighbour to pass it. Take a slice 6. \_\_\_\_\_ bread 7. \_\_\_\_\_ the bread plate \_\_\_\_\_ hand. Don't harpoon your bread 8. \_\_\_\_\_ a fork.

Don't bite 9. \_\_\_\_\_ the whole slice; break it off piece 10. \_\_\_\_\_ piece. Vegetables, potatoes, macaroni are placed 11. \_\_\_\_\_ your fork 12. \_\_\_\_\_ the help

13. \_\_\_\_\_ your knife or spoon. Cut your meat 14. \_\_\_\_\_ small pieces, one piece 15. \_\_\_\_\_ a time. Chicken requires special handling. Just cut as much as you can, and when you can't use a knife and a fork any longer, use 16. \_\_\_\_\_ your fingers. Don't use a knife 17. \_\_\_\_\_ fish, cutlets or omelettes. Don't eat 18. \_\_\_\_\_ the knife. Don't lick your spoon. Try to make as little noise as possible when eating, or they'll say you're a noisy eater. Don't talk 19. \_\_\_\_\_ your mouth full. Never read 20. \_\_\_\_\_ eating (21. \_\_\_\_\_ least 22. \_\_\_\_\_ company). Never spoil your neighbour's appetite 23. \_\_\_\_\_ criticizing what he is eating. The customary way to refuse 24. \_\_\_\_\_ a dish 25. \_\_\_\_\_ saying: "No, thank you." Don't say, "I don't eat your stuff" and don't make faces to show you don't like it. If you really feel hungry, ask 26. \_\_\_\_\_ a second helping. And finally, don't forget to say "thank you" 27. \_\_\_\_\_ every act 28. \_\_\_\_\_ kindness. 29. \_\_\_\_\_ the way, English people do not wish each other "Good appetite". They say, "Enjoy your food".

33

Fill in the gaps with appropriate tense forms of the verbs in brackets.



A young couple 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a romantic dinner at an expensive restaurant. They 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) an old lady sitting alone, looking at them. They 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*smile*), but were a little surprised when the old lady 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*come over*) to their table. The old lady 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*tell*) the young woman that she 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) like her daughter who she said 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*die*) a year ago. She said it 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) her very happy if they said, "Goodbye, Mum" when she 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) the restaurant. How could they refuse? A few minutes later, the old lady 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*stand up*) to leave. The two diners 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*wave*), as she 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*ask*) them, and said goodbye as the old lady 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk out*). When the couple 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*receive*) their bill, however, they saw that it 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*include*) the cost of the old lady's meal. They 16. \_\_\_\_\_ (*call over*) the manager and asked him what 17. \_\_\_\_\_ (*happen*). "The bill 18. \_\_\_\_\_ (*include*) the charge for your mother's meal, he 19. \_\_\_\_\_ (*explain*). She said you 20. \_\_\_\_\_ (*pay*)".

## TOPICS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Table manners.
2. Eating out.

## MODULE TWO: SHOPPING

### SECTION I: GOING SHOPPING. SHOPS AND DEPARTMENTS. SHOPPING FOR FOOD.

#### GRAMMAR:

- Present Indefinite Passive (Revision)

### Buying and Selling

#### Vocabulary

Buying and Selling	Купівля та Продаж
to afford	дозволити собі купити
a bargain	вигідна покупка
• <i>a real ~</i>	• <i>дуже ~</i>
bargaining	торги
• <i>to be good at ~</i>	• <i>вміти торгуватися</i>
to bargain ( <i>about the price</i> )	торгуватися ( <i>за ціну</i> )
to be short <b>of</b> <i>sth.</i>	мати нестачу <i>чогось</i>
to browse	розглядати товари (у вітрині, на прилавку)
to buy / to purchase	купувати
• <i>~ for next to nothing</i>	• <i>~ дуже дешево, за безцінь</i>
• <i>~ for a song</i>	• <i>~ за копійки</i>
• <i>~ on the cheap</i>	• <i>~ дешево</i>
• <i>~ in bulk</i>	• <i>~ оптом (гуртом)</i>
• <i>~ in / at the sales / a sale</i>	• <i>~ на розпродажі</i>
• <i>~ at a good price</i>	• <i>~ за гарну ціну</i>
• <i>~ up (all the stock of sth.)</i>	• <i>скуповувати (усі запаси чогось)</i>
• <i>~ a real pig in a poke</i>	• <i>купити kota в мішку</i>
• <i>~ on impulse</i>	• <i>~ у запалі</i>
• <i>~ on credit</i>	• <i>~ в кредит</i>
a buyer / a purchaser	покупець
cost	ціна; вартість
• <i>the ~ of living</i>	• <i>прожитковий мінімум</i>
• <i>at any ~ / at all costs</i>	• <i>за всяку ціну</i>
to cost	коштувати, обходитися
• <i>~ a fortune / ~ a pretty penny / ~ an arm and a leg</i>	• <i>коштувати чимало</i>
a courier	кур'єр, посильний
a customer	покупець; клієнт
• <i>a regular ~</i>	• <i>постійний ~</i>

a demand <b>for</b> <i>sth.</i>	ПОПИТ на <i>щось</i>
• <i>to be in a great ~ with the public</i>	• <i>мати великий попит у людей</i>
• <i>to meet the ~</i>	• <i>задовольняти попит</i>
to deposit	відкласти щось за внесений задаток
a display	розкладка товарів
• <i>to be on ~</i>	• <i>бути виставленим на продаж</i>
goods / commodities	товар, товари
• <i>consumer ~</i>	• <i>споживчі ~</i>
• <i>manufactured ~</i>	• <i>~ промислового виробництва</i>
• <i>to expose ~ for sale</i>	• <i>виставляти ~ на продаж</i>
• <i>to have a wide / scanty choice / selection / range of ~</i>	• <i>~ мати багатий / бідний вибір товарів</i>
• <i>high / low quality ~</i>	• <i>~ високої / низької якості</i>
• <i>expensive / pricey ~</i>	• <i>дорогий ~</i>
• <i>inexpensive / priceless ~</i>	• <i>недорогий ~</i>
• <i>high-priced / low-priced ~</i>	• <i>~ за високу / низьку ціну</i>
• <i>superior ~</i>	• <i>~ вищої якості</i>
• <i>genuine ~</i>	• <i>оригінальний, непідроблений ~</i>
• <i>pirate / fake ~</i>	• <i>підроблений; фальсифікований ~</i>
• <i>faulty ~</i>	• <i>зіпсований, пошкоджений, дефектний~</i>
• <i>cheap ~</i>	• <i>дешевий ~</i>
• <i>poor ~</i>	• <i>~ низької якості</i>
• <i>valuable / valueless ~</i>	• <i>цінний ~ / ~, що не має цінності</i>
an item	виріб, товар (окреме найменування в асортименті)
a price	ціна
• <i>an exorbitant ~</i>	• <i>непомірна, надмірна ~</i>
• <i>a fair ~</i>	• <i>досить гарна, пристойна ~</i>
• <i>a full / half ~</i>	• <i>повна / половинна ~</i>
• <i>a high / low ~</i>	• <i>висока / низька ~</i>
• <i>a reasonable ~</i>	• <i>прийнятна, обґрунтована ~</i>
• <i>a sky high ~</i>	• <i>захмарна ~</i>
• <i>to cut / reduce the ~</i>	• <i>різати / знижувати ~</i>
• <i>to be reduced in ~</i>	• <i>бути зниженим у ~</i>
• <i>a rise / a drop in the ~</i>	• <i>підвищення / падіння ~</i>
• <i>to sell two items for the ~ of one</i>	• <i>продавати два вироби за ціною одного</i>
a purchase	покупка
to purchase	купувати
a reduction / a discount	знижка

• <i>a 10 % ~ on sth.</i>	• <i>10 % ~ на щось</i>
• <i>to make a ~ on sth.</i>	• <i>зробити ~ на щось</i>
• <i>~ in the price of sth.</i>	• <i>~ у ціні на щось</i>
retail	роздрібний продаж
a run for sth.	попит на щось
to run out of	закінчуватися, вичерпуватися
sale	продаж; збут
• <i>to be for ~</i>	• <i>продаватися, бути для продажу</i>
• <i>to be on ~</i>	• <i>бути наявним у продажі</i>
sales	розпродаж за зниженими цінами
• <i>to be on ~</i>	• <i>бути у розпродажу</i>
• <i>to hold ~</i>	• <i>проводити розпродаж</i>
to sell	торгувати, продавати
• <i>~ well</i>	• <i>швидко продаватися; мати попит</i>
• <i>~ off</i>	• <i>розпродавати із знижкою</i>
• <i>~ out</i>	• <i>розпродати</i>
a shelf life / an expiry date	термін придатності
a shop / a store	магазин
• <i>to call in at ~ / to drop in at ~</i>	• <i>заскочити, зайти в магазин</i>
to shop	ходити по магазинах, робити покупки
• <i>~ for sth.</i>	• <i>ходити по магазинах за чимось</i>
a shopper	покупець
• <i>a great / keen ~</i>	• <i>чудовий, завзятий ~</i>
• <i>a shopaholic / a compulsive ~</i>	• <i>шопоголік</i>
shopping	відвідування магазинів з метою покупки
• <i>online ~</i>	• <i>покупка товарів по мережі Інтернет</i>
• <i>window ~</i>	• <i>розглядання вітрин</i>
• <i>a ~ tour / a ~ trip</i>	• <i>похід за покупками</i>
• <i>to do the ~</i>	• <i>робити покупки</i>
• <i>to go ~</i>	• <i>ходити по магазинах</i>
• <i>to make a ~ list</i>	• <i>складати список покупок</i>
• <i>a ~ cart / a ~ trolley</i>	• <i>візок у магазині</i>
a special offer on sth.	спеціальна пропозиція / акція на щось
stock	запас; асортимент товарів
• <i>to be in ~</i>	• <i>мати в наявності, у продажу</i>
• <i>to be out of ~</i>	• <i>не бути в наявності, у продажу</i>
a wallet / a purse	гаманець
wholesale	оптова торгівля

Money. Means of Payment	Гроші. Способи Оплати
ATM (automated / automatic teller machine) / a cashpoint / a cash dispenser	банкомат
a card	картка (банківська)
• <i>a credit ~</i>	• <i>кредитна ~</i>
• <i>a debit ~</i>	• <i>дебетова ~ (заміняє чеки, гроші)</i>
• <i>a discount ~ / a loyalty ~</i>	• <i>дисконтна ~ на знижку</i>
• <i>a contactless ~</i>	• <i>безконтактна ~</i>
• <i>to insert a ~</i>	• <i>вставляти ~</i>
• <i>to lose a ~</i>	• <i>загубити ~</i>
cash	готівка; гроші
• <i>~ on delivery</i>	• <i>накладений платіж, оплата при доставці</i>
• <i>to be in ~</i>	• <i>бути при грошах</i>
• <i>to get some ~ out</i>	• <i>отримати, зняти гроші в банкоматі</i>
a cash desk	каса
a cash register	касовий апарат
a cash till	грошовий ящик, каса
a cashier	касир
change	1) розмін (грошей); 2) здача
• <i>small ~</i>	• <i>дрібні гроші</i>
to charge <b>for</b> <i>sth.</i>	призначати ціну, стягувати плату за щось
• <i>free of ~</i>	• <i>без сплати</i>
a chip and pin device / a payment terminal	термінал для оплати банківською карткою
a coin	монета
• <i>a small ~</i>	• <i>розмінна монета</i>
currency	валюта
• <i>British pound – GBP – £</i>	• <i>фунт стерлінгів</i>
• <i>US dollar – USD – \$</i>	• <i>долар США</i>
• <i>Ukrainian hryvnia – UAH – ₴</i>	• <i>українська гривня</i>
• <i>Euro – EUR – €</i>	• <i>євро</i>
• <i>~ exchange</i>	• <i>обмін валют</i>
to deduct	вираховувати (утримувати)
a deposit	завдаток, застава
an expense / expenses	витрата / витрати
to go through	пройти, бути схваленим (про платіж)
a miser / a money-grubber / a scrooge	скнара



money	гроші
•to borrow ~	•позичати (брати) гроші
•to lend ~	•позичати (давати) гроші
•to spend ~ <b>on</b> sth.	•витрачати гроші на щось
•to waste ~ <b>on</b> sth.	•марнувати, розтрачувати гроші на щось
•to make ~ / to earn ~	•заробляти гроші
•to be pressed <b>for</b> ~ / short <b>of</b> ~	•мати нестачу грошей
•to have some spare / cash ~	•мати зайві гроші
•to have ~ to burn	•мати багато грошей
•to spend ~ right and left	•витрачати гроші наліво й направо
•to save ~ <b>for</b> sth.	•заощаджувати, відкладати гроші на щось
to owe sb.	бути винним, заборгувати комусь
to pay <b>for</b> sth.	сплачувати, розплачуватися за щось
•~ cash / in cash	•~ готівкою
•~ by card	•~ карткою
•~ by cheque	•~ чеками
•~ outright	•~ відразу
payment <b>for</b>	сплата, платіж, плата за
a self-service payment machine	термінал самообслуговування
PIN	персональний код користувача; особистий номер клієнта
•to key <b>in</b> / to enter a ~ number	•вводити PIN-код
a receipt / a sales slip	товарний, касовий чек
a refund	повернення, відшкодування (грошей за повернену покупку)
a rip-off	здирництво; грабіж
a spendthrift / a squanderer	марнотрат, розтринькувач

1

Read the following text, translate it into Ukrainian and answer the questions below.

### *Shopping*

**Shopping** is a necessary part of life, which very few people can avoid. It is a daily routine for some people. Some people **shop for** pleasure while other people **go shopping** just to buy the necessary **items** in order to survive. A weekend is usually a good time to go shopping because people have free time from work. At this time shops are usually very busy because people try to get the best items **for the lowest price** before the item **runs out of stock**.



Some people go shopping more regularly than other people **to browse** products in shops even when they do not have much money. This is known as **window-shopping** and allows people to plan ahead and **save for** the things they want to buy in the future or wait for the items **to drop in price**. Some people **spend** much time looking for **bargains** while others do not think of the price and are happy **to spend** a lot. They believe that the more expensive the item is, the better the quality it has, but this is not always true. If people buy something that they feel was very **good value**, it is a **bargain**. If they feel that it is definitely **not worth** what they paid for it, then they call it **a rip-off**. It is sensible to buy items, which are **affordable**. Sometimes people may be offered **a discount** or **a reduction on** something they buy at a shop. This means that they **get**, say, **\$10 off** perhaps if they are students. A discount is often offered when people **buy in bulk**.

When people **buy** (or, more formally, **purchase**) something in a shop, they usually **pay for it outright**. But sometimes people **buy on credit** and use **a credit card** or **borrow money from** the bank so that they can buy the items they really want rather than wait for it.

Sometimes shopping can be stressful when choosing a gift to buy other people for a special occasion. It is common to buy **a gift voucher** so that a friend or loved one can go shopping themselves **at their own convenience**.



**Shopping online** is often popular with people who have a busy lifestyle. People are able to order their necessary and luxury items from the comfort of their own home, or even on the move. **Delivery** is usually **free** and items are often cheaper than in **shops on the high street**.

The only real problem is that the item description and quality may be different from what they hoped for. This could mean the **customer** may become disappointed with the item they receive and will need to return it **at their own cost**. If people want to return something, which they have bought, to a shop, they may **be given a refund**, so their money will be returned if they have **a receipt**.

People who go to shops to do their shopping often use **self-service payment machines**. This usually saves time, as the shopper does not need to join a long queue. However, it can be frustrating when the machine has a problem and the **sales assistant** is not always available to help.

- **1.** Why is the weekend a good time to go shopping? What time do you use to go shopping and why?
- **2.** What do people do when they go shopping just to have a look and not to buy?
- **3.** What do some people usually think about items of better quality?

- 4. What do people call a real bargain / a rip-off?
- 5. Do you haggle about prices? When, where and why?
- 6. If you buy in bulk, what do you usually get? When are discounts given to people?
- 7. When can shopping be stressful? Is shopping stressful for you too?
- 8. If you return something you bought in the shop recently, what do you ask for?
- 9. What are the problems with online shopping? What problems did you face?

2

**Read and translate the following text into Ukrainian and answer the questions below.**

### *How to Pay in a Shop*

Sometimes in a shop they ask us: “How do you want **to pay**?” We can answer: “**Cash or by credit card**”.



**Payment** methods have changed a lot in recent years. Only a few decades ago, people preferred to **pay in cash** and after that, we had **chequebooks**, so we didn't need to carry around so much money. Now, however, **paying by cheque** has nearly disappeared and most of us use **plastic**, **paying by debit** or **credit card**. For everything over ten pounds, shops want us to use **chip and pin devices**, where we **insert a card**, **key in a PIN number** and then **remove** it. Such an easy system! But now there is something even easier. For less expensive items, we can use **contactless payment**, where we flash our card over a small machine and it **deducts the money** directly **from** our **account**.

Of course, there are problems when using these convenient ways of paying. We have to remember several PIN numbers, we might lose our cards or they could be stolen and used by thieves. Sometimes the payments don't **go through** for some reason. We must be very careful when paying by card online because of Internet fraud. But at least these days, we don't have to carry such a lot of **small change** around in our pockets.

- 1. Do you prefer to use a credit card or carry cash? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each way?
- 2. What are the ways to pay for goods or services? How do you usually pay for your purchase in a shop?
- 3. How do you use a credit card in a shop?
- 4. Do you know how to withdraw some money from a credit card?
- 5. What problems can people face paying by card?
- 6. Is it better to pay cash or by credit card? What things do you pay cash for? What things do you pay by credit card?

**3**

**Give the English equivalents to the words and phrases given using your topical vocabulary and the ex. 2 and ex. 3. Be ready to use them in the sentences of your own.**



задовольняти попит, платити готівкою відразу, купувати оптом за гарну ціну, знімати гроші, касовий апарат, торгуватися, вставляти картку в банкомат, позичати (давати) гроші, скнара, здирництво, дозволити собі купити, купувати дефектний товар у запалі, відкладати гроші, купувати у кредит, дуже вигідна покупка, бути винним, вводити PIN-код,

марнотрат, витрати, касовий чек, надавати знижки постійним покупцям, придбати щось за найнижчою ціною, вміти торгуватися, купувати за безцінь, купувати на розпрóдажі, коштувати чимало, постійній покупець, обмін валют, мати великий попит у людей, відкладати товар за завдаток, бути виставленим на продаж, термінал самообслуговування, купувати необхідний товар, купувати товари промислового виробництва за копійки, фальсифікований товар, виставляти товари на продаж, падіння ціни, розплачуватися карткою, мати нестачу грошей, позичати (брати) гроші, термінал для оплати банківською карткою, розглядати товари у вітрині, касир, візок у магазині, гаманець, заскочити в магазин, купити kota в мішку, захмарна ціна, асортимент товарів, попит на споживчі товари, загубити дисконтну картку на знижку, прожитковий мінімум, шопоголік, недорогий товар низької якості, зробити знижку на оригінальний товар високої якості, покупка товарів по мережі Інтернет.

**4**

**Put each verb into the Present Indefinite (Passive Voice) tense form. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. Shopping \_\_\_\_\_ (*often/do*) on Saturday in our family. 2. Loyal customers \_\_\_\_\_ (*offer*) discounts. 3. When everything \_\_\_\_\_ (*choose*), I go to the cash-desk. 4. Clients \_\_\_\_\_ (*always/help*) in shops. 5. The goods I need to buy \_\_\_\_\_ (*always/indicate*) in my shopping list. 6. A gift voucher \_\_\_\_\_ (*often/buy*) for close friends who then choose something to their liking. 7. If I pay by card, the PIN number \_\_\_\_\_ (*require*). 8. The necessary items \_\_\_\_\_ (*deliver*) to your doorstep. 9. Cheap items \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) at a local shop, as a rule. 10. A discount \_\_\_\_\_ (*give*), when you buy in bulk. 11. Plastic cards \_\_\_\_\_ (*use*) in every shop. 12. When contactless payment \_\_\_\_\_ (*use*), a card \_\_\_\_\_ (*flash*) over a small machine and the money \_\_\_\_\_ (*deduct*) directly from the account. 13. Shopping online \_\_\_\_\_ (*prefer*) when people are very busy. 14. Very often our bankcards \_\_\_\_\_ (*steal*) by thieves or Internet fraudsters. 15. Your time \_\_\_\_\_ (*save*) when you buy online. 16. Money \_\_\_\_\_ (*usually/give*) to the cashier, when people pay in cash. 17. Customers \_\_\_\_\_ (*give*) a refund if they have a receipt. 18. If a card \_\_\_\_\_ (*lose*), you should call the police.

5

Transcribe the words from the left column. Match the words and phrases with their definitions.

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>a wallet</i>               | a) a small piece of metal which is used as money  |
| 2. <i>a receipt</i>              | b) money in the form of banknotes and coins   |
| 3. <i>a refund</i>               | c) to use too much money buying unimportant or unnecessary items  |
| 4. <i>a PIN number</i>           | d) something that is value-for-money, usually because it was sold at a lower price                            |
| 5. <i>a coin</i>                 | e) a place in a large shop where you pay for the things you want to buy                                       |
| 6. <i>free of charge</i>         | f) to spend time looking at the goods in the windows of shops without intending to buy anything               |
| 7. <i>a bill</i>                 | g) a sum of money which is returned to you because you have returned goods to a shop                          |
| 8. <i>affordable</i>             | h) a secret number used with a bank card to withdraw money from a cash machine or an ATM                      |
| 9. <i>a purchase</i>             | i) the process of bringing goods, letters or parcels to someone's house or to any place where they want them  |
| 10. <i>to do window shopping</i> | j) a small flat folded case, usually made of leather or plastic, in which you keep banknotes and credit cards |
| 11. <i>a bargain</i>             | k) a written statement of money that you owe for goods or services  |
| 12. <i>a delivery</i>            | l) having a cost that is not too high and most people have enough money to buy it                             |
| 13. <i>cash</i>                  | m) something that you buy   |
| 14. <i>to waste</i>              | n) a piece of paper you get in a shop when you buy sth.   |
| 15. <i>a cash desk</i>           | o) without any payment due  |
| 16. <i>a shopper</i>             | p) the case when you were charged too much money for something you bought or and it was of very poor quality  |
| 17. <i>to browse</i>             | q) someone who buys goods or services, especially from a shop   |
| 18. <i>a shop assistant</i>      | r) a person who is shopping   |
| 19. <i>a spendthrift</i>         | s) the money used in a particular country   |
| 20. <i>expense</i>               | t) to look at goods for sale in a leisurely and casual way  |
| 21. <i>a miser</i>               | u) a plastic card that you use to buy goods on credit   |
| 22. <i>to save</i>               | v) a person who spends too much money in an extravagant, irresponsible way                                    |
| 23. <i>a rip-off</i>             | w) the money that something costs you or that you need to spend in order to do something                      |
| 24. <i>a credit card</i>         | x) to collect money gradually by spending less than you get, usually in order to buy something that you want  |

25. *a customer*

y) a person who seems to hate spending money and spends as little as possible

26. *currency*

z) a person who works in a shop selling things to customers

6

Choose the most suitable word or phrase in each sentence.



1. That new clothes shop has a lot of very good **bargains / sales**. 2. If you pay cash, we can give you a 10% **cutting / discount**. 3. It costs £2.50, so give her £3, and she'll give you 50p **change / rest**. 4. I don't go to that supermarket, it's a bit **priced / pricey**. 5. You can't return goods without the original **recipe / receipt**. 6. Different gadgets are **for sale / on sale** at this supermarket. 7. A carrier bag is free with each **buyer / purchase** over \$5. 8. On Saturday morning the high street is full of **customers / shoppers**. 9. How much did you **pay / spend** for your new shoes? 10. This is a good supermarket, but the **costs / prices** are very high. 11. I don't have enough money, I'm afraid. Could you **lend / borrow** me some money? 12. The shop opposite my house sells a variety of **productions / goods**. 13. We don't have the book, I'm sorry. It's out of **sale / stock**. 14. I bought these jeans very cheaply in the **reductions / sales**. 15. Don't forget to make a shopping **list / catalogue** before we go to the supermarket tomorrow. 16. We don't have this bag at the moment, but we can **deposit / order** it for you. 17. Good morning, madam. Can I **serve / help** you? 18. Parents often think that children **waste / spend** their money on sweets and other things they don't need. 19. Is this a present? Would you like me to **pack / wrap** it up for you? 20. I've bought these shoes for nothing. They were **decreased / reduced** a lot.

7

Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in the box. Then ask and answer the questions with a partner.

deliver cost worth reduce borrow purchase afford  
charge bargain display lend queue



1. What do they \_\_\_\_\_ for milk at your local shop? 2. How much does it \_\_\_\_\_ to get a bus to the town centre? 3. Would you \_\_\_\_\_ for half an hour in a shop or would you leave? 4. Do you only buy things you can \_\_\_\_\_ or do you borrow money? 5. Does the way things are \_\_\_\_\_ in a shop window encourage you to buy? 6. How much is the most expensive thing in your wardrobe \_\_\_\_\_? 7. Do you like to \_\_\_\_\_ items online? 8. Do you buy clothes at full price or wait for the shop to \_\_\_\_\_ them? 9. Do the shops \_\_\_\_\_ furniture free of charge in the Kyiv area? 10. Have you ever \_\_\_\_\_ to get a better price in the market? 11. How often do you \_\_\_\_\_ money from your friends? 12. Have you ever \_\_\_\_\_ money to complete strangers?



8

Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the verbs in the box. Some of the verbs are used twice.

buy save spend lose pay cost sell win waste borrow  
owe find charge give lend



1. My car was ten years old, so I \_\_\_\_\_ it and \_\_\_\_\_ a new one.  
2. I was very sad when I \_\_\_\_\_ my watch in the street. It was a present from my wife and it \_\_\_\_\_ her a lot of money. Fortunately, somebody \_\_\_\_\_ it the next day and took it to a Police Station. 3. I \_\_\_\_\_ over \$2,000 for my computer, but it isn't worth very much now. 4. My father \_\_\_\_\_ me \$50 last week but I \_\_\_\_\_ most of it on a ticket for a concert on Friday. 5. Last week somebody \_\_\_\_\_ \$1mln in a game on television. It was incredibly exciting. 6. I'm afraid I \_\_\_\_\_ my money on those CDs because I never play them. 7. I \_\_\_\_\_ Peter a lot of money last month and he hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ it back yet. 8. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ up for a new mobile phone. I hope I'll have enough by the end of the summer. 9. The mechanic \_\_\_\_\_ me £1000 for the services he provided. 10. His new furniture \_\_\_\_\_ him a lot of money. 11. She still \_\_\_\_\_ me the £10000 that she \_\_\_\_\_ last year.

9

Choose the correct words to complete the advertisement. Create your own advertisement of a similar style.

Fed up with 1. **overpriced** / **excessive** products?



Come along to our new clothes store in the town centre to find a range of excellent, 2. **first** / **top** quality items at a 3. **fair** / **just** price. We promise that you will always get good 4. **value** / **worth** for money, and that our end of 5. **range** / **line** sales in particular offer designer labels at 6. **low** / **little** prices, sometimes even 7. **semi-** / **half-** price! It's definitely 8. **worthy** / **worth** a visit.

10

Choose the correct prepositions to complete the sentences.

1. Let's go to the sales today and see if we can **pick out** / **up** a bargain or two.  
2. We're running out of sugar and we need to **stock up** / **in** on butter, milk and eggs too. 3. Do you need me to lend you any money? I **got** some **cash on** / **out** when I went shopping earlier so I've **got about** thirty pounds **on** / **at** me. 4. I love that skirt but I'd like to think about it for a while. Could you **put** it **aside** / **by** for a couple of hours? Thanks. 5. They're saying that there's going to be a **shortage of** / **in** strawberries this year because of the weather. 6. You should never buy the first thing you see! You need to **shop along** / **around** and compare prices. 7. If you have the space and can afford to buy **in** / **by** **bulk**, it's usually the cheapest way to shop. 8. I'm terrible. I **buy in** / **on** impulse and that's not a good thing!

9. Do you know today's **exchange rate of hryvnia against / to** the US dollar?  
 10. These days there is a great **run of / for** new mobile phones.

**11** 🎧 **Listen to the speaker telling about shopping. Fill in the gaps. Do you agree? Express your point of view on these issues.**

### *Shopping*

Shopping must be **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ world's most popular **2.** \_\_\_\_\_. I hate it. There's nothing more boring than **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ shopping malls. What a **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ of time. I know a lot of people who like **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ shopping – just **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ shops without wanting to buy anything. **7.** \_\_\_\_\_! My plan for shopping is 'quickly in, **8.** \_\_\_\_\_'. If I have to go shopping, I go **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ on a weekday. This is when the stores are **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ and you can get what you want quickly, without thousands of other **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ getting in your way. The worst time to go shopping is on a **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ during sale season. It seems as though all of the world's **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ hunters are in the same store as you. I was **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ when online shopping came along. This is very **15.** \_\_\_\_\_.

**12** 🎧 **a) Listen to an interview with Kathy, a shopaholic. Which of the questions does the interviewer not ask?**

1. Are you really an addict?
2. When do you usually go shopping?
3. Is there an ideal time to go shopping?
4. Where do you most like shopping?
5. Do you travel a lot?
6. How much do you usually spend a week?
7. What's your favourite country for shopping?
8. What do you most enjoy shopping for?
9. When did you last go shopping?
10. What did you buy?



**b) Listen again and make notes on Katy's replies, giving answers to the questions you heard.**

**c) 🗨️ Work in pairs, A and B. Make up a short conversation between Katy and one of her friends who wants to give her some advice about her shopping addiction.**

*A: You are Katy.*

*B: You are one of Katy's friends.*

13

👂 Listen to the speaker and fill in the gaps. What do you think about money and credit cards?

### Money

“Money makes 1. \_\_\_\_\_ go round.” I wonder if this 2. \_\_\_\_\_ English expression is 3. \_\_\_\_\_. If you have 4. \_\_\_\_\_, the world goes round 5. \_\_\_\_\_ and you are 6. \_\_\_\_\_. If you don’t have money, the world might not go round so 7. \_\_\_\_\_. They also say that “money is the 8. \_\_\_\_\_ of all 9. \_\_\_\_\_”. I think this is so true. Money makes people 10. \_\_\_\_\_ and 11. \_\_\_\_\_. Greed means there are things in the world like 12. \_\_\_\_\_, corruption, 13. \_\_\_\_\_ and a lot more 14. \_\_\_\_\_ things. Another common 15. \_\_\_\_\_ in English is “money can’t buy 16. \_\_\_\_\_”. I’m not so sure about this one. I know if I had 17. \_\_\_\_\_ of money I’d be pretty happy. I think if 18. \_\_\_\_\_ money was shared out, the world would go round more happily, and there would be less 19. \_\_\_\_\_ and more 20. \_\_\_\_\_.



### Credit Cards

Many years ago I read that credit cards were the thing of 1. \_\_\_\_\_. Credit card companies were telling us that 2. \_\_\_\_\_ would replace 3. \_\_\_\_\_. Well, this hasn’t happened. People are still using 4. \_\_\_\_\_ and 5. \_\_\_\_\_. The Internet 6. \_\_\_\_\_ the use of credit cards, but many people worry about 7. \_\_\_\_\_ their card details 8. \_\_\_\_\_. Lots of personal 9. \_\_\_\_\_ gets stolen by 10. \_\_\_\_\_ pretending to be famous banks or online 11. \_\_\_\_\_. Personally, I 12. \_\_\_\_\_ credit cards. I always prefer to 13. \_\_\_\_\_ than by cash. When you use your card, you get 14. \_\_\_\_\_ and every six months you can cash them in 15. \_\_\_\_\_. I do worry about credit card 16. \_\_\_\_\_. I keep waiting to see a huge 17. \_\_\_\_\_ on my 18. \_\_\_\_\_ that I didn’t make.



14

Translate the currencies (table 1) into Ukrainian, then match the currency with its country (table 2).

#### Table 1. Currencies

▪Austrian schilling	▪dollar	▪leu	▪rial
▪baht	▪drachma	▪lev	▪rouble
▪cruseiro	▪escudo	▪lira	▪rupiah
▪Czech crown	▪forint	▪markka	▪Swiss franc
▪Danish krone	▪franc	▪peseta	▪yen
▪Deutschmark	▪guilder (florin)	▪pound sterling	▪yuan
▪dinar	▪hryvnia	▪rand	▪zloty

**Table 2. Countries**

- |                     |            |           |               |
|---------------------|------------|-----------|---------------|
| •Austria            | •Finland   | •Iran     | •South Africa |
| •Brazil             | •France    | •Italy    | •Spain        |
| •Bulgaria           | •Germany   | •Japan    | •Switzerland  |
| •China              | •Greece    | •Poland   | •Thailand     |
| •the Czech Republic | •Holland   | •Portugal | •the USA      |
| •Denmark            | •Hungary   | •Romania  | •Ukraine      |
| •England            | •Indonesia | •Russia   | •Yugoslavia   |

**15** Listen to the speakers telling about money and prices. Write down the transcripts. Speak about the prices of the last 3 items you bought.

**Speaker 1** (money):

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_ 5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_

**Speaker 2** (prices):

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_ 5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_

**Speaker 3** (prices):

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_ 5. \_\_\_\_\_  
6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_ 9. \_\_\_\_\_ 10. \_\_\_\_\_

**16** Listen to the dialogues and fill in the gaps. Retell them as monologues to learn what to say when you need to ask for help.

**1. Currency Exchange**

**Woman:** I need to find 1. \_\_\_\_\_. Is there a bank near here?

**Man:** There is a bank 2. \_\_\_\_\_. Do you want to 3. \_\_\_\_\_?

**Woman:** Yes, I want to change 4. \_\_\_\_\_. Do they charge 5. \_\_\_\_\_?

**Man:** Yes, they charge 6. \_\_\_\_\_. How much do you want to change?

**Woman:** I want to change 7. \_\_\_\_\_. What is the 8. \_\_\_\_\_?

**Man:** I think it's about 9. \_\_\_\_\_.

**2. Checking if Credit Cards are Accepted**

**Jack:** Hi. I got 1. \_\_\_\_\_ and now I'm wondering. Do you 2. \_\_\_\_\_ credit cards?

**Mary:** Yes, sir. We do.

**Jack:** Do you accept cards from 3. \_\_\_\_\_?

**Mary:** Yes, sir. Any 4. \_\_\_\_\_ Bank would 5. \_\_\_\_\_.

**Jack:** I have a Citibank credit card.

**Mary:** That would be 6. \_\_\_\_\_, sir. Can I have your card to 7. \_\_\_\_\_?

**Jack:** 8. \_\_\_\_\_. Here it is.

### 3. Asking For a Discount

- Jack:** I have a 1. \_\_\_\_\_ card from here. Will that 2. \_\_\_\_\_ me any 3. \_\_\_\_\_?
- Bill:** Yes, sir. It will get you 4. \_\_\_\_\_ on the total 5. \_\_\_\_\_.
- Jack:** Can I 6. \_\_\_\_\_ it with another discount card?
- Bill:** No, sir. I'm sorry. That's not 7. \_\_\_\_\_.
- Jack:** Ok. That's not a problem. Is it going to get me loyalty 8. \_\_\_\_\_ too?
- Bill:** Yes, sir. Every time you pay with it, you get some points, which you can 9. \_\_\_\_\_ later on.
- Jack:** That's great. Thanks for 10. \_\_\_\_\_. I didn't know that.

17

✦ Answer the following questions.



- 1. How would you describe yourself as a money spender?
- 2. Do you enjoy shopping? How often do you go shopping?
- 3. How do you usually spend your money? What do you usually buy?
- 4. What do you spend most of your money on? Why?
- 5. When you buy something, do you “shop around” and go to many stores to compare prices? Does it help you?
- 6. Do you think people should plan their purchases? Is it better to buy things on impulse? Do you go shopping when you have only something specific to buy?
- 7. Are you a price conscious shopper? Do you usually look for bargains?
- 8. Do you like sales? Do you wait for them when you want to buy anything? Why? Why not?
- 9. Do you tend to save money? Do you do it regularly? Are you good at saving money? If yes, are you saving money to buy anything? Do you have a piggy-bank?
- 10. Do you usually have extra money? What do you do with it?
- 11. Have you ever owed money to people?
- 12. Do you sometimes waste money? What can you waste money on and not regret?
- 13. Do you feel guilty when you spend/waste a lot of money?
- 14. Who do you often go shopping with? Why?
- 15. What would you love to buy but you can't afford?

18

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Я не дуже люблю ходити по магазинам, а моя сестра любить. Вона звикла робити покупки зі списком покупок. Вона робить покупки в суботу. Я більше люблю роздивлятися вітрини. Я так розслабляюсь.



2. Я завзятий покупець. Зайшовши в універмаг, не пропущу жодного відділу чи прилавку.
3. Навіщо переплачувати, краще почекаємо знижок і отримаємо ту ж річ за зниженою ціною.
4. Взагалі-то, я дотримуюся правила: я не настільки багатий, щоб купувати дешеві речі.
5. Якщо моїй сестрі подобається товар, вона готова купити його навіть за високу ціну. Але моя сестра більш щаслива, якщо їй вдається купити хорошу річ дешево. Проте, я люблю купувати якісні речі за розумну ціну.
6. Ті, хто не може собі дозволити купити захмарно дорогу річ, можуть придбати її в кредит.
7. Хоча я люблю торгуватися, я не можу сказати, що це мені вдається. Іноді я витрачаю багато часу, щоб зробити покупки.
8. Вчора я не купила продукти, оскільки не мала з собою готівки. Мені не вдалося розрахуватися карткою, тому що я забула PIN-код від нової картки.
9. Я можу сказати, що я не скупий, але і не марнотратний покупець. Я тільки люблю купувати потрібні речі за помірними цінами. Цього місяця я витратила багато грошей на продукти. Я можу дозволити собі купувати якісні продукти.
10. Мені подобається, що в багатьох магазинах при купівлі на суму більше ніж €1000, доставка по місту є безкоштовною.
11. Мудрі люди кажуть: “Хочеш посваритись з другом, позич йому гроші”. Це й справді так, адже ти позичаєш чийсь гроші, а віддавати потрібно власні.
12. Коли людина має багато грошей, вона їх витрачає направо і наліво.
13. Є багато способів заощаджувати гроші: купувати товари у період сезонних знижок чи оптом, ходити в магазин зі списком покупок та раціонально планувати свій бюджет.
14. Коли постає вибір – що купувати і як, я завжди намагаюся купувати речі оптом, а не в роздріб.
15. На сьогоднішній день більшість людей ідуть за покупками на базар, де вони можуть поторгуватися і купити щось дешевше. На жаль, це небезпечно, так як ви не зможете повернути речі назад, якщо вони з браком.
16. У банку ви можете отримати готівку або ж обміняти валюту.
17. Не підкажете де найближчий пункт обміну валют? Мені терміново потрібно обміняти долари.
18. Мої друзі розкидаються грошима направо і наліво.
19. В цьому супермаркеті покупці мають можливість купувати продукти оптом та в роздріб, можуть розрахуватись готівкою, чеком чи кредитною карткою, але не мають права торгуватись.
20. Щоб більше заощадити, бажано закупувати продукти раз на тиждень, оскільки в цьому випадку можна розраховувати на знижку.



## Types of Shops and Departments

### Vocabulary

Shops and Departments	Магазини та Відділи
an antique shop	антикварний магазин
baker's / a bakery	булочна, хлібний
a book shop / a book store	книжковий магазин
a booth / a kiosk	кіоск
a boutique	бутік, магазин модних речей
butcher's / a meat shop	м'ясна лавка
a car boot sale	барахолка (де речі на продаж розкладають на багажникові)
a cash and carry store	магазин, де продаж за готівку по оптовій ціні без доставки додому (напр. "Метро")
a charity shop	благодійний магазин
a chain store	мережевий магазин
chemist's / a drugstore / a pharmacy	аптека
a children's clothes shop	магазин дитячого одягу
a clothes shop / ready-made clothes	магазин готового одягу
a confectionery / a sweet shop	кондитерський магазин
crockery and glassware	фарфор та скло
a dairy	магазин молочних продуктів
a delicatessen / deli	магазин делікатесів, гастрономія
a department store / a store	універмаг
a DIY store	магазин / відділ "Зроби сам"
a drapery	магазин / відділ штор
a duty-free shop	магазин безмитної торгівлі
electric appliances	магазин / відділ електротоварів
a fancy goods shop	магазин модної галантереї та дрібничок
fishmonger's	рибний магазин
florist's / a flower shop	магазин квітів
a furniture shop	магазин / відділ меблів
furrier's	магазин хутряних виробів
a garden center	магазин "Все для саду та городу"
a general store	універсам
a gift shop	магазин подарунків
greengrocer's	овочевий магазин
grocer's / dry grocer's	бакалійна крамниця
a haberdashery	галантерея

a hardware shop	магазин залізних виробів; металовиробів
hatter's / a millinery shop	магазин капелюхів / дамських капелюшків
a hosiery	відділ панчішних виробів
a household goods shop	магазин господарчих товарів
a hypermarket	гіпермаркет
ironmonger's	магазин залізо-скоб'яних виробів
jeweller's / a jewellery shop	ювелірний магазин
a knitted goods department	магазин / відділ трикотажних виробів
a ladies' wear / men's wear shop	магазин жіночого / чоловічого одягу
a leather shop	магазин шкіряних виробів
a liquor store / an off-licence	магазин / відділ спиртних напоїв
a local shop	місцевий магазин
a market	ринок
• <i>a flea ~</i>	• <i>блошиний ~</i>
a mobile shop	пересувна лавка
a music shop	музичний магазин
newsagent's / a newsstand	газетний кіоск
optician's	оптика
an outlet	фірмовий магазин, спеціалізований магазин
• <i>a retail ~</i>	• <i>роздрібний ~</i>
a perfumery shop / department	магазин / відділ парфумерії
a pet shop	зоомагазин
a second-hand shop	магазин речей, що були у вжитку
a self-service shop / store	магазин самообслуговування
a shoe shop / a footwear department	магазин / відділ взуття
a shopping center	торговий центр
a shopping mall	торговельний пасаж
a souvenir shop	сувенірний магазин / відділ
a sports shop / sportswear	спортивний магазин
a stall	ларьок, лоток, намет (на ярмарку)
stationer's / a stationery shop	магазин канцелярських товарів
a supermarket	супермаркет
a textiles shop / draper's	магазин / відділ тканин
tobacconist's	магазин тютюнових виробів
a toy shop	магазин іграшок
an underwear / lingerie shop	магазин жіночої білизни
a wholesale store	оптовий склад-магазин
a vending machine	торговий автомат

an aisle	прохід між стелажми
a counter	прилавок
a row	ряд
a shelf	полиця

19

Read the text, translate it into Ukrainian and answer the questions below.

### *Shops and Departments*

When we want to buy something, we go to a shop. I like to do my shopping at big **department stores** and **supermarkets**. As they sell **various goods** under one roof, which is very convenient, so there are many shops or departments, which sell this or that kind of goods. You can buy everything you like there. Here's a short guide. Department stores always have many different departments: **haberdashery, headwear, perfumery, stationery, leather goods, sports goods, china and glass, fabrics, linen, cosmetics, footwear, toys, electric appliances, readymade men's and ladies' clothes**. Things for sale are **displayed on counters** so that they can be easily seen. There are also escalators in big stores, which take customers to different floors.

For example, in the **ladies' clothing** department you can choose dresses, coats, skirts, blouses, beautiful underwear and many other things. In the **men's clothing** department one can buy suits, trousers, ties, overcoats and jackets. In the **knitwear** department one can buy sweaters,



woollen jackets, short-sleeved and long-sleeved pullovers, cardigans. In the **perfumery** they sell face cream and powder, lipsticks, lotions and shampoos.

In a **food supermarket** we can also buy many different things at once: sausages, fish, sugar, macaroni, flour, cereals, tea. At the **butcher's** there is a wide choice of meat and poultry. At the **bakery** you buy brown and white bread, rolls, biscuits. We go to the dairy department to buy milk, cream, cheese. Tinned caviar, seafood and different sorts of fish can be found at the **fishmonger's**. Pasta, cereals and grasses, coffee and tea are sold at the **dry grocer's**, while at the **greengrocer's** we can find all sorts of fresh vegetables and fruit. Well, you may buy all this stuff at a **market place** and very often it is cheaper and of better quality. There are also big supermarkets where you can buy everything **ready-weighed** and **packed**. Such shops are very universal and **well-stocked**.

If you are exhausted running from one counter to another, find a **food point**. Department stores and supermarkets are always equipped with **vending machines** on each floor. They sell cans of Cola, tea, instant coffee, chocolate bars and biscuits.

Methods of shopping may vary. It may be a **self-service shop** where the customer goes from counter to counter selecting and putting into a **shopping basket** what he wishes to buy. Then he takes the basket to the **check-out counter**, where the prices of the purchases are added up. If it is not a self-service shop, and most small shops are not, a **shop-assistant** helps a customer in finding what he wants. You pay money to the **cashier** and he gives you back the **change**. Moreover, we can order goods using a telephone and with the help of different catalogues and fashion magazines.

If you want to do the shopping, you should know some rules. First of all, you should pay for everything you buy. It is important to spend money rationally. If you **queue up** at the **cash desk**, you need to wait for your **turn**. You should check your money before and after paying. It is important to think over your choice and to buy only good things. These are the main rules of shopping. Knowing the rules helps to get **real bargains**.

- 1. What departments do department stores usually have? Which are your favourite ones? Which do you hate?
- 2. What departments are the most popular with shoppers?
- 3. What are the rules for successful shopping? Do you follow them?
- 4. Who helps you buy things in shops?
- 5. What is the most popular department store in your city?
- 6. How often do you prefer street markets to supermarkets? Why?
- 7. How often and what do you buy from vending machines?

20

**Transcribe the words from the left column. Match the shops with their definitions.**

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>a fancy goods shop</i> | a) a wholesale store where goods are paid for in full at the time of purchase and taken away by the purchaser             |
| 2. <i>a mobile shop</i>      | b) a purpose-built area of a town or a complex of shops, restaurants for the use of pedestrians                           |
| 3. <i>a stall</i>            | c) a sale where people sell things they own and do not want from a little stall or from the back of their car             |
| 4. <i>an off-licence</i>     | d) a shop that sells goods at retail prices   |
| 5. <i>a chain store</i>      | e) a shop where second-hand goods are sold to raise money for charity   |
| 6. <i>a department store</i> | f) an outdoor market which sells cheap used goods and sometimes also very old furniture                                   |
| 7. <i>a delicatessen</i>     | g) one of several similar shops owned by one company and selling the same merchandise                                     |
| 8. <i>a charity shop</i>     | h) a huge self-service store with a wide range of goods and a large parking lot, usually built on the outskirts of a town |

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 9. <i>an outlet</i>               | i) a large table on which you put goods that you want to sell, or information that you want to give people                       |
| 10. <i>a shopping centre</i>      | j) a machine from which you can get food, drinks or cigarettes by putting in a coin, bill or token and pressing a button         |
| 11. <i>a shopping mall</i>        | k) a covered moveable shop   |
| 12. <i>a flea market</i>          | l) a shop that sells high quality foods such as cheeses and cold meats imported from other countries                             |
| 13. <i>a vending machine</i>      | m) a shop that sells small decorative gifts, knick-knacks that are purely or chiefly ornamental                                  |
| 14. <i>a car boot sale</i>        | n) a shop that sells small articles for sewing, such as buttons, zips, and thread  |
| 15. <i>a hypermarket</i>          | o) a shop which sells beer, wine, and other hard drinks  |
| 16. <i>a discount store</i>       | p) a large shop that sells many different kinds of goods   |
| 17. <i>a cash and carry store</i> | q) a specially built covered area containing shops and restaurants which people can walk between, and where cars are not allowed |
| 18. <i>a haberdashery</i>         | r) a shop or organization which sells the goods made by a particular manufacturer  |

**21** Shopping habits like everything else have changed a lot in the past twenty years. It was not long ago that names like *Hypermarket, Boutique, Cash and Carry, Discount Store, Do-it-yourself Supplies* had little or no place in our streets. My grandfather still refuses to shop in any of these places. Say where you think he could go to buy the following things.

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>a new pair of glasses</i>                     | a) <i>shoe shop</i>              |
| 2. <i>a gold fish</i>                               | b) <i>stationer's</i>            |
| 3. <i>an interesting book</i>                       | c) <i>tobacconist's</i>          |
| 4. <i>some pipe tobacco and a box of matches</i>    | d) <i>antique shop</i>           |
| 5. <i>a copy of Time magazine</i>                   | e) <i>toy shop</i>               |
| 6. <i>a seventeenth-century clock</i>               | f) <i>chemist's</i>              |
| 7. <i>an expensive evening dress</i>                | g) <i>draper's</i>               |
| 8. <i>light bulbs, batteries and plugs</i>          | h) <i>florist's</i>              |
| 9. <i>some new discs and strings for the guitar</i> | i) <i>hardware shop</i>          |
| 10. <i>new curtains and a net curtain</i>           | j) <i>crockery and glassware</i> |
| 11. <i>a pair of sheets and pillow cases</i>        | k) <i>liquor store</i>           |
| 12. <i>a bunch of red roses</i>                     | l) <i>household goods shop</i>   |
| 13. <i>a pair of leather shoes</i>                  | m) <i>optician's</i>             |
| 14. <i>a packet of nails, screws, and a hammer</i>  | n) <i>pet shop</i>               |
| 15. <i>some writing paper and pens</i>              | o) <i>bookshop</i>               |
| 16. <i>a teddy bear</i>                             | p) <i>newsagent's</i>            |

17. a bar of soap, vitamins and aspirin
18. six cups and saucers
19. a bottle of whisky
20. a pair of socks
21. a present for his friend
22. a gold ring for a granddaughter

- q) boutique
- r) music shop
- s) textile shop
- t) gift shop
- u) jeweller's
- v) hosiery

**22** The letter “u” can be read in different ways. Group the listed words into the correct boxes

- |              |                |                 |                    |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. purchase  | 6. currency    | 11. butcher's   | 16. duty-free shop |
| 2. reduction | 7. furrier's   | 12. purse       | 17. furniture shop |
| 3. valuable  | 8. refund      | 13. drugstore   | 18. music shop     |
| 4. genuine   | 9. buy         | 14. manufacture | 19. supermarket    |
| 5. outlet    | 10. squanderer | 15. queue       | 20. antique shop   |

/ɜ:/	/ʌ/	/(j)u:/	silent	gives a consonant sound in combination with a neighbouring letter	gives a vowel sound in combination with a neighbouring letter

**23** Listen to the definitions and write down the names of shops. Translate them into Ukrainian.

- |          |          |          |          |           |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 3. _____ | 5. _____ | 7. _____ | 9. _____  |
| 2. _____ | 4. _____ | 6. _____ | 8. _____ | 10. _____ |

**24** Listen to the speaker and fill in the gaps with the information you hear. Translate it into Ukrainian.

- |          |           |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 6. _____  | 11. _____ | 16. _____ | 21. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 7. _____  | 12. _____ | 17. _____ | 22. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 8. _____  | 13. _____ | 18. _____ | 23. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 9. _____  | 14. _____ | 19. _____ | 24. _____ |
| 5. _____ | 10. _____ | 15. _____ | 20. _____ | 25. _____ |

**25** Decide which answer *a*, *b*, *c* or *d* best fits each space.

### Street Markets



Most people enjoy looking for **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ in street markets. It can be very enjoyable walking around the **2.** \_\_\_\_\_, among the crowds of **3.** \_\_\_\_\_, and trying to spend as **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ as possible. Of course, it depends **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ the market. In fruit and **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ markets, there



is usually a wide variety of **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ produce, but it may not be cheap. There may be goods at **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ prices at the end of the day, however. Clothes markets can be a problem, as it is difficult to **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ on new clothes in the open **10.** \_\_\_\_\_! My favourite are antique markets, where although there is not much **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ of finding valuable objects which are also cheap, you can enjoy yourself looking at all the things for **12.** \_\_\_\_\_. Whatever kind of market you look **13.** \_\_\_\_\_, and whether you buy things or not, you usually **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ up feeling completely worn **15.** \_\_\_\_\_. Still, it is an interesting way of shopping.

- |     |               |            |                |              |
|-----|---------------|------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1.  | a) cheap      | b) sale    | c) inexpensive | d) bargains  |
| 2.  | a) tables     | b) stalls  | c) boxes       | d) stores    |
| 3.  | a) shoppers   | b) public  | c) buys        | d) goods     |
| 4.  | a) little     | b) soon    | c) late        | d) is        |
| 5.  | a) from       | b) with    | c) on          | d) to        |
| 6.  | a) salads     | b) green   | c) farm        | d) vegetable |
| 7.  | a) new        | b) fresh   | c) young       | d) early     |
| 8.  | a) half       | b) bottom  | c) reduced     | d) down      |
| 9.  | a) look       | b) try     | c) have        | d) take      |
| 10. | a) time       | b) shop    | c) light       | d) air       |
| 11. | a) likelihood | b) instead | c) in spite    | d) luck      |
| 12. | a) that       | b) all     | c) sale        | d) other     |
| 13. | a) round      | b) for     | c) up          | d) out       |
| 14. | a) shut       | b) bring   | c) get         | d) end       |
| 15. | a) clothes    | b) however | c) out         | d) through   |

26

Complete the sentences with the correct words in the box.

deposit    vending    replacement    manager    mall    wallet  
 market    counter    boot    purse    centre    trolley    list    catalogue    stalls  
 department    chain    charity    receipt    advertisement



1. A large building with a lot of different shops in it: a shopping \_\_\_\_\_.
2. You put money, especially banknotes, in this: a \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Something you put money in to buy things like drinks, crisps, and chocolate bars: a \_\_\_\_\_ machine.
4. You can buy different things from stalls there in the sunshine or the rain: a street \_\_\_\_\_.
5. You push this in the supermarket and fill it with food: a \_\_\_\_\_.
6. People often sell second-hand items there at weekends: a car \_\_\_\_\_ sale.
7. You are given this as proof of buying something: a \_\_\_\_\_.
8. People donate old items to be sold in these shops: a \_\_\_\_\_ shop.
9. This is a company that has shops in different places, all with the same name: a \_\_\_\_\_ store.
10. You can buy plants and flowers here as well as garden furniture: a garden \_\_\_\_\_.
11. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ tries to persuade you to buy something. **12.** A big shop with different floors where you can buy a wide range of things from clothes to cups and saucers: a \_\_\_\_\_ store. **13.** You might make this before you go shopping: a \_\_\_\_\_. **14.** This person is in charge of a shop: a \_\_\_\_\_. **15.** Leave this if you can't pay now but want to buy later: a \_\_\_\_\_. **16.** Coins are usually carried in this, especially by women: a \_\_\_\_\_. **17.** You read a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to find descriptions of goods. **18.** The street markets are full of \_\_\_\_\_ selling fruit and vegetables. **19.** You ask for \_\_\_\_\_ if there is something wrong with the item you want to buy. **20.** A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a long narrow table or flat surface at which customers are served.

27

Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.

give\*2 go make\*2 do spend speak leave keep meet return

**1.** While you \_\_\_\_\_ shopping don't forget about some important facts. **2.** Always \_\_\_\_\_ a receipt in case you are dissatisfied with the item. **3.** If you want to \_\_\_\_\_ an item, you should do this as soon as possible. **4.** Some stores \_\_\_\_\_ a discount to regular customers. **5.** If you tend to \_\_\_\_\_ too much money, always \_\_\_\_\_ a shopping list before going out to the shops. **6.** If you go to a supermarket towards the end of a day, there are often lots of items \_\_\_\_\_ cheap. **7.** If a shop assistant refuses to \_\_\_\_\_ you a refund, ask to \_\_\_\_\_ to the manager. **8.** Don't be worried about \_\_\_\_\_ a complaint if goods or services do not \_\_\_\_\_ your expectations. **9.** When you shop online, always \_\_\_\_\_ feedback because it helps other buyers.

28

Answer and discuss the following questions.



- **1.** What do you take into consideration while doing the shopping (e.g., types of shops, prices, etc.)?
- **2.** Do you have any shopping habits (e.g., making a shopping list, etc.)?
- **3.** In what ways are shopping habits changing (e.g., online shopping, hypermarkets, etc.)?
- **4.** What kinds of goods do you enjoy buying? Why?
- **5.** Do you regard shopping as a pleasant pastime or a tiring duty?
- **6.** What shops in your city have a reputation for quality? for reasonable prices? for exclusive products?
- **7.** Why do you think shopping on the Internet or by mail order catalogues is becoming more and more popular?
- **8.** What are the main reasons people don't like shopping? (queues? crowds? difficulty with finding products? lack of time? inconvenient opening hours? any others?)



- 10. What is the price of the shopping basket of everyday goods in your country? What items do you think the shopping basket contains?
- 11. How easily are you influenced by advertising?
- 12. What do you consider the advantages and disadvantages of small shops and large shopping centers?



- 13. Would you prefer to do all your shopping in one huge department store or in a number of specialized shops? Why?
- 14. Do you prefer self-service or counter service? Why?
- 15. Why do many housewives prefer to buy food (vegetables and fruit especially) in the market? What about you?
- 16. Do you think that shop assistants should act according to the principle “The customer is always right”? Why or why not?
- 17. Do you remember your first purchase? What was it?
- 18. What was your most successful and satisfying shopping tour?

29

### Translate into English.

1. Якщо нам потрібні товари широкого вжитку, ми йдемо до універмагу. За продуктами ми йдемо до супермаркету чи на базар.
2. Скажіть, будь ласка, де знаходиться відділ електротоварів та товарів для дому? Мені терміново потрібно придбати пару лампочок.
3. Супермаркет – це великий магазин, в якому поєднано хлібний, м'ясний, гастрономічний, кондитерський, молочний, овочевий та інші відділи.



4. На квіткових розкладках можна придбати дешеві букети квітів, оздоблені без смаку. Саме тому я рекомендую купувати букети квітів у спеціалізованих магазинах. Ціни там вищі, але якість набагато краща.
5. Сходи в книжковий магазин і купи мені журнал про рибалку. А якщо не буде, то там поряд є газетний кіоск. Там, напевно, є спеціалізовані журнали.
6. Аптеки – на кожному кроці, а деякі з них навіть працюють цілодобово.
7. У бутиках на Хрещатику можна купити багато якісних модних товарів.
8. Діана вдягається у вишуканих бутиках, тому вона ніколи не бачила барахолки, оптових складів-магазинів чи блошиних ринків.
9. В Італії багато антикварних та кондитерських магазинів, адже італійці люблять старовинні речі та смачну випічку і солодощі.
10. Закордоном обов'язково відвідайте сувенірні крамнички в центрі міста.
11. У новому універмазі є відділ “Зроби сам”. Потрібно піти туди на вихідних з дітьми. Вони люблять майструвати щось своїми руками.
12. Гіпермаркет на розі має широкий асортимент товарів, проте ціни там захмарні.

13. Усі, в кого ремонт, постійно щось купують у відділах металовиробів, господарчих товарів, меблів, електротоварів та штор.
14. Якщо хочете купити подарунок дружині, зайдіть в ювелірний магазин чи в магазин хутряних виробів та, звичайно ж, не забудьте про відділ жіночої білизни. Подарунок для шефа можна підібрати в магазині подарунків або тютюнових виробів, а також у відділі спиртних напоїв.
15. Біля квіткової крамнички знаходиться магазин “Все для саду та городу”.
16. Дітям до вподоби магазин іграшок “Антошка”. Там безліч відділів та можна погратися і виграти іграшку в торговому автоматі.
17. У місцевому магазині з’явився відділ “Фарфор та скло”.
18. Магазин канцелярських товарів біля університету більше не працює.
19. Ми щойно купили піаніно в музичному магазині для нашої донечки.
20. На заправці є магазин самообслуговування, який працює цілодобово.
21. Мережеві магазини зручні тим, що ціни там однакові.
22. Зоомагазин в торговельному центрі настільки великий, що там можна заблудитися. Навпроти – галантерея, а зліва – відділ трикотажних виробів.
23. Перший благодійний магазин з’явився в Америці в 1994 році.
24. Чоловіки люблять робити покупки в магазині чоловічого одягу. Особливо їм подобаються відділи шкіряних виробів та взуття. Жінки надають перевагу відділам парфумерії, дамських капелюшків, тканин, панчішних виробів і модної галантереї та дрібничок.

30

✎ **Make up a topic “What kind of shopper are you?” according to the plan below. Be ready to present it in the class.**

**Plan**

1. Your attitude to shops and shopping. Top favourite and pet hate shops.
2. Reasons to visit the respective shops. Their pluses and minuses.
3. Your shopping habits (cards, cash, online shopping, time, rationality, shopping list, exclusive products, etc.)

## Food Packaging Materials and Containers

### Vocabulary

Packaging Materials	Пакувальні Матеріали
cardboard	тонкий картон
carton	картон
film	харчова плівка
glass	скло
paper	папір
plastic	пластик
steel / metal	метал
wrap paper or film	обгортковий папір чи плівка

<b>Containers</b>	<b>Контейнери</b>
a bag	пакет
a beverage cup	чашка для напою
a bottle	пляшка
a box	коробка
a brick carton	картонна пачка чи коробка (як для соку)
a can	банка металева (як для Пепсі)
a jar	банка (як для кави чи варення)
a pack	упаковка
a package	пачка (масла)
a packet	пачка (печива)
a punnet	корзинка чи коробочка для ягід
a sachet	порційний пакетик
a stick	стік
a tin	консервна банка
a tray	лоток, піддон
a tub	ванночка
a tube	тюбик
<b>Food Type (Food can be</b>	<b>Тип Їжі</b>
boxed	ящична
canned	консервована (в металевій тарі)
packaged	упакована (як масло)
packed	упакована (загалом)
parceled	розділена порційно
preserved	консервована (загалом)
processed	перероблена (пастеризована)
shelf	з довгим терміном зберігання
stored	упакована на довгий термін
tinned	консервована (риба)
recycled*	повторно перероблена (упаковка)
air-tight*	герметична (упаковка)
<i>shelf life</i>	термін зберігання
<i>expiry date</i>	дата закінчення терміну придатності
<i>bar code</i>	штрих код

31

Read the text about food packaging materials and containers and translate it into Ukrainian. Answer the questions below.

### *Food Packaging Materials and Containers*

Fresh, processed and preserved food items are packed, packaged and boxed using a wide range of materials from plastic to metal and glass. Here is a complete list of the different kinds of materials used to pack, package and parcel

processed, fresh and **shelf food**. They are **plastic, metal, carton, glass** and **cardboard**.



**Plastic films, wraps, containers** and **beverage cups** are used to pack and serve fresh food, take-away and beverages at food stalls and restaurants. While plastic packing products are used mostly to pack fresh food and beverages, they are also used to pack sweets and food with a medium **shelf life**.

**Brick cartons** are strong, light, **air-tight** packing materials, used to pack, store and preserve basic foodstuffs like milk, juice, etc.

**Metal** and **tin cans** are used to package **canned food**, which have a long shelf life, as well as cold beverages like soft drinks and beer. **Aluminum, tin** and **steel food packaging cans** are strong, light, ideal for long-term packaging, and can be **recycled**.

**Glass bottles, jars** and **containers** are most often used to pack any kind of food – **solid** or **liquid**. They are most used to package jams, pickles and beverages. Glass food containers are strong and hardy but require careful handling and are easy to recycle and reuse.

**Cardboard** can be used as both a base and secondary packing material. They can be used to serve and pack food at stalls like pizza and to box and package **pre-packaged food items** like packed snacks, **perishables** and liquids.

- 1. What is packaging for?
- 2. What food packaging materials are popular in your culture / family? Why?
- 3. Are all packaging materials eco-friendly? Which food packaging material is the most ecologically friendly / unfriendly? Why?
- 4. What information can you get from packaging?
- 5. What information do bar codes contain?
- 6. How often do you read the information on packaging?
- 7. How important are the kind of packaging and its design for you?

32

**Underline silent consonants in the words below. Transcribe and read each word.**

- |              |                  |              |                 |
|--------------|------------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. packet    | 4. butcher's     | 7. weigh     | 10. stock       |
| 2. wholesale | 5. crockery      | 8. package   | 11. aisle       |
| 3. receipt   | 6. knitted goods | 9. air-tight | 12. high street |

33

**a) Look at the picture of food packaging containers and translate the words into Ukrainian. Which of them in daily use in your family?**





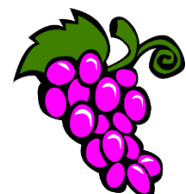
**b) What items of food or drink are sold in each type of container? Write two more relevant examples for each shop.**

<i>a shop type</i>	<i>a container with food / drink</i>		
confectioner's	<i>a box of chocolates</i>		
dairy	<i>a tub of margarine</i>		
baker's	<i>a bag of rusks</i>		
butcher's	<i>a tray of chicken legs</i>		
greengrocer's	<i>a bunch of dill</i>		
fishmonger's	<i>a pull tab of cod liver</i>		
delicatessen	<i>a packet of biscuits</i>		
dry grocer's	<i>a tin of peas</i>		
hard drinks	<i>a bottle of dry wine</i>		
soft drinks	<i>a can of Pepsi</i>		

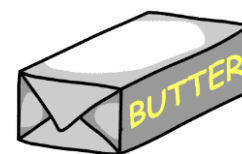
**34**

**What shops would you go to buy these products? Match the products and the shops to make up sentences.**

- |                              |                |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. a jar of cream            | fishmonger's   |
| 2. a loaf of wholemeal bread |                |
| 3. a carton of yoghurt       |                |
| 4. a bunch of grapes         | confectioner's |
| 5. a nice piece of cod       |                |



- |                                     |               |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| 6. a jar of pickled onions          | dry grocer's  |
| 7. a box of soft-centred chocolates |               |
| 8. a joint of beef                  | baker's       |
| 9. a few sticks of celery           |               |
| 10. a tub of ice-cream              |               |
| 11. a head of cabbage or broccoli   | butcher's     |
| 12. a 500 g tin of beans            |               |
| 13. a packet of salt                |               |
| 14. a package of butter             | dairy         |
| 15. a kilo of ham                   |               |
| 16. a dozen buns                    | greengrocer's |
| 17. a stick of chocolate            |               |



35

Complete the conversation with the following containers from the box. One container is not used.

a tub of	a bottle of	a tin of	a can of
a jar of	a packet of	a box of	a carton of

**Eve:** Hi! Could you get some things from the supermarket for us?

**Jane:** *OK. Hold on while I get a pen. OK.*

**Eve:** Can you get a 1. \_\_\_\_\_ coffee?

**Jane:** *Instant coffee?*

**Eve:** Yes, and get a 2. \_\_\_\_\_ biscuits or two.

**Jane:** *OK, got that. Shall I get something for dinner?*

**Eve:** No, that's OK. I'm cooking a chicken and a salad.

**Jane:** *Sounds good. I'll pick up a 3. \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate ice cream and some strawberries for dessert.*

**Eve:** Good idea! Oh, we need eggs. Get a 4. \_\_\_\_\_ eggs, would you? We need a 5. \_\_\_\_\_ olive oil. And can you get a 6. \_\_\_\_\_ cream?

**Jane:** *Yes, got that. Oh, I guess the cat will want dinner too. I'll get a 7. \_\_\_\_\_ cat food. Is that it?*

**Eve:** Cat food? We don't have a cat.

**Jane:** *Of course, we do Mary! I bought him last month!*

**Eve:** Terribly sorry. I think I've dialed the wrong number.

36

🎧 Listen to the speaker telling how to buy food in a supermarket. Fill in the gaps with the information you hear.

### *Buying Food in a Supermarket*

Let's go to the supermarket or 1. \_\_\_\_\_ store. When you go in, you'll take a 2. \_\_\_\_\_ or a 3. \_\_\_\_\_. To ask for 4. \_\_\_\_\_ in the supermarket, you can say: "Where can I find ...?" or "Do you have ...?". For example: "Where can I find 5. \_\_\_\_\_?", "Do you have 6. \_\_\_\_\_?". The supermarket 7. \_\_\_\_\_ can respond:

“It’s on 8. \_\_\_\_\_ 12”. 9. \_\_\_\_\_ are the corridors in the supermarket. The employee might also say: “Yes, in the 10. \_\_\_\_\_ section.”

The supermarket is divided into 11. \_\_\_\_\_. The dairy section has 12. \_\_\_\_\_, yogurt, 13. \_\_\_\_\_, and cheese. The 14. \_\_\_\_\_ section has 15. \_\_\_\_\_ fruits and 16. \_\_\_\_\_. The frozen food section has 17. \_\_\_\_\_ and pre-prepared food. The 18. \_\_\_\_\_ has bread, 19. \_\_\_\_\_, and cakes. The deli has 20. \_\_\_\_\_ and cheese for 21. \_\_\_\_\_, as well as some 22. \_\_\_\_\_. And the ethnic 23. \_\_\_\_\_ section has 24. \_\_\_\_\_ food items.

If the store doesn’t have the item 25. \_\_\_\_\_ right now, the employee will say: “Sorry, it’s out of 26. \_\_\_\_\_.” or “Sorry, we’re out of unsalted 27. \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.” In this case, you can 28. \_\_\_\_\_ to the store later to 29. \_\_\_\_\_ if the item is available. If the store 30. \_\_\_\_\_ offers the item, the employee will say: “Sorry, we don’t 31. \_\_\_\_\_ mango juice.” In this case, you need to go to a 32. \_\_\_\_\_ store to find it.

You can buy food in different types of 33. \_\_\_\_\_: a can of soup, a 34. \_\_\_\_\_ of jam, a 35. \_\_\_\_\_ of cereal, a 36. \_\_\_\_\_ of pasta, a 37. \_\_\_\_\_ of milk, a bottle of 38. \_\_\_\_\_, a loaf of 39. \_\_\_\_\_.



You might see 40. \_\_\_\_\_ that says 20% 41. \_\_\_\_\_. This means there’s a 20% 42. \_\_\_\_\_. If you’re not sure if there’s a discount, ask: “Is this 43. \_\_\_\_\_?”

When you’re 44. \_\_\_\_\_ to pay, go to the 45. \_\_\_\_\_. The person who works there is called the 46. \_\_\_\_\_. The cashier might say: “How would you like 47. \_\_\_\_\_?” You can answer: “In 48. \_\_\_\_\_.”, “With a 49. \_\_\_\_\_ card.” or “With a 50. \_\_\_\_\_ card.” If you pay with a credit card, the cashier will say, “Please 51. \_\_\_\_\_ here.” If you pay with debit card, the cashier will say, “Please 52. \_\_\_\_\_ your PIN.” (personal 53. \_\_\_\_\_ number). If you pay in cash and the 54. \_\_\_\_\_ is \$70, but you give \$100, the cashier will give you 55. \_\_\_\_\_ the extra money and say, “Here’s your 56. \_\_\_\_\_.” or “Your 57. \_\_\_\_\_ is \$30.” Then the 58. \_\_\_\_\_ will give you a 59. \_\_\_\_\_. A receipt is the piece of paper with the 60. \_\_\_\_\_ of items you bought and the 61. \_\_\_\_\_. Finally, the cashier might say: “Have a 62. \_\_\_\_\_!” You can 63. \_\_\_\_\_: “Thanks, you too!”

37

**🔊 Listen to the speaker telling about supermarkets. Fill in the gaps. What is your opinion about this issue?**

### *Supermarkets*

I think supermarkets are 1. \_\_\_\_\_ places. They are packed with 2. \_\_\_\_\_ of different kinds of 3. \_\_\_\_\_ and products. There is an 4. \_\_\_\_\_ of workers making sure the shelves are 5. \_\_\_\_\_ and everything looks nice. And the prices are usually 6. \_\_\_\_\_. The only thing I don’t like about supermarkets is when I have 7. \_\_\_\_\_. I hate waiting in line at the 8. \_\_\_\_\_. Another thing I hate is when I get a 9. \_\_\_\_\_ with a wobbly 10. \_\_\_\_\_. I really like going to supermarkets in different 11. \_\_\_\_\_. Each country has very 12. \_\_\_\_\_. In England, you’ll see a

huge **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ section; in Japan, you'll see a whole **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ selling seaweed; in the Middle East, you'll see **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ of dates and olives; and my favourite is India and the hundreds of colourful spices.

38

### Translate into English.

**1.** Вчора я купила шинку та варену ковбасу в ковбасному відділі, а сьогодні я бачила там не дуже дорогу копчену ковбасу та салямі.

**2.** У рибному магазині завжди гарний вибір риби. Там можна купити свіжу, морожену, копчену або солену рибу. Мій чоловік купив сьогодні там фунт лосося, ванночку оселедців і баночку шпротів. Риба та рибні продукти користуються широким попитом у людей в нашому місті.

**3.** У м'ясному магазині завжди є свіже м'ясо, як от баранина, телятина, свинина, яловичина, курятина, індичка, кролик та ягнятина.



**4.** Хлібний відділ – праворуч. Там завжди є свіжий хліб, булочки з маком та повидлом, пшеничні сухарі, бублики. Хліб можна купити протягом всього дня.

**5.** Ми вже купили смачні тістечка, коробку шоколадних цукерок з начинкою, пачку сухого печива, торт, пиріг з вишнями та пакет цукру “піску” в кондитерській.

**6.** У місцевому магазині широкий вибір молочних продуктів у продажу. Тут можна купити пляшку нежирного молока, баночку сметани, пакет вершків, пачку вершкового масла, ванночку маргарину, плавлені сирки, домашній сир і твердий сир, пачку кефіру чи пляшку йогурту з ягодами.

**7.** Купи, будь ласка, у бакалії спецій до страв з картоплі, пачку кам'яної солі, пакетик чорного меленого перцю, баночку гірчиці та пляшку оцту.

**8.** Я збираюся купити огірки, квасолю, цвітну капусту, часник, цибулю, моркву і баночку солодкої консервованої кукурудзи в овочевому магазині.

**9.** Продавці завжди поводяться з покупцями дуже ввічливо. Вони їх уважно вислуховують, відповідають на всі запитання й намагаються бути у нагоді.

**10.** Ти коли-небудь була у новому універсамі на розі нашої вулиці? Там зручно робити покупки, бо можна купити всі необхідні товари без черг і не потрібно йти до іншого магазину. Там широкий асортимент товарів.

**11.** У цьому продуктовому магазині всі товари попаковані й досить багато касових апаратів. Ось чому тут майже ніколи немає черг.

**12.** – Давай візьмемо візок чи корзину. Між іншим, де тут продаються овочі? – Не маю уявлення. Я тут вперше.

**13.** – Що ви хочете із м'ясних продуктів? – Я хочу купити фунт нежирного бекону. – Цей шматок підійде? – Так, я візьму його. І скільки все це разом коштує?

**14.** Не забудьте подивитися на термін придатності на етикетці, адже якщо продукти швидко псуються, вони повинні бути продатовані.





15. У нас закінчилася гречана крупа. Давай заскочимо в бакалію, щоб купити пакет гречаної крупи та пляшку оливкової олії.

16. – Вибачте, ви продаєте маргарин? – Так, але я боюся ми продали весь. – Нічого не поробиш. Тоді дайте мені пачку масла та баночку солінь.

39

a) Read the following text and pay special attention to topical vocabulary.

### *Buying Food*

I can't say that I'm a **keen shopper** but **shopping for food** is one of my household duties. I do it once or twice a week when I **run out of** some products. Saturday is my shopping day but I buy fresh bread **at the local baker's** every day. I buy meat and fish once a week. There is always a **wide selection of** meat and sausage **at the butcher's** not far from our block of flats. I usually buy fresh, frozen or smoked fish **at the fishmonger's**. I also buy cereal products, flour, different spices, mayonnaise and margarine **at the dry grocery**.



I enjoy buying food in large supermarkets where a great variety of different food **is available** and I can **make all** my **purchases** under one roof. What is more, lots of food is sold here **ready-weighed** and **packed** and there are usually **special offers** or **discounts on** certain **foodstuffs** and **items**. There is also a wide choice of pet food and **household goods** like soap, detergents, toothpaste, or toothbrushes there. Obviously, supermarkets can save a lot of time. For me to save money I usually **make a shopping list** and **indicate what** and **how much** to buy so as not to buy the goods that I do not really need.

I like that supermarkets work **on the self-service, system**: I **go in**, take a **basket** or a **trolley**, **walk round** the shop from one **section** to another, choose what I want and **go to the cash-desk** where I pay. I prefer **paying in cash**, so I usually **give money to the cashier**, take my **change** and the **sales slip**, **put** all my purchases **into the carrier bag** and leave the shop. However, sometimes it happens that I lack **small change** so I can pay **by card**. I just **insert** my **card into** the **chip and pin** device, **key in** my **PIN number** and then **remove** the card. A very easy system! But there are some things that I really can't stand at the supermarkets. These are **long queues** at the cash-desks and a lack of **self-service payment machines**.

b) 🗣️ Now speak about the way you buy food according to the plan below.

#### **Plan**

1. How often you buy foodstuffs
2. Shops and departments you usually prefer
3. Food you usually buy there
4. The process of shopping for food
5. Reasons you like or hate shopping for food



40

a) Choose the correct article or pronoun to complete the text.

Today I'm having **1. a / some** picnic. I'm going to get most of **2. some / the** food at my local delicatessen – **3. some / the** deli in Dorset Road. Now I need **4. any / some** good bread and **5. a / some** cheese too. I also want to pick up **6. some / the** Greek olives, but they don't have **7. some / any** at the Italian deli. I'll need to get them later. Now what else? Bread, cheese, olives... and lettuce. I'll get **8. the / any** lettuce later when I buy **9. a / the** olives.

b) Choose the correct word to complete the dialogue.

A: Let's make a list of what we need to buy for Beth's party.

B: Yes, write down six **1. bottles / cartons** of diet soda.

A: OK. We also need ten **2. packets / jars** of crisps.

B: Don't forget the biscuits!

A: What about sandwiches?

B: Oh, we need a **3. loaf / lump** of bread and twenty **4. loaves / slices** of cheese.

A: We should get **5. a / some** broccoli and celery for the vegetable pie, too.

B: What else do we need to buy?

A: How about **6. a / some** large cheesecake and **7. some / any** pastries from the bakery?

B: Great idea! OK, I think that should be enough.



c) Fill in the gaps with *much, many, how much* or *how many*.

A: I'm going to the supermarket to get the ingredients to make the chocolate cake.

B: OK, but what do we need? **1. \_\_\_\_\_** flour have we got?

A: None at all. **2. \_\_\_\_\_** bags should I get?

B: Two, please. **3. \_\_\_\_\_** sugar is there in the bag?

A: It's almost full but we haven't got **4. \_\_\_\_\_** eggs. There are just three in the fridge.

B: That's OK. Three is enough. One more thing, though, **5. \_\_\_\_\_** bars of cooking chocolate are there in the cupboard?

A: There are two.

B: We'll need two more, then. I think that's everything. I hope that's not too **6. \_\_\_\_\_** things for you to carry.

A: No, it won't be a problem. But I don't have **7. \_\_\_\_\_** time before the supermarket closes.

B: You'd better hurry, then.



41

Put each verb into the Present Indefinite (Passive Voice) tense form. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

**1.** Supermarkets \_\_\_\_\_ (*pack*) with different kinds of goods. **2.** Glass \_\_\_\_\_ (*use*) to keep food fresh. **3.** Food \_\_\_\_\_ (*sell*) ready-weighed and packed in our local shop. **4.** Fish \_\_\_\_\_ (*tin*) as it has a long shelf life. **5.** Many kinds of products



\_\_\_\_\_ (*display*) on lines of counters. **6.** Coffee and tea \_\_\_\_\_ (*sell*) at the dry grocer's. **7.** Food items \_\_\_\_\_ (*pack*) for better transportation. **8.** Customers \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) to different floors by escalators. **9.** Raspberry \_\_\_\_\_ (*keep*) in wooden baskets to stay fresh and safe. **10.** Skirts and blouses \_\_\_\_\_ (*choose*) in the women's clothing department. **11.** Plastic containers \_\_\_\_\_ (*use*) to pack take-away food. **12.** Seafood and fish \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) at the fishmonger's. **13.** Woollen jackets \_\_\_\_\_ (*usually/buy*) in the knitted goods department. **14.** Various goods \_\_\_\_\_ (*sell*) under one roof in big department stores. **15.** Sweets \_\_\_\_\_ (*pack*) in paper boxes. **16.** Liquid food \_\_\_\_\_ (*store*) in glass bottles or jars. **17.** Foodstuffs \_\_\_\_\_ (*weigh*) and \_\_\_\_\_ (*pack*) in supermarkets. **18.** Milk \_\_\_\_\_ (*preserve*) in air-tight brick cartons. **19.** Shops \_\_\_\_\_ (*always/equip*) with vending machines. **20.** Things for sale \_\_\_\_\_ (*exhibit*) on counters so that they \_\_\_\_\_ (*easily/see*). **21.** Tasty bread \_\_\_\_\_ (*deliver*) by the local bakery every day. **22.** Goods \_\_\_\_\_ (*sometimes/order*) with the help of different catalogues. **23.** The shelves \_\_\_\_\_ (*stock*) well. **24.** Glass food containers \_\_\_\_\_ (*reuse*) many times. **25.** Fresh food \_\_\_\_\_ (*process*) and \_\_\_\_\_ (*store*) in the fridge. **26.** Frozen fish \_\_\_\_\_ (*offer*) at the fishmonger's. **27.** Aluminum cans \_\_\_\_\_ (*recycle*) several times.

42

🔊 Listen to the speaker telling about her story and answer the questions. Retell her story as if you were in her shoes.



### *She Bought a Gallon of Milk*

1. What is the girl's name?
2. What did she want to eat?
3. What did she open? What did she find there?
4. Why was she upset?
5. What did she do to solve her problem?

43

🔊 Listen to the Emma telling how to buy goods from a grocery store. fill in the gaps and retell the story as if you were Emma.

### *Buying Dairy Products*

**Emma:** Good morning! I would like to have 1. \_\_\_\_\_ eggs please.  
**Assistant:** Good morning! Anything else ma'am?  
**Emma:** Yes, three 2. \_\_\_\_\_ of milk and a 3. \_\_\_\_\_ of cheese 4. \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Assistant:** Will that be 5. \_\_\_\_\_?  
**Emma:** No. I also want two 6. \_\_\_\_\_ of condensed 7. \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Assistant:** Sure. That will be 8. \_\_\_\_\_.

44

🔊 Listen to the speakers, fill in the gaps with the information you hear and learn what to say when you need to ask for help in a supermarket.

### *1. Asking about a Specific Counter*

**Jack:** Hey. I wanted to buy 1. \_\_\_\_\_. Can you 2. \_\_\_\_\_ me out?  
**Bill:** Sure, sir. Which 3. \_\_\_\_\_ are you looking for?

**Jack:** *I'm looking for Kelloggs. On which 4. \_\_\_\_\_ will I find it?*  
**Bill:** It's counter 5. \_\_\_\_\_. It's at the 6. \_\_\_\_\_, near the 7. \_\_\_\_\_ section.  
**Jack:** *Thanks. Will I find the other brands on the 8. \_\_\_\_\_ counter?*  
**Bill:** Yes! We have all the 9. \_\_\_\_\_ brands 10. \_\_\_\_\_ there.  
**Jack:** *Okay! Thanks for your help.*  
**Bill:** You're 11. \_\_\_\_\_.

## 2. Asking for Help while Buying

**Jack:** *Hi. I want to buy some 1. \_\_\_\_\_. But I see 2. \_\_\_\_\_ displayed. Do you have more 3. \_\_\_\_\_?*  
**Mary:** I'm not sure, sir. Which brand do you 4. \_\_\_\_\_?  
**Jack:** *I don't have 5. \_\_\_\_\_. Any of them 6. \_\_\_\_\_ as long as it's not 7. \_\_\_\_\_*  
**Mary:** Actually, all the brands are almost in the same 8. \_\_\_\_\_. I am sure we have some brands in stock. Let me 9. \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Jack:** *Will it take 10. \_\_\_\_\_?*  
**Mary:** Not at all, sir. Yes, we have some. In aisle 11. \_\_\_\_\_. Look at the third 12. \_\_\_\_\_ from left.  
**Jack:** *Okay. Thanks!*

## 3. Looking for Items

**Assistant:** Is there something I can help you with?  
**Emma:** *Yes, am looking for 1. \_\_\_\_\_?*  
**Assistant:** It's in 2. \_\_\_\_\_ three right next to the store's main 3. \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Emma:** *Thank you. I will 4. \_\_\_\_\_ there.*  
**Assistant:** Welcome, sir. Do you need help with 5. \_\_\_\_\_?  
**Emma:** *No, thanks. I am still 6. \_\_\_\_\_.*

## 4. Buying Milk and Cheese

**Laura:** *Hello. Can you tell me where I can find 1. \_\_\_\_\_?*  
**Clerk:** Yes, go to 2. \_\_\_\_\_ of the store, and then turn 3. \_\_\_\_\_. You will see the 4. \_\_\_\_\_ section in 5. \_\_\_\_\_ of you.  
**Laura:** *Thank you. Will I find 6. \_\_\_\_\_ in that section?*  
**Clerk:** The cheese is located just beyond the 7. \_\_\_\_\_ products.  
**Laura:** *Thanks.*

## 5. Finding Watermelons

**Laura:** *I am looking for 8. \_\_\_\_\_. Do you have any?*  
**Clerk:** Yes, we have some watermelons in 9. \_\_\_\_\_ at the front of the store. Then, there are some 10. \_\_\_\_\_ watermelons in the produce section.  
**Laura:** *Where is the 11. \_\_\_\_\_?*  
**Clerk:** Look to your 12. \_\_\_\_\_. Do you see the 13. \_\_\_\_\_? The produce section is just past the flowers on your 14. \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Laura:** *Thank you. I can find it.*

45

👂 Listen to the speakers, fill in the gaps with the information you hear and learn what to say when you shop in a supermarket.

### 1. Talking about a Sale

Emma: Hey Sarah! Are you going shopping?

Sarah: Yes, I am. The 1. \_\_\_\_\_ has a 2. \_\_\_\_\_ going on right now.

Emma: Oh really? How did you 3. \_\_\_\_\_ to know about it?

Sarah: I saw an 4. \_\_\_\_\_ in the newspaper.

Emma: Are there any good bargains?

Sarah: Yes! There's a big 5. \_\_\_\_\_ on almost 6. \_\_\_\_\_.

Emma: Can I join you, Sarah?

Sarah: 7. \_\_\_\_\_! You're welcome.

### 2. Checkout

Laura: I have only 5 items. Can I use the 1. \_\_\_\_\_ checkout?

Clerk: I am sorry, the 2. \_\_\_\_\_ is only for 3. \_\_\_\_\_ items or less.

Laura: Okay, then I will have to 4. \_\_\_\_\_ in the regular 5. \_\_\_\_\_?

Clerk: Yes, but it won't take 6. \_\_\_\_\_. There's not a big 7. \_\_\_\_\_ today.

### 3. Getting a Refund

Emma: Excuse me. I bought this 1. \_\_\_\_\_ of noodles yesterday but it's the wrong 2. \_\_\_\_\_. I don't want it. Can you 3. \_\_\_\_\_ it please?

Assistant: Sure. You'll need to show the 3. \_\_\_\_\_.

Emma: Yes, I've got the 4. \_\_\_\_\_. Here it is.

Assistant: Thanks, you also bought a lot of 5. \_\_\_\_\_.

Emma: Yes, but I just want to return the 6. \_\_\_\_\_.

Assistant: No problems, here's your 7. \_\_\_\_\_.

46

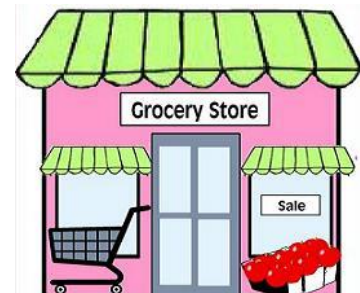
👂 You are going to listen to an interview with an owner of a grocery who talks about her shop and the products that she sells in her shop. There are three parts in it. Listen and answer the questions.

### Part 1. Introduction

- What is the woman's name?
- Where is she from?
- What does she sell in her grocery?
- What do the French customers tend to buy?

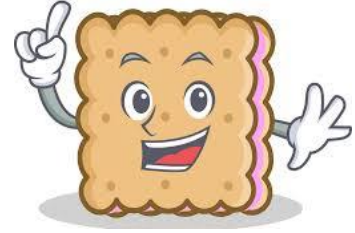
### Part 2. Products that sell very well in her shop

- How often does she make her orders?
- When and how are they delivered?
- What food does she usually order from England?
- What do the French customers sometimes ask her for?
- What products sell very well?
- What products are the most popular at Christmas?



### Part 3. Comparing shopping habits in England and in France

- How often do people do shopping in England and in France?
- When do the shops open and close?
- What types of food do they sell?
- What are school eating habits in both countries?



47

#### Translate into English.



1. В наш час ходіння по магазинах стало справжнім тягарем для багатьох людей. На покупців впливає реклама, велика кількість товарів у яскравих упаковках на прилавках і вибір модного одягу і взуття, який постійно змінюється. Покупці постійно стикаються з проблемою – як вибрати більш якісний товар, щоб не витратити даремно гроші. У різних газетних і журнальних статтях ми можемо прочитати поради психологів та економістів про те, як стати розумним покупцем. Ось деякі з них: відвідайте кілька магазинів у вашому районі, щоб можна було порівняти ціни на потрібні вам продукти; складіть список необхідних вам товарів; не ходіть у магазин за продуктами голодним – ви ризикуєте купити більше, ніж вам потрібно; “великі” покупки робіть під час розпродажі; не забувайте, що багато чого можна купити на ринку дешевше.



2. Мері щосереді ходила до супермаркету за покупками на весь тиждень. Це було зручніше, ніж ходити в невеликі магазини, тому що всі необхідні товари були розфасовані та зважені й зібрані в одному місці. Крім того, їй рідко доводилося стояти в довгій черзі. Оскільки Мері була постійним покупцем, у неї була дисконтна картка з 7% знижкою, що дозволяло їй заощаджувати певну суму грошей за рік. У неї завжди був список необхідних товарів, але іноді вона дозволяла собі купити щось по акції. Вона котила перед собою візок уздовж полиць з різноманітними товарами, дивилася на цінники і поступово наповнювала його. Підійшовши до каси, вона платила за свої покупки готівкою, одержувала решту й чек і відправлялася додому.

48

#### Complete this text with the words or expressions below.

- In excellent condition
- still in its packaging
- some wear and tear
- not in perfect condition
- as good as new
- state of the art
- the latest model
- available now
- used
- brand new
- feature
- includes

- choose from a selection of
- come in a wide range of colours and sizes
- on the market
- one of a kind
- hand-crafted
- unique
- second-hand
- made by hand

### *Let's Go Shopping the Net*



Buying and selling on the Internet has become popular in the last ten years, especially since mobile phones have become more and more essential. One of my favourite apps is *Wallapop*, which allows you to buy and sell **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ things that are **2.** \_\_\_\_\_, one click access.

Some products might be **3.** \_\_\_\_\_, but others can be **4.** \_\_\_\_\_, although I think they can't be **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ as when you get them from the shop. However, it's possible to find something **6.** \_\_\_\_\_, because the owner never opened the box or because the product was a present and he/she had already had a similar one. Things in *Wallapop* are usually **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ or with **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ and because of that, users must ask for a lower price. The app is not a shop, so of course you can't **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ models. If you are looking for online shopping, the best option is *Asos*, where you can find clothes which **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ This website **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ some filters to look for specific things, and everything is **12.** \_\_\_\_\_.

Another **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ of *Wallapop* is the possibility of finding **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ products, whose sellers have **15.** \_\_\_\_\_: brooches, necklaces, dolls... They may be **16.** \_\_\_\_\_ and probably a **17.** \_\_\_\_\_, much better than the things you can find in the traditional stores, so this is perfect if you want to have something **18.** \_\_\_\_\_. So think about it: whether you want to get **19.** \_\_\_\_\_ or you are an antique lover, the net has a lot to do for you because nowadays almost everything is **20.** \_\_\_\_\_!

49

**Complete the text with the correct words. The first letters are given.**

### *Malls or the Internet? How Do You Like to Shop?*



I'm definitely not a keen shopper – at least, I don't enjoy walking with my mates round shops, looking for **1. b**\_\_\_\_\_ in the sales and I particularly hate **2. q**\_\_\_\_\_ for ages to pay! It's much easier to shop **3. o**\_\_\_\_\_. There you can find absolutely everything you need. It's like having a whole **4. d**\_\_\_\_\_ store or a shopping **5. m**\_\_\_\_\_ at your fingertips and much, much more! By comparing websites, you get top **6. q**\_\_\_\_\_ items at **7. l**\_\_\_\_\_ prices and there is so much choice. There's no cash involved because you pay by credit **8. c**\_\_\_\_\_ (although you have to watch out for Internet **9. f**\_\_\_\_\_ and then the postman or a special **10. c**\_\_\_\_\_ delivers the goods straight to your door. Very simple! OK, sometimes you need to **11. r**\_\_\_\_\_ an item because it's damaged or maybe it's **12. f**\_\_\_\_\_ and doesn't work, but it doesn't happen often and if the site has a good reputation (and you

should only use such sites) there's no problem. It's easy to make a **13. c** \_\_\_\_\_ or ask for your money back. Remember to leave **14. f** \_\_\_\_\_ for other customers too.

50

**🔊 Listen to the speakers, fill in the gaps with the information you hear and learn what to say when you need to shop online. Retell their stories.**

### ***1. Talking about Online Deal***

**Suzy:** Hey, where did you buy this **1. \_\_\_\_\_** from?

**Lizzie:** *I **2. \_\_\_\_\_** it from *spendyourmoney.com*.*

**Suzy:** Didn't you find it **3. \_\_\_\_\_** there?

**Lizzie:** *No, not at all. It has some great **4. \_\_\_\_\_**! I got crazy **5. \_\_\_\_\_**!*

**Suzy:** How much did this **6. \_\_\_\_\_** you?

**Lizzie:** *Well, I got a 45% **7. \_\_\_\_\_** on the **8. \_\_\_\_\_** price!*

**Suzy:** Wow! That's **9. \_\_\_\_\_**. I will look at it today.

### ***2. Enquiring about Delivery***

**Lizzie:** *Hello, is it *buyawatch.com*?*

**Assistant:** Yes, **1. \_\_\_\_\_** can I help you?

**Lizzie:** *I ordered a couple of **2. \_\_\_\_\_** and they were supposed to be delivered on **3. \_\_\_\_\_** but I haven't received the **4. \_\_\_\_\_**.*

**Assistant:** May I know your **5. \_\_\_\_\_** please?

**Lizzie:** *Yes sure, it's *AK129984*.*

**Assistant:** Alright. I can see that the **6. \_\_\_\_\_** is scheduled for **7. \_\_\_\_\_** today.

**Lizzie:** *Hmm ... I was hoping for an **8. \_\_\_\_\_** delivery.*

**Assistant:** I am sorry, sir. We didn't have any **9. \_\_\_\_\_** of that particular **10. \_\_\_\_\_**, but you will **11. \_\_\_\_\_** get your watches today.

**Lizzie:** *Okay. Thank you.*

### ***3. Paying through Credit Card***

**Assistant:** Your **1. \_\_\_\_\_** amounts to **2. \_\_\_\_\_** dollars.

**Suzy:** *Do you **3. \_\_\_\_\_** credit cards? **4. \_\_\_\_\_** can I pay?*

**Assistant:** I am sorry, we don't take credit card **5. \_\_\_\_\_** on the phone for security **6. \_\_\_\_\_**. I can send you **7. \_\_\_\_\_** with an online **8. \_\_\_\_\_** that leads to a secure payment **9. \_\_\_\_\_**.

**Suzy:** *Won't that take too long?*

**Assistant:** Well, I can also mark it for **10. \_\_\_\_\_** and you can pay in **11. \_\_\_\_\_** to the delivery **12. \_\_\_\_\_**.

**Suzy:** *That's a good **13. \_\_\_\_\_**. When will he **14. \_\_\_\_\_**?*

**Assistant:** You will get this product within **15. \_\_\_\_\_**. Please keep the **16. \_\_\_\_\_** ready.

**Suzy:** *Sure. No problems.*



#### 4. Exchanging a Dress

**Lizzie:** *Hey, is it fashionfreak.com?*

**Assistant:** Yes, what can I help you **1.** \_\_\_\_\_?

**Lizzie:** *Well, I ordered a **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ from your **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ and I want to **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ it. Could you help me with this?*

**Assistant:** May I know your **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ and reason for **6.** \_\_\_\_\_?

**Lizzie:** *It's AK129984 and it is not **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ I ordered for.*

**Assistant:** Oh! Is that so. I am really sorry. Please **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ the dress to us and we will **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ the correct dress to **10.** \_\_\_\_\_.

**Lizzie:** *Hmm... Okay. I will send the dress **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ to you.*

**Assistant:** Thank you! I am really sorry for the **12.** \_\_\_\_\_.

**Lizzie:** *It's alright. I've ordered **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ from you, and this is the **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ time that this has happened.*

51

#### Translate into English.



Пересічний покупець у сучасному суспільстві періодично відвідає ті чи інші магазини, щоб забезпечити себе та свою родину всім необхідним. Але є люди, які крім звичайних магазинів, люблять відвідувати бутіки, де можна купити ексклюзивний дорогий одяг і антикварні магазини, щоб знайти унікальні стародавні речі. За останні роки з'явилися нові способи робити покупки і вони стають все більш і більш популярними серед людей. Ви можете вибрати та замовити товари на сайтах через комп'ютерну мережу (по інтернету), або за каталогом і потім замовити товари по телефону з доставкою додому чи на поштове відділення. Деякі фірми доставляють Ваші покупки додому безкоштовно. Є спеціальні сайти й навіть телевізійні програми, що допоможуть вибрати і замовити все, що в Вам сподобається. Ви можете оплатити всі покупки онлайн, під час замовлення по інтернету, кредитною карткою чи готівкою на пошті, або розрахуватися готівкою з кур'єром при доставці.

52

Now speak about the way you shop online according to the plan below.

#### Plan

1. How often you buy online
2. Your favourite sites
3. Advantages and disadvantages of shopping online
4. The procedure of shopping online



## SECTION II: CHOOSING, BUYING CLOTHES AND FOOTWEAR

### GRAMMAR:

- **Modal Verbs (Revision)**

## Clothes

### Vocabulary

Underwear	Натільна Білизна
a bikini	купальник бікіні (роздільний купальник з короткими трусиками); жіночі трусики
a body / a body-suit	комбідрес, комбінація
boxers / boxer shorts	чоловічі спідні довгі труси
a brassiere / a bra	бюстгальтер, ліфчик
• <i>a strapless ~</i>	• <i>бюстгальтер без бретельок</i>
briefs	труси
a dressing gown / a housecoat	халат
a bathrobe	банний халат
knickers	жіночі трикотажні панталони
lingerie	жіноча білизна
a nightgown / a nightdress / a nightie	нічна сорочка, пеньюар
panties	трусики
pyjamas / pajamas	піжама
a sock / socks	шкарпетка / шкарпетки
• <i>long ~ / knee-high ~</i>	• <i>гольфи</i>
• <i>anklets</i>	• <i>короткі шкарпетки</i>
a stocking / stockings	панчоха / панчохи
• <i>cotton ~</i>	• <i>бавовняні ~</i>
• <i>nylon ~</i>	• <i>нейлонові ~</i>
• <i>woolen ~</i>	• <i>вовняні ~</i>
• <i>silk ~</i>	• <i>шовкові ~</i>
• <i>sheer ~</i>	• <i>прозорі ~</i>
• <i>a hole in a ~</i>	• <i>дірка на панчосі</i>
• <i>a ladder / a run in ~</i>	• <i>спущена петля, “стрілка” (на панчосі)</i>
suspenders / braces	підтяжки
thermals / thermal underwear	термобілизна
tights / pantyhose	колготки
a vest	спідня сорочка (трикотажна, чоловіча або жіноча)
• <i>a sleeveless ~ / an undershirt</i>	• <i>майка</i>

<b>Indoor and Outdoor Wear</b>	<b>Одяг для Приміщення та Вулиці</b>
an anorak	анорак; тепла куртка на блискавці з каптуром
an apron	фартух
a beach wrap / a pareo	парео
a blouse	блузка
• <i>a silk ~</i>	• шовкова ~
• <i>a see-through ~ / a transparent ~</i>	• прозора ~
a bolero / a shrug	болеро
a cardigan	кардиган
clothes / clothing	одяг
• <i>best ~ / gala ~</i>	• вихідний, святковий ~
• <i>ready-made ~ / off-the-peg ~</i>	• готовий ~
• <i>made-to-measure ~ / tailored ~</i>	• зшитий ~
• <i>casual ~</i>	• повсякденний ~
• <i>formal ~</i>	• офіційний ~
• <i>informal ~</i>	• неофіційний ~
• <i>shabby ~ / worn-out ~</i>	• поношений, порваний, потертий ~
• <i>smart ~</i>	• елегантний, дорогий та модний ~
• <i>stylish and elegant ~</i>	• стильний та елегантний ~
• <i>spick and span ~ / neat ~</i>	• охайний ~
• <i>to change into ~</i>	• переодягнутися
• <i>baggy ~</i>	• мішкуватий ~
• <i>loose ~</i>	• просторий, широкий ~
• <i>tight ~</i>	• тісний, ~ що облягає
• <i>~ in the latest fashion</i>	• ~ за останньою модою
• <i>comfortable ~</i>	• ~, в якому комфортно
a coat / an overcoat	верхній одяг, пальто
• <i>a cloth ~</i>	• суконне пальто
• <i>a feather ~ / down-padded ~</i>	• “пуховик”
• <i>a fur ~</i>	• шуба
• <i>a fur-lined ~</i>	• пальто на хутрі
• <i>a sheepskin ~</i>	• дублянка
• <i>a ~ of severe cut</i>	• пальто строгого крою
culottes	кюлоти, спідниця-штани
a dress / a frock	1) плаття, одяг 2) сукня
• <i>a cocktail ~</i>	• коктейльна, вихідна (денна) сукня
• <i>a knitted ~</i>	• в’язана, трикотажна сукня
• <i>an evening ~</i>	• вечірня сукня

• <i>a décolleté</i> ~	• сукня з глибоким декольте
• <i>a clinging</i> ~	• облягаюча сукня
• <i>a fancy</i> ~	• маскарадний костюм
dungarees	комбінезон “кенгуру”
a glove / gloves	рукавичка / рукавички
• <i>to thrust on one's</i> ~s	• сунути руки в рукавички, натягнути на руки рукавички
a jacket	жакет; піджак; куртка
• <i>double-breasted</i> ~	• двобортний піджак
• <i>single-breasted</i> ~	• однобортний піджак
• <i>a leather</i> ~	• шкіряний піджак
• <i>a suede</i> ~	• замшевий піджак
• <i>a dinner</i> ~ / <i>a tuxedo</i> (AmE)	• смокінг
jeans / denims	джинси
a jersey	в'язаний жакет
a jumper / a sweater / a pullover	светр, пуловер
knee breeches	бриджі
leggings	легінси
a mac / a mackintosh / a raincoat	плащ, дощовик
a mitten / mittens	рукавиця / рукавиці
overalls	робочий комбінезон
a parka	парка (штормова куртка з каптуром)
a sarafan / a sun frock	сарафан
a scarf	шарф
a shirt	сорочка
• <i>a short-sleeved</i> ~	• ~ з короткими рукавами
• <i>a long-sleeved</i> ~	• ~ з довгими рукавами
• <i>a collarless</i> ~	• ~ без коміря
• <i>an embroidered</i> ~	• вишиванка
• <i>a polo</i> ~	• теніска
• <i>a turtleneck</i> ~ / <i>a turtleneck</i>	• гольф / водолазка
a shirt-blouse	англійська блузка, блузон
a skirt	спідниця
• <i>a flared</i> ~	• розкльошена ~
• <i>a pleated</i> ~	• плісирована ~
• <i>a poodle</i> ~	• ~-колокол
• <i>a straight</i> ~	• пряма ~
• <i>a pencil</i> ~	• ~-“олівець”
• <i>a tight</i> ~	• звужена, ~ що облягає

• <i>a frilly ~</i>	• ~ з оборками, рюшем
• <i>a wrap-over ~ / a wrap around ~</i>	• ~ із запахом
shorts	шорти
a suit / a costume	костюм / жіночий костюм
• <i>a business ~</i>	• діловий костюм
• <i>a denim ~</i>	• джинсовий костюм
• <i>a skirt ~</i>	• костюм зі спідницею
• <i>a trouser ~</i>	• брючний костюм
a sweatshirt	світшот (кофта в спортивному стилі), толстовка
a T-shirt	футболка
tails / a tailcoat	фрак
a tie	краватка
• <i>a bow ~</i>	• ~-метелик
a top	топік, майка-топ
• <i>a tanktop</i>	• майка на тонких бретельках
trousers / pants (AmE)	брюки; штани
• <i>flared / bell-bottomed ~</i>	• розкльошені ~
• <i>straight ~</i>	• прямі ~
• <i>tight ~</i>	• завужені ~
• <i>well-creased ~</i>	• відпрасовані зі “стрілками” ~
• <i>~ with turn-ups</i>	• ~ з манжетами
• <i>bell-bottoms</i>	• брюки кльош
a tunic	туніка
a uniform	формений одяг, уніформа, форма
a waistcoat / a vest (AmE)	жилет
wear	одяг
• <i>men's ~ / women's ~</i>	• чоловічий / жіночий ~
• <i>working ~</i>	• робочий ~; спецодяг
• <i>evening ~</i>	• вечірній (парадний) ~
a windbreaker	вітрівка
<b>Sports Clothes</b>	<b>Спортивний Одяг</b>
a blazer	яскрава фланелева спортивна куртка; блейзер
bathing / swimming trunks	плавки
leg warmers	в'язані гетри
leotards / tights	трико, “велосипедки”
an outfit	екіпірування, повний комплект одягу
a sports jacket	спортивний жакет / піджак

a suit	КОСТЮМ
• <i>a swimming ~ / a swimsuit</i>	• купальний ~
• <i>a sweat ~ / a tracksuit</i>	• спортивний ~
• <i>skating ~</i>	• ковзанярський ~
• <i>skiing ~</i>	• лижний ~
<b>Wearing Clothes</b>	<b>Носіння Одягу</b>
to be dressed / undressed	бути одягненим / роздягненим
to get dressed / undressed	одягнутися / роздягнутися
to dress	одягати(ся)
• <i>~ up / to smarten up</i>	• <i>наряджатися; причепуритися</i>
• <i>~ down</i>	• <i>одягнутися просто, по-домашньому</i>
to be loose <b>on sb.</b>	бути просторим для когось (про одяг)
to be tight <b>on sb.</b>	бути тісним для когось (про одяг)
to clash <b>against / with</b>	не підходити під пару (на вигляд, за формою, кольором), дисгармоніювати
to fit	підходити за розміром
to match / to go <b>with</b>	підходити під пару (на вигляд, за формою, кольором)
to suit / to become	підходити; личити, пасувати
to set <b>off</b>	відтіняти, підкреслювати
to let <b>out</b> clothes	робити одяг просторішим
to let <b>down</b> clothes	робити одяг довшим
to take <b>in</b> clothes	ушивати одяг
to take <b>up</b> clothes	укорочувати одяг
to try <b>on</b> clothes	приміряти одяг
to put <b>on</b> clothes	надягати одяг
to take <b>off</b> / put <b>off</b> clothes	знімати одяг
to wear <i>sth.</i> / to have <i>sth.</i> <b>on</b> / to be dressed <b>in</b> <i>sth.</i>	бути вдягненим у щось
to wear	носити одяг
• <i>~ out</i>	• <i>зношувати одяг</i>

## Main Parts of Articles of Clothing Textiles and Patterns

### Vocabulary

Main Parts of Articles of Clothing	Основні Частини Одягу
an armhole	пройма
a bodice	прилягаючий ліф (плаття)
a collar	комір, комірець



• <i>a high</i> ~	• високій ~
• <i>a frill</i> ~	• жабо; ~ з рюшем
• <i>a round</i> ~	• круглий ~
• <i>a stand-up</i> ~	• стоячий, прямий ~
• <i>a cowl neck</i> ~	• ~ “хомут”
• <i>a polo neck</i> ~	• високій загорнутий ~
• <i>a fur</i> ~ / <i>a fur-trimmed</i> ~	• оброблений, оздоблений хутром ~
• <i>to turn down</i> ~	• відвернути ~
• <i>to turn up</i> ~	• піднятий ~
a neck	горловина (сукні); викот
• <i>a round</i> ~	• круглий викот
• <i>a boat</i> ~	• виріз човником
• <i>a V-neck</i>	• виріз мисом, у формі літери V
a crease	відпрасована складка штанів
a cuff	манжета
• <i>a fur</i> ~ / <i>fur-trimmed</i> ~	• оброблена, оздоблена хутром ~
a fold / a pleat	складка, згин
a frill	оборка
a hem	поділ (сукні)
a hood	каптур, капюшон
• <i>detachable</i> ~	• знімний, відокремлюваний ~
• <i>a hoodie</i>	• толстовка з капюшоном
a lapel	одворот, лацкан
lining	підкладка
• <i>silk-lined</i>	• на шовковій підкладці
• <i>fur-lined</i>	• на хутряній підкладці
a pocket	кишеня
• <i>a breast</i> ~	• нагрудна ~
• <i>a front</i> ~	• передня ~
• <i>a hip</i> ~	• задня ~ штанів
• <i>an inside</i> ~	• внутрішня ~
• <i>an inset</i> ~	• вставна ~
• <i>a side</i> ~	• бокова ~
• <i>a patch</i> ~	• накладна ~
• <i>to thrust one's hands into</i> ~s	• засунути руки в кишені
a sleeve	рукав
• <i>a long</i> ~ / <i>a short</i> ~	• довгий / короткий ~
• <i>a loose</i> ~	• просторий, широкий ~

• <i>a puffed ~</i>	• ~ з буфами, воланами
• <i>a raglan ~</i>	• реглан, приспущений ~
• <i>a three-quarter ~</i>	• ~ довжиною у три чверті
• <i>a turn-up ~</i>	• загорнутий ~
• <i>a padded ~</i>	• підбитий, з плічками ~
• <i>a capped ~</i>	• дуже короткий та маленький ~
• <i>a batwing ~</i>	• ~ по формі крила кажана
• <i>sleeveless</i>	• безрукавний, без рукавів
a slit	розріз
• <i>a side ~</i>	• боковий ~
• <i>a deep ~</i>	• глибокий ~
a trouser leg	штанина
<b>Fasteners and Accessories</b>	<b>Застібки та Фурнітура</b>
a belt	пояс, ремінь, пасок
• <i>a leather ~</i>	• шкіряний ремінь
• <i>a beaded ~</i>	• вишитий бісером пояс
• <i>to tie up ~ / to untie ~</i>	• зав'язувати / розв'язувати пояс
• <i>to loosen ~</i>	• послабляти ремінь
• <i>to tighten ~</i>	• затягувати ремінь
a button	гудзик
• <i>a ~ hole</i>	• петля; петелька; петлиця
• <i>to sew on a ~</i>	• нашивати гудзик
• <i>to button (up) / to do up</i>	• застібати (на) гудзики
• <i>to unbutton / to undo</i>	• розстібати гудзики
a buckle / a clasp	пряжка / застібка
• <i>to buckle / to clasp</i>	• зацібати пряжку
a drawstring	пояс-шнурок, пасок
to fasten / to unfasten	застібати / розстібати
a fastening	застібка
• <i>a loop ~</i>	• ~ на петлях
• <i>an invisible ~</i>	• невидима, непомітна ~
a fly	гульфік, ширінка (у штанів)
• <i>to zip / to do up</i>	• застібати ширінку
• <i>to unzip / to undo</i>	• розстібати ширінку
hook and eye	застібка на гачках
a lace	шнурок; шнурівка
• <i>cross lacing</i>	• перехресна шнурівка
• <i>to lace (up) / to do up</i>	• шнурувати / зав'язувати шнурки
• <i>to unlace / to undo</i>	• розшнуровувати / розв'язувати шнурки

lace	мереживо
• <i>with ~ trimming / laced</i>	• <i>оздоблений, прикрашений мереживом</i>
a popper	кнопка для одягу (маленька, внутрішня)
a press stud / a snap fastener	кнопка для одягу (велика, ззовні)
trimming	обробка, оздоблення, прикраси
• <i>lace ~</i>	• <i>оздоблення мереживом</i>
• <i>leather ~</i>	• <i>оздоблення шкірою</i>
• <i>fur ~</i>	• <i>оздоблення хутром</i>
to trim <b>with</b> / to decorate <b>with</b>	прикрашати, оздоблювати
• <i>~ embroidery</i>	• <i>~ вишивкою</i>
• <i>~ decorative stitching</i>	• <i>~ декоративними строчками, швами</i>
• <i>~ sequin</i>	• <i>~ блискітками</i>
• <i>~ beads</i>	• <i>~ намистинами, бісером</i>
Velcro / Velcroed	липучка / на липучках
a zip / a zipper	застібка-блискавка
• <i>to zip / to unzip</i>	• <i>застібати / розстібати блискавку</i>
<b>Textiles</b>	<b>Тканини</b>
cashmere	кашемір
corduroy	рубчастий вельвет
cotton	бавовна
denim	джинс
fabric	тканина, матерія
• <i>drip-dry ~</i>	• <i>швидковисихаюча ~</i>
• <i>fading ~ / fadable ~</i>	• <i>линяюча ~</i>
• <i>no-iron ~</i>	• <i>~, що не потребує прасування</i>
• <i>water-resistant ~ / water-proof ~</i>	• <i>водостійка ~</i>
• <i>(machine) washable ~</i>	• <i>~, яку можна прати (в машині)</i>
• <i>uncreasable ~ / crease-proof ~</i>	• <i>~, що не мнеться</i>
• <i>unshrinkable ~</i>	• <i>безусадочна (не втрачає форму) ~</i>
flannel	фланель
fleece	тканина з начосом
fur	хутро
• <i>artificial ~</i>	• <i>штучне ~</i>
• <i>arctic fox ~</i>	• <i>~ песця</i>
• <i>chinchilla ~</i>	• <i>шиншилове ~</i>
• <i>fox ~</i>	• <i>лисяче ~</i>
• <i>mink ~</i>	• <i>~ норки</i>
• <i>rabbit ~</i>	• <i>кроляче ~</i>
• <i>sable ~</i>	• <i>соболеве ~</i>

• <i>silver fox</i> ~	• ~ чорно-бурої лисиці
knitted	в'язана тканина
linen	льон, (ляне) полотно
leather	шкіра
• <i>artificial</i> ~	• штучна ~
• <i>genuine</i> ~	• справжня ~
• <i>patent</i> ~	• лакована ~
nylon	нейлон
polyester	поліефірне синтетичне волокно
silk	шовк
• <i>artificial</i> ~	• штучний ~
• <i>natural</i> ~	• натуральний ~
suede	замша
velvet	оксамит
viscose / rayon	віскоза
wool	вовна
• <i>pure</i> ~ / <i>virgin</i> ~	• натуральна ~
• <i>semi-</i> ~	• напіввовна
<b>Patterns and Prints</b>	<b>Малюнки, Візерунки та Принти</b>
abstract	абстракція, абстрактний
checked	у клітинку, картатий
floral / flowery	квітковий візерунок
plain	одноколірний, без візерунка
polka-dotted / polka dot	у горошок
striped	у смужку
• <i>pinstriped</i>	• у тонку смужку
spotted	плямистий, з нечітким візерунком
tartan	шотландка, картатий малюнок
tie-dye	варьонка
garish / loud / flamboyant	занадто яскравий, кричущий

**1** Find silent consonant letters in the given words. Transcribe and translate them.

- |             |                |               |                |
|-------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. knickers | 6. knee-high   | 11. stockings | 16. jacket     |
| 2. nightie  | 7. see-through | 12. tights    | 17. mackintosh |
| 3. socks    | 8. beach wrap  | 13. knitted   | 18. frock      |
| 4. match    | 9. V-neck      | 14. tracksuit | 19. turtleneck |
| 5. buckle   | 10. stitching  | 15. patch     | 20. fastener   |

2

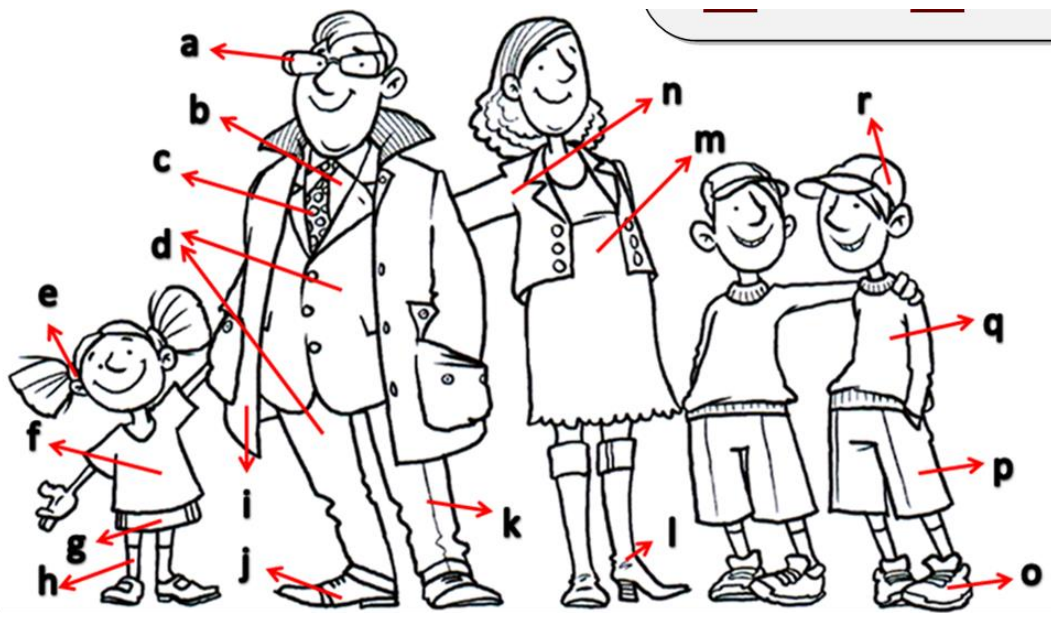
Match the words in the box to the picture below.

### What Are They Wearing?

- blouse
- boot
- Cap
- coat
- dress
- glasses

- hairband
- jacket
- pullover
- shirt
- shorts
- skirt

- sock
- suit
- tie
- trainer
- shoe
- trousers



3

Match the words and phrases with their definitions.

1. *an anorak*

a) a knitted woolen sweater that you can fasten at the front with buttons or a zip

2. *a jersey*

b) a long coat, typically having a belt, made from waterproof or water-resistant fabric

3. *a parka*

c) a kind of jacket which is often worn by members of a particular group, especially schoolchildren and members of a sports team

4. *dungarees*

d) a piece of woolen clothing that covers the upper part of body and arms usually put on by pulling it over the head

5. *a hood*

e) pieces of clothing which have one section that covers your thumb and another section that covers your four fingers together

6. *a blazer*

f) a jacket or a coat which has a thick lining and a hood with fur round the edge

7. *briefs* **g)** a long, loose piece of clothing which you wear over your night clothes when you are not in bed
8. *gloves* **h)** a sleeveless piece of clothing with buttons, which people usually wear over a shirt
9. *a pullover* **i)** a single piece of clothing that combines trousers and a jacket worn over your clothes in order to protect them while you are working
10. *lining* **j)** a loose, warm sweater, typically made of cotton, worn when exercising or as leisurewear
11. *a cardigan* **k)** a waterproof jacket, typically with a hood, of a kind originally used in polar regions
12. *a mac* **l)** a knitted piece of clothing that covers the upper part of body, arms and does not open at the front, usually worn over a shirt or a blouse
13. *overalls* **m)** a one-piece garment consisting of trousers, a piece of cloth which covers your chest, and straps which go over your shoulders
14. *mittens* **n)** a very delicate cloth made with a lot of holes in it
15. *a waistcoat* **o)** a black or white jacket worn by men for formal social events
16. *a dressing gown* **p)** pieces of clothing which cover your hands and wrists and have individual sections for each finger
17. *lingerie* **q)** the edge of a piece of clothing that is folded over and stitched down to prevent threads coming loose
18. *an outfit* **r)** a set of outer clothes made of the same fabric and designed to be worn together, typically consisting of a jacket and trousers or a jacket and a skirt
19. *a sweatshirt* **s)** a very brief two-piece swimsuit for women
20. *a hem* **t)** close-fitting legless underpants that are cut so as to cover the body to the waist, in contrast to a bikini
21. *lace* **u)** a device for fastening clothes. It consists of two pieces of plastic or metal, which you press together
22. *a tuxedo* **v)** a fastener for clothes or other items, consisting of two plastic strips, which you press together to close
23. *a suit* **w)** a layer of different material covering the inside surface of clothing in order to make it thicker or warmer
24. *a bikini* **x)** a triangular bag-like back part of a coat, which you can pull up to cover your head
25. *a popper* **y)** a set of clothes worn together, especially for a particular occasion or purpose
26. *Velcro* **z)** women's underwear and nightclothes



4

Match each of the following fasteners with the correct picture.

 buckle

 hook and eye

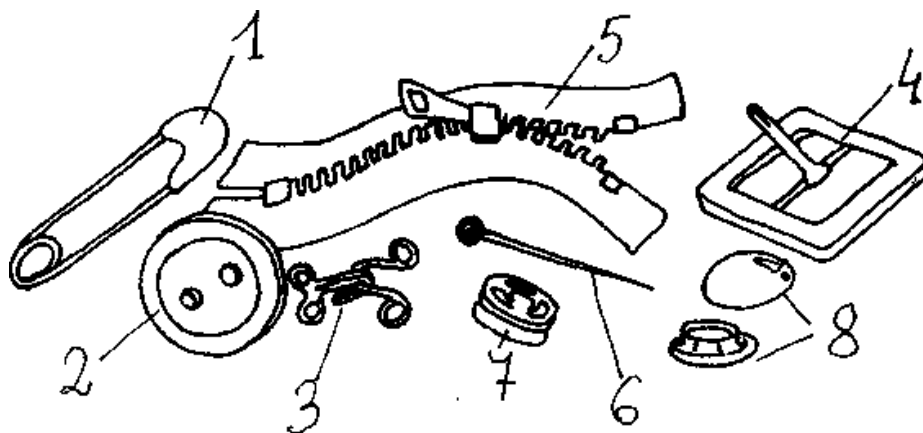
 press stud

 pin

 button

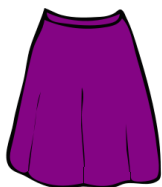
 zipper

 safety-pin

 popper


5

Give the English equivalents to the words and phrases given. Be ready to use them in the sentences of your own.



бавовняні труси у квіточку, мереживний бюстгальтер без бретельок, шовковий халат з поясом, махровий халат з каптуром, вишукана та дорога жіноча білизна, віскозна нічна сорочка без комірця та рукавів, бавовняні в'язані шкарпетки,

смугаста флісова піжама, нейлонові прозорі панчохи без дірок та стрілок, широкі підтяжки, товсті колготки, довга майка у горошок, анорак на блискавці з каптуром, квічастий фартух з рюшами, теплий кардиган з великими гудзиками, шовкова однотонна прозора блуза, стильний та елегантний нарядний одяг, модний готовий одяг, повсякденний зручний одяг, поношений старий одяг, одяг за останньою модою, довга соболева шуба, коротка норкова шуба, біла дублянка з манжетами з чорно-бурої лисиці, елегантна облягаюча коктейльна сукня, яскравий маскарадний костюм, довга вечірня сукня з вишивкою та блискітками, джинсовий комбінезон “кенгуру”, натягнути на руки шкіряні рукавички, замшевий двобортний піджак, шкіряна курточка на кнопках із вставними кишенями, забруднений робочий комбінезон, лляна сорочка в клітинку з короткими рукавами, плісирована розкльошена спідниця, червона спідниця-“олівець”, простора спідниця на запах, діловий костюм із спідницею, бавовняна трикотажна сорочка, прямі зі складками штани, вельветові штани з декоративними строчками, водостійка вітрівка, поліестеровий спортивний костюм з каптуром, застібати на гудзики пальто, засунути руки в задні кишені штанів, розстібати та знімати плащ, передні накладні кишені на липучках.

**6**

You see four words in each line. One word doesn't go with the rest for some reason. You have to spot and tick (✓) the odd one. There can be different reasons.

<i>a</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>c</i>	<i>d</i>
1. <i>trousers</i>	<i>culottes</i>	<i>denims</i>	<i>leggings</i>
2. <i>nightdress</i>	<i>pyjamas</i>	<i>bathrobe</i>	<i>dress</i>
3. <i>skirt</i>	<i>blouse</i>	<i>tunic</i>	<i>shirt</i>
4. <i>skating suit</i>	<i>swimming suit</i>	<i>skirt suit</i>	<i>tracksuit</i>
5. <i>knee-high socks</i>	<i>stockings</i>	<i>leg warmers</i>	<i>tights</i>
6. <i>sleeveless vest</i>	<i>body</i>	<i>undershirt</i>	<i>T-shirt</i>
7. <i>sweater</i>	<i>coat</i>	<i>jacket</i>	<i>windbreaker</i>
8. <i>dungarees</i>	<i>pyjamas</i>	<i>overalls</i>	<i>shorts</i>
9. <i>suede jacket</i>	<i>jersey</i>	<i>jumper</i>	<i>cardigan</i>
10. <i>fancy dress</i>	<i>tuxedo</i>	<i>tails</i>	<i>sun frock</i>
11. <i>clothes</i>	<i>stockings</i>	<i>wear</i>	<i>lingerie</i>
12. <i>tights</i>	<i>mittens</i>	<i>gloves</i>	<i>socks</i>
13. <i>down-padded coat</i>	<i>raincoat</i>	<i>fur coat</i>	<i>sheepskin coat</i>
14. <i>culottes</i>	<i>skirt</i>	<i>dress</i>	<i>apron</i>
15. <i>sarafan</i>	<i>tunic</i>	<i>blouse</i>	<i>jersey</i>
16. <i>bra</i>	<i>briefs</i>	<i>bikini</i>	<i>boxers</i>
17. <i>jeans</i>	<i>knee breeches</i>	<i>shorts</i>	<i>trousers</i>
18. <i>zipper</i>	<i>buckle</i>	<i>press stud</i>	<i>Velcro</i>
19. <i>pocket</i>	<i>a lace</i>	<i>cuff</i>	<i>collar</i>
20. <i>belt</i>	<i>bow tie</i>	<i>scarf</i>	<i>tie</i>
21. <i>lapel</i>	<i>hood</i>	<i>vest</i>	<i>sleeve</i>
22. <i>flowery</i>	<i>plain</i>	<i>suede</i>	<i>polka dot</i>
23. <i>spotted</i>	<i>knitted</i>	<i>checked</i>	<i>pinstriped</i>
24. <i>decorative stitching</i>	<i>beads</i>	<i>embroidery</i>	<i>lace</i>
25. <i>hook and eye</i>	<i>zipper</i>	<i>button</i>	<i>tie</i>
26. <i>mink</i>	<i>fleece</i>	<i>sable</i>	<i>fox</i>
27. <i>suspenders</i>	<i>tights</i>	<i>trousers</i>	<i>shorts</i>

**7**

Choose the right answer.

- The boxer in the dark \_\_\_\_\_ is sure to win. He is far better than the other one.  
*a. costume*      *b. pants*      *c. trousers*      *d. trunks*
- Why don't you wear a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ when you do the washing up?  
*a. apron*      *b. cloth*      *c. duster*      *d. towel*
- The most expensive \_\_\_\_\_ coats are made of mink.  
*a. feather*      *b. fur*      *c. fir*      *d. skin*
- I must get a new suit, because this one is completely \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. finished*      *b. run out*      *c. used up*      *d. worn out*

5. When I was invited to a \_\_\_\_\_-dress party last week, I went as an angel and I was in a beautiful two-winged costume.  
*a. fancy*                      *b. funny*                      *c. historical*                      *d. masquerade*
6. I'm afraid those clothes are not at all \_\_\_\_\_ for the occasion.  
*a. fitted*                      *b. matching*                      *c. suitable*                      *d. suiting*
7. It was not a grand occasion, so we were asked to wear \_\_\_\_\_ clothes.  
*a. cheap*                      *b. informal*                      *c. simple*                      *d. unofficial*
8. It's a good idea to be \_\_\_\_\_ dressed when you go for an interview.  
*a. boldly*                      *b. clearly*                      *c. finely*                      *d. smartly*
9. I'm the only one at this party in a long dress – I feel quite out of \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. place*                      *b. order*                      *c. practice*                      *d. turn*
10. He couldn't find two that matched, so he was forced to wear \_\_\_\_\_ socks.  
*a. mixed*                      *b. odd*                      *c. uneven*                      *d. unlike*
11. After joining the tennis club, Pete started wearing a smart \_\_\_\_\_ with a badge on the pocket.  
*a. blazer*                      *b. cardigan*                      *c. tunic*                      *d. waistcoat*
12. It's a smart restaurant and men have to wear a \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. coat*                      *b. dress*                      *c. suit*                      *d. scarf*
13. He was wearing a dark green tie over his cream \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. blouse*                      *b. jacket*                      *c. scarf*                      *d. shirt*
14. Mr. Smith arrived wearing a suit, but he put on his \_\_\_\_\_ before going into the workshop.  
*a. overalls*                      *b. overcoat*                      *c. overwork*                      *d. underclothes*
15. She \_\_\_\_\_ her overcoat, took it off and laid it over a chair.  
*a. uncovered*                      *b. unbuttoned*                      *c. untied*                      *d. unwrapped*
16. When it is very hot, you may \_\_\_\_\_ the top button of your shirt.  
*a. unwrap*                      *b. undress*                      *c. undo*                      *d. untie*
17. My \_\_\_\_\_ broke on my way to work today and my skirt nearly fell down.  
*a. coat*                      *b. hook*                      *c. buckle*                      *d. zip*
18. That man's coat has such wide shoulders, they must be \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. padded*                      *b. quilted*                      *c. stuffed*                      *d. starched*
19. I like the large \_\_\_\_\_ in your skirt.  
*a. creases*                      *b. hems*                      *c. pleats*                      *d. wrinkles*
20. \_\_\_\_\_ your coat. The wind is very cold today.  
*a. Do up*                      *b. Make up*                      *c. Put off*                      *d. Take on*
21. If your belt is too tight, you should \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
*a. loose*                      *b. lengthen*                      *c. loosen*                      *d. release*
22. My mother doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ buttons on my shirts.  
*a. attaching*                      *b. connecting*                      *c. fixing*                      *d. sewing*
23. Lisa was wearing a white dress, with \_\_\_\_\_ pockets.  
*a. cuffed*                      *b. creased*                      *c. patch*                      *d. knitting*

8

Complete the word in each sentence. Each space represents one letter:



1. It's cold today. She is going to put on a thick s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ . 2. When it's hot outside, I like to wear a s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ . 3. Graham usually wears a leather j \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ . 4. My trousers are falling down! I must buy a b \_ \_ \_ . 5. It's too hot for trousers. I'm going to wear my s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ . 6. Let's roll up our shirt s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ and start work. 7. I can't wear these jeans! They are too t \_ \_ \_ \_ . 8. I bought this lovely silk b \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ in China. 9. I'm never cold as long as I wear my woolly u \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ . 10. I've eaten too much – I'll have to l \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ my belt. 11. Ann looked very severe in her black dress with a white collar and white c \_ \_ \_ \_ . 12. He turned up his c \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ to protect his neck from the cold wind. 13. I've almost finished making my dress for the birthday party but I've still got to sew up the h \_ \_ and sew on some b \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ . 14. My father always wears a blue silk handkerchief in his b \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ pocket. 15. Do up your l \_ \_ \_ \_ or you'll fall over. 16. In the summer I always wear shirts with short s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ . 17. My w \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ sweater used to be bigger and brighter than this. 18. Workers need c \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ made of crease-proof material. 19. I can't f \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ this skirt, it's too t \_ \_ \_ \_ . 20. I don't want a pattern. I prefer just a p \_ \_ \_ \_ colour. 21. Children usually sleep wearing p \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ . 22. Policemen must wear a u \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ .

9

Choose the most suitable word or phrase in each sentence.



1. When Peter answered the door, he was wearing his pyjamas and his **dressing gown / nightdress**. 2. You get really dirty repairing a car unless you wear a **jumper / overalls / underwear**. 3. I did not get wet in the rain because I had put on my **plastic mac / overcoat / tights**. 4. When it snows, Freda always wears a/an **anorak / glove / scarf** around her neck. 5. My hands were cold so I put them in my **jacket / pockets / sleeves**. 6. Mary was given a lovely **fur / hair / skin** coat for her birthday. 7. The waitresses in this restaurant all wear white **aprons / dungarees / uniforms**. 8. When Bill goes to a party, he always wears a **bow / butterfly / knot** tie. 9. When short skirts became unfashionable, I asked my mom to **prolong / let down / taken in** all my dresses. 10. He was so wet after the storm that he went to his room to **try on / put on / change** his clothes. 11. If you are going to stay, why don't you **move off / take off / put off** your coat? 12. You have a(n) **gap / hole / opening** in the sleeve of your sweater. 13. That dress isn't really tight. It'll **expand / stretch** when you wear it. 14. It's a lovely black dress, and a brightly coloured silk scarf will set it **out / off / up** perfectly. 15. His brown tie clashes **off / out / against** his dark-blue shirt.

10

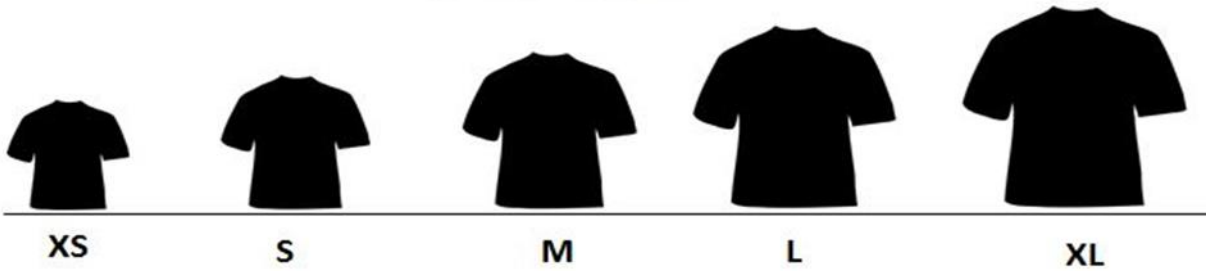
👂 Listen to the speaker and write down the items of clothing you hear in the gaps below. Translate them into Ukrainian.

- |          |           |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 7. _____  | 13. _____ | 19. _____ | 25. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 8. _____  | 14. _____ | 20. _____ | 26. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 9. _____  | 15. _____ | 21. _____ | 27. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 10. _____ | 16. _____ | 22. _____ | 28. _____ |
| 5. _____ | 11. _____ | 17. _____ | 23. _____ | 29. _____ |
| 6. _____ | 12. _____ | 18. _____ | 24. _____ | 30. _____ |

11

👂 Give the English equivalents to the pictures. Listen and check.

*Sizes*

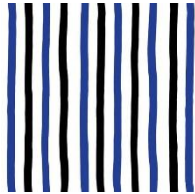


- |          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. _____ | 2. _____ | 3. _____ | 4. _____ | 5. _____ |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|

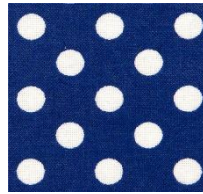
*Patterns*



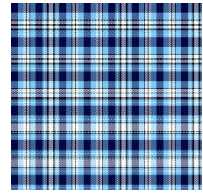
1. \_\_\_\_\_



2. \_\_\_\_\_



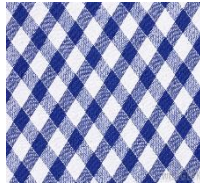
3. \_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_



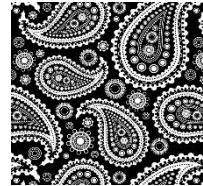
5. \_\_\_\_\_



6. \_\_\_\_\_



7. \_\_\_\_\_



8. \_\_\_\_\_

12

👂 Listen to the speaker and write down the items of underwear and sleepwear you hear in the gaps below. Translate them into Ukrainian. Which items are for men and which are for women?

a)

- |          |          |          |          |           |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 3. _____ | 5. _____ | 7. _____ | 9. _____  |
| 2. _____ | 4. _____ | 6. _____ | 8. _____ | 10. _____ |

b)

- |          |          |          |          |           |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 3. _____ | 5. _____ | 7. _____ | 9. _____  |
| 2. _____ | 4. _____ | 6. _____ | 8. _____ | 10. _____ |

c) – in some cases there are several equivalents

- |          |             |             |              |              |
|----------|-------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. _____ | 4. _____(2) | 7. _____    | 10. _____(2) | 13. _____    |
| 2. _____ | 5. _____    | 8. _____(3) | 11. _____    | 14. _____(2) |
| 3. _____ | 6. _____    | 9. _____(2) | 12. _____    | 15. _____    |

13

✎ Answer and discuss the following questions.



- 1. What kind of clothes do you usually wear? What are you wearing now? What did you wear yesterday?
- 2. What kind of clothes are in fashion now? What articles of clothing are in general wear these days?
- 3. What is your favorite piece of clothing? What clothes do you hate?
- 4. Which articles of clothes do you “collect”?
- 5. What clothes do you think look good on you? On your mother? On your friend? On your groupmates?
- 6. What traditional clothes do people in Ukraine wear? When do they / you wear them? Are they comfortable?
- 7. Have you ever felt uncomfortable with what you wear?
- 8. Did your parents ever make you wear something you didn’t like?
- 9. How much do you spend getting dressed to go to university? Work? Out with friends? To a party? Do the times vary much?
- 10. Would you go to a fancy-dress party? Why or why not? What would you wear? On what occasions do you dress up?
- 11. Do you like uniforms? What do you like or dislike about them?
- 12. What material is your warmest coat made of?
- 13. Do you like wearing denim?
- 14. What’s the most comfortable material?
- 15. What material are your socks made of?
- 16. What kind of shirt / t-shirt are you wearing? Does it have a V-neck? Or a hood? Or sleeves? Is it patterned or plain?
- 17. Who wears the trousers in your relationship?
- 18. Do you prefer wearing baggy or tight clothes? How do you dress? Scruff, smart, old fashioned, or trendy?
- 19. Do you usually try clothes on before you buy them?
- 20. Do you hang your clothes up, or just throw them on the floor?
- 21. Do you roll up your sleeves on a hot day?



14

**Translate into English.**

1. Моя подруга дуже любить купувати жіночу білизну: бюстгальтери, трусики-бікіні, комбідреси, майки, нічні сорочки. Коли холодно, лягаючи спати, вона завжди одягає бавовняну піжаму в горошок. А отвлітку, коли дуже спекотно, вона одягає тонку шовкову сорочку з мереживом.

2. Мій брат носить широкий та поношений одяг, який я хочу вшити, але він говорить, що цей одяг для нього зручний. Він не переймається тим, що його одяг не сидить на ньому й мішкуватий на вигляд.

3. Наша бабуся в'яже нам светри, джемperi, пуловери, джерсі, жилети, шарфи, шапочки, носки та рукавички. Вони стильні та елегантні.

4. Можна розшити цю повсякденну сукню? Вона трохи вузька для мене. Я люблю, коли одяг облягаючий, а не тісний.

5. Джек вдягається дуже швидко. Через п'ять хвилин він буде готовий.

6. Я люблю носити спідниці (короткі, довгі, прямі, кльош, плісировані, спідниці з запахом, спідниці-штани), панчохи та колготи, різні блузки, тобто нарядний одяг.

7. Моя сестра обожає широкий спортивний одяг – футболки, майки-топи, сорочки-блузки, туніки, джинси та джинсові костюми, бриджі, шорти, спортивні костюми та штани-кльош.

8. Короткі спідниці зараз дуже модні та їх усі носять, але для мене головне, щоб речі були зручними та елегантними. В моєму гардеробі багато костюмів, серед яких костюм-трійка, ділові костюми, костюми з сукнею, з спідницями та з штанами.

9. Коли вам потрібно щось відремонтувати, одягніть комбінезон, щоб не забруднитися.

10. Я бачив Ганну вчора в ресторані. Вона була бездоганно одягнена. На ній була вишукана вечірня сукня та ніжні блакитні босоніжки.

11. Моя мама не любить в'язаних речей. Вона каже, що такий одяг виглядає мішкувато та старомодно.

15

**Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the given words. Pay attention to tense forms of the verbs.**

dress – wear – put on

1. People do not \_\_\_\_\_ very long coats nowadays. 2. Students normally \_\_\_\_\_ very informally. 3. I took a bath, \_\_\_\_\_ and went out. 4. They usually \_\_\_\_\_ jeans and sweaters. 5. There is someone at the door. You should \_\_\_\_\_ your dressing-gown before you open it. 6. She didn't want to \_\_\_\_\_ her raincoat and took an umbrella instead. 7. Yesterday at her brother's birthday party she \_\_\_\_\_ a very pretty blouse. 8. They were \_\_\_\_\_ in jeans and sweaters. 9. I saw that he

\_\_\_\_\_ his new sweater in front of the mirror. **10.** Employees must \_\_\_\_\_ smart clothes to the office. **11.** How were they \_\_\_\_\_? **12.** What were they \_\_\_\_\_? **13.** She took off her shoes and \_\_\_\_\_ her slippers. **14.** She quickly \_\_\_\_\_ the child. **15.** It's informal. There is no need to \_\_\_\_\_ up.

**fit - match - suit - clash**

**1.** I think this plain cotton frock will \_\_\_\_\_ me, I want something for everyday wear. **2.** You must buy grey gloves to \_\_\_\_\_ your hat. **3.** That orange scarf \_\_\_\_\_ terribly with her green coat. **4.** Buy a green hat, this colour \_\_\_\_\_ you more than any other. **5.** The suit was badly made and didn't \_\_\_\_\_ him properly. **6.** That's a nice dress. It \_\_\_\_\_ you perfectly. **7.** The black dress \_\_\_\_\_ her properly now when she's lost some weight. **8.** The blue of her dress \_\_\_\_\_ the blue of her eyes. **9.** That green dress \_\_\_\_\_ the girl with the blonde hair. **10.** Her black bag \_\_\_\_\_ her shoes. **11.** Red doesn't usually \_\_\_\_\_ people with ginger hair. **12.** Those shoes don't \_\_\_\_\_ the boy any more. He's grown out of them. **13.** I wonder if the wedding dress still \_\_\_\_\_ me? **14.** I can't wear red – it \_\_\_\_\_ with my auburn hair. **15.** It's funny but the yellow jacket and the black skirt actually \_\_\_\_\_ quite well. They don't \_\_\_\_\_. **16.** This suit doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ you, it's tight in the shoulders. **17.** Steve was wearing a red silk shirt that didn't \_\_\_\_\_ him at all. **18.** Choose bright colours, but make sure they don't \_\_\_\_\_. **19.** His socks don't \_\_\_\_\_ his trousers. **20.** I felt slightly out of place and was conscious that my jacket and trousers didn't quite \_\_\_\_\_.

**16**

**Correct any errors in these sentences. Some sentences contain no errors.**



**1.** This shirt is too small, it's not my number. **2.** You have so many clothes. Why did you buy this cloth as well? **3.** What costume did you wear to the fancy-dress party? **4.** Joan was dressed completely in white. **5.** I like your new trouser. How much was it? **6.** Excuse me for a moment. I have to wear some different clothes. **7.** As far as I can see, the man in this photograph wears a suit. **8.** The blouse is a good fit, but it isn't a very good suit. **9.** What are you wearing to the party this evening? **10.** You're soaked! Put out your clothes immediately! **11.** This bag suits your shoes and it looks great. **12.** I've bought a crystal bra today.

**17**

**Choose the most suitable word or phrase to complete each sentence.**

- When you saw Jack at the dance, what did he \_\_\_\_\_?  
*a. wear*                      *b. have on*                      *c. dress*                      *d. put on*
- My hands were so cold that I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ my coat buttons.  
*a. open*                      *b. remove*                      *c. put out*                      *d. undo*
- Those trousers are far too big. Why don't you have them \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. taken in*                      *b. let out*                      *c. taken up*                      *d. let in*

4. I don't think that purple shirt \_\_\_\_\_ with your yellow skirt.  
*a. suits                      b. fits                      c. goes                      d. wears*
5. You look really silly! Your pullover is on \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. upside down      b. inside out      c. round and round      d. side by side*
6. I went shopping today and bought a new winter \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a. costume              b. outfit              c. suit                      d. clothing*
7. If I wear a long-sleeved shirt, I usually \_\_\_\_\_ the sleeves.  
*a. put up                      b. take up                      c. roll up                      d. get up*
8. You're too fat! You have definitely \_\_\_\_\_ that roll necked jumper!  
*a. grown out of      b. put away              c. worn out                      d. tried on*
9. That skirt is very short. Why don't you have it \_\_\_\_\_?  
*a. left out                      b. set in                      c. let down                      d. taken round*
10. If you work in a bank, you can't get away with wearing a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ shirt.  
*a. long-sleeved      b. short-sleeved      c. starched                      d. open-necked*

18

👂 Listen to the speaker telling about shopping. Fill in the gaps. Is your opinion similar?

### Shopping for Clothes

I have 1. \_\_\_\_\_ clothes. I have many clothes I've only worn once. Sometimes 2. \_\_\_\_\_ something at the back of a drawer that I 3. \_\_\_\_\_. I bought it, put it away, and then forgot about it. 4. \_\_\_\_\_ don't need so many clothes. I don't think anyone really needs 5. \_\_\_\_\_ of jeans and 32 sweaters. I won't tell you how many pairs of shoes I've got. 6. \_\_\_\_\_ embarrassing. The 7. \_\_\_\_\_ is I love clothes and I love shopping. Maybe I have a problem. I'm sure I'd be 8. \_\_\_\_\_ if I didn't buy so many clothes. I like brands, so the clothes I buy are quite expensive. 9. \_\_\_\_\_ I'm going to have a big clear-out. I'll take all the clothes I no longer wear and give them 10. \_\_\_\_\_.

19

Fill in the correct tense form of the verbs in brackets.

Sue Thomas is a fashion designer. She 1. *has been making (make)* clothes ever since she 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a young girl. She 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) her first job in a clothes factory when she 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) sixteen. She 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*sew*) buttons onto a shirt one day when she 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a brilliant idea for a design. After she 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*speak*) to her bank manager, she 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) a loan and she 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*open*) her own little workshop. Now she 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) lots of money. Next year she 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*open*) a shop which will sell all her own designs. She 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*sell*) clothes to a lot of famous people, including film stars and singers, and she 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*) she 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) very rich soon.



20

**Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions where necessary.**

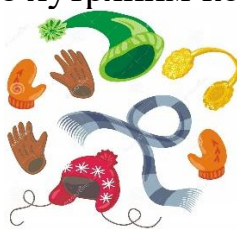


1. Try \_\_\_\_\_ this jacket, if it's a little too long \_\_\_\_\_ the waist, we'll take it \_\_\_\_\_. 2. Jack thrust his hands \_\_\_\_\_ his pockets and began to smile. 3. The young lady who entered the office was dressed \_\_\_\_\_ black. 4. I must first take a bath and change \_\_\_\_\_ fresh clothes. 5. Dark shades of brown suit \_\_\_\_\_ her, they set \_\_\_\_\_ her white skin and auburn hair. 6. Dresses trimmed \_\_\_\_\_ fur are \_\_\_\_\_ vogue now. 7. The skirt is too short – it needs letting \_\_\_\_\_. 8. Besides being \_\_\_\_\_ fashion, this coat is frayed \_\_\_\_\_ the hem and is no more fit \_\_\_\_\_ wear. 9. One winter morning a stranger with his cap pulled \_\_\_\_\_ his ears and the collar of his overcoat turned \_\_\_\_\_ came to our shop. 10. Mary can't wear red clothes because they clash \_\_\_\_\_ her auburn hair. 11. I was told by my dressmaker that brief jackets are \_\_\_\_\_ general wear now. 12. Why don't you do \_\_\_\_\_ your coat, put \_\_\_\_\_ a hat and wrap a scarf \_\_\_\_\_ your neck? It's bitterly cold! 13. When she pulled \_\_\_\_\_ the glove, it burst \_\_\_\_\_ the seams. 14. I went to the tailor's to be measured \_\_\_\_\_ a dress. 15. Can this skirt be let \_\_\_\_\_? It is too tight. 16. I like dressing \_\_\_\_\_ for parties as I normally wear jeans. 17. You look hot in that coat. Why don't you take it \_\_\_\_\_? 18. These trousers are too long – they need taking \_\_\_\_\_.

21

**Translate into English.**

1. Я дуже люблю хутро, тому взимку я не ношу пуховик чи дублянку, а шубу, норкову чи соболину. Навесні я одягаю коричневий шкіряний плащ із хутряним коміром та манжетами або суконне пальто строгого крою.



2. Маленькі діти не вміють самі застібати гудзики та зашнурувувати черевики, ще й часто гублять дрібні предмети одягу, такі як шкарпетки, рукавички, шарфи, паски та шапки.

3. Моєму молодшому братику не вистачає кишень, щоб розмістити всі його речі. А кишень у нього багато: дві бокові, дві задні, дві накладні, одна на грудях і одна внутрішня в короткій куртці з капюшоном.

4. Її дочка любить сукні, оздоблені ніжним мереживом, рукава-фонарики, різноманітні рюшики, вишивку, намистинки, декоративні стрічки, пряжки, блискітки й таке інше.

5. Нас зустріла молода жінка в білій вишитій сорочці та темній вузькій вовняній спідниці з паском, оздобленим бісером та великою пряжкою.

6. Застібни верхній гудзик жакета, підними комір і натягни шапку на вуха, бо холодно й дме вітер. Якщо є теплі рукавиці, то краще теж їх вдягни.

7. Мій сусід дуже раціональна та практична людина. Він носить одяг, який можна прати, що швидко сохне, не линяє і який не потрібно прасувати.

8. – Такі сукні зараз у моді, але ця сукня трішки широка в талії. – Не хвилюйся, це не проблема, бо я можу тобі її вшити. Головне, що вона тобі личить, підходить до твого піджака та відтіняє твоє світле волосся.

9. У мого чоловіка завтра день народження, і я хочу купити йому сорочку і краватку. У нього, в основному, всі сорочки у смужку, тому я вибрала однотонну сорочку темно-синього кольору, вона буде прекрасно пасувати до його сірого костюма. До сорочки я купила світло-синю краватку. Я сподіваюся, нова сорочка буде добре на ньому сидіти і буде йому до лиця.

10. Моїй молодшій сестрі подобаються сукні з квітковим візерунком або в горошок. Брат любить сорочки в клітинку або смугасті, а мама обожає однобарвні костюми та спідниці в шотландку. Що ж до батька, то він любить речі з абстрактними малюнками та принтами.



11. Я хочу чорну вечірню оксамитову сукню, пошиту на замовлення, щоб носити її до театру чи в ресторан.

12. Влітку я завжди ношу легкі ситцеві, шовкові або лляні сарафани, а взимку однотонні светри з чистої шерсті, бо я надаю перевагу натуральним тканинам.

13. Мені подобається якість цього бавовняного халату, але не подобається візерунок – занадто яскравий та кричущий. Чи є у вас щось однотонне?

22

🗣️ **Speak about your preferences in clothes according to your plan. Prepare a presentation with minimum 10 slides to visualize the topic.**

## Footwear and Footwear Accessories

### Vocabulary

Parts of a Boot / Shoe	Частина Чобота / Черевика
a bootleg	халява
an instep	підйом (черевика)
an inner sole	устілка
a shoelace	шнурок
a sole	підметка, підошва
● <i>cork-soled</i>	● на корковій підошві
● <i>crepe-soled</i>	● на каучуковій підошві
● <i>thin-soled</i>	● на тонкій підошві
● <i>thick soled / heavy-soled</i>	● на товстій підошві
● <i>leather-soled</i>	● на шкіряній підошві
● <i>rubber-soled</i>	● на гумовій підошві
an eyelet	дірочка для шнурків у взутті

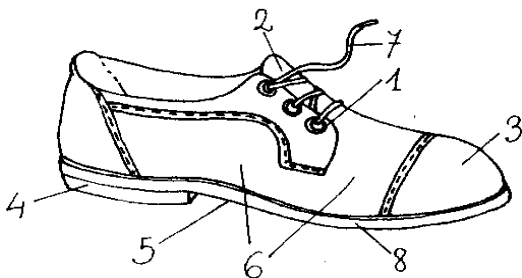
a heel	каблук, підбор
a tongue	язик (черевика)
a toe / a toe-cap	носок (черевика)
• <i>a round ~</i>	• <i>круглий ~</i>
• <i>a pointed ~</i>	• <i>загострений ~</i>
• <i>a square ~</i>	• <i>квадратний ~</i>
uppers	перед (черевика)
<b>Types of Footwear</b>	<b>Види Взуття</b>
a boot / boots	черевик / черевики, чоботи
• <i>ankle ~</i>	• <i>напівчоботи</i>
• <i>knee-high ~</i>	• <i>чоботи до колін</i>
• <i>thigh-high ~</i>	• <i>високі чоботи “ботфорти”</i>
• <i>hiking ~</i>	• <i>черевики для пішого туризму</i>
• <i>ugg ~</i>	• <i>чоботи з овечої шкіри, “уггі”</i>
• <i>fur-lined ~</i>	• <i>черевики на хутрі</i>
• <i>lace ~ / laced ~</i>	• <i>черевики на шнурках</i>
a clog	черевик на дерев'яній підошві; сабо
flip-flops	в'єтнамки
jellies / jelly shoes	силіконове взуття
loafers	м'які шкіряні черевики типу мокасин
a moccasin / moccasins	мокасини
mules	туфлі без задника
plimsolls / gym-shoes	легке спортивне взуття
rubbers / galoshes	калоші
sandals	сандалети, босоніжки
a shoe / shoes	туфля, черевик / туфлі, черевики
• <i>leather ~</i>	• <i>шкіряні туфлі</i>
• <i>patent leather ~ / glace ~</i>	• <i>лаковані туфлі</i>
• <i>suede ~ / chamois ~</i>	• <i>замшеві туфлі</i>
• <i>canvas ~</i>	• <i>полотняні, парусинові черевики</i>
• <i>evening ~</i>	• <i>вечірні (нарядні) туфлі</i>
• <i>casual ~ / ~ for everyday wear</i>	• <i>повсякденні туфлі, “на кожен день”</i>
• <i>~ for country wear</i>	• <i>черевики для заміської прогулянки</i>
• <i>walking ~</i>	• <i>туфлі для ходіння</i>
• <i>open-toe ~ / toeless ~</i>	• <i>туфлі з відкритим носиком</i>
• <i>slip-on ~</i>	• <i>туфлі без шнурівки та застібки</i>
• <i>slip-back ~ / ankle-strap ~</i>	• <i>туфлі з перетинкою на щиколотці</i>
• <i>platform ~</i>	• <i>туфлі на платформі</i>
• <i>flat ~</i>	• <i>туфлі на плоскій-ході (без підборів)</i>



• <i>low-heeled ~ / ~ with low heels</i>	• <i>туфлі на низьких підборах</i>
• <i>high-heeled ~ / ~ with high heels</i>	• <i>туфлі на високих підборах</i>
• <i>stiletto-heeled ~</i>	• <i>туфлі на тонких підборах, “шпильки”</i>
• <i>~ with wedge heel</i>	• <i>туфлі на танкетці</i>
<b>Shoes can...</b>	<b>Взуття може...</b>
• <i>pinch / wring (in toes)</i>	• <i>тиснути (у пальцях)</i>
• <i>be tight across the toes</i>	• <i>бути тісним в носках</i>
• <i>feel comfortable</i>	• <i>бути зручним</i>
• <i>be reliable / lasting</i>	• <i>бути міцним (довго носитися)</i>
• <i>stretch with wearing</i>	• <i>розтягнутися при носінні</i>
skates / (ice) skates	ролики / ковзани
slippers	кімнатні капці
sneakers	кросівки
keds	кеди
Wellingtons / gumboots	гумові чоботи
to break in shoes	розношувати взуття
to polish shoes	чистити взуття
to wear out the heels	зношувати набійки
to heel shoes	ставити набійки
to sole shoes	ставити підметки

23

Match each of the following parts of the shoe with the correct number in the picture below.



- |                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> upper  | <input type="checkbox"/> eyelet   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> instep | <input type="checkbox"/> tongue   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> sole   | <input type="checkbox"/> shoelace |
| <input type="checkbox"/> heel   | <input type="checkbox"/> toe-cap  |

24

Look at the picture of boots and shoes and tell which of them you wear

- |                               |                      |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| ✓ on a regular basis          | ✓ seasonally         |
| ✓ because of your mood        | ✓ up to conditions   |
| ✓ because of your style       | ✓ to practice sports |
| ✓ when you need to walk a lot | ✓ to dance           |
| ✓ at the seaside              | ✓ at home            |



25

Transcribe the words from the left column. Match the words and phrases with their definitions.

1. *a kitten heel*      a) shoes held in place by a strap around the ankle above the heel
2. *loafers*              b) soft shoes that people often wear for running and other sports
3. *espadrille*            c) light shoes that you wear in warm weather, which have straps instead of a solid part over the top of your foot

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| 4. <i>wedge heels</i>  | d) sandals made from brightly coloured moulded plastic  |
| 5. <i>peep toes</i>    | e) shoes or slippers, which are open around the heel  |
| 6. <i>slip-ons</i>     | f) leather shoes shaped like moccasins, with flat heels with no straps or laces                                   |
| 7. <i>flats</i>        | g) heavy leather or wooden shoes with thick wooden soles  |
| 8. <i>sneakers</i>     | h) women's shoes that have high, very narrow heels  |
| 9. <i>Wellingtons</i>  | i) a type of soft sheepskin boots originating in Australia  |
| 10. <i>sandals</i>     | j) shoes, typically having high heels, of which the heel and sole form a solid block with no gap under the instep |
| 11. <i>clogs</i>       | k) shoes having the tip cut away to leave the large toe partially exposed   |
| 12. <i>high tops</i>   | l) shoes having no fasteners and therefore able to be put on and taken off quickly                                |
| 13. <i>mules</i>       | m) shoes that have no heels or very low heels   |
| 14. <i>stilettoes</i>  | n) knee-length waterproof rubber or plastic boots   |
| 15. <i>jelly shoes</i> | o) a type of curvy heel, typically between 1 and 2 inches in height   |
| 16. <i>ugg boots</i>   | p) light canvas shoes with a plaited fibre sole   |
| 17. <i>slingbacks</i>  | q) shoes that are higher than your ankle that can be worn with a strap  |

**26** Put each of the following words in its correct place in the passage below.

bones      fit      quality      bought      pain      shape      Choose  
 place      shoes      chosen      properly      size      feet      protect

### *Shoes and Health*

Shoes should be **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ with the idea that they are made to **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ and support the **3.** \_\_\_\_\_. They should be **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ for shape, **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ and the **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ of the material. **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ is no guarantee that **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ will fit, and people should **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ shoes that follow the **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ of the foot. Only with **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ fitting shoes will the wearer avoid the **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ of having the small **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ of the foot pushed out of **14.** \_\_\_\_\_.

**27** Choose the most suitable word or phrase in each sentence.



**1.** I don't know how you manage to walk with such high **laces** / **toes** / **heels**. **2.** David had to stop three times to tie up his small daughter's **heels** / **shoelaces** / **soles**. **3.** I can't walk in these high-heeled boots. I keep **falling off** / **falling back** / **falling over**. **4.** These shoes **pinch** / **hold** / **compress**. Let me

try a larger size, please. **5.** These leather shoes are made **at hand / by hand / in hand**. **6.** The first thing he did was to **unpack / disconnect / undo** his shoelaces and take his shoes off. **7.** When she goes to the beach, she usually puts **flip-flops / high-heeled shoes / clogs** on. **8.** It was raining heavily the whole day yesterday, so he had to wear **plimsolls / mules / wellingtons**. **9.** Her new shoes pinch terribly but she hopes they will break **on / in / out** with wearing. **10.** Every morning Martha puts her **mules / slip-ons / sneakers** on and goes jogging. **11.** A business suit doesn't go with **evening shoes / stilettos / slippers**.

**28** 🎧 Listen to the speaker and write down the items you hear. Translate them into Ukrainian. Which shoes do you have? Which shoes do you like?

a)

- |          |           |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 7. _____  | 13. _____ | 19. _____ | 25. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 8. _____  | 14. _____ | 20. _____ | 26. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 9. _____  | 15. _____ | 21. _____ | 27. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 10. _____ | 16. _____ | 22. _____ |           |
| 5. _____ | 11. _____ | 17. _____ | 23. _____ |           |
| 6. _____ | 12. _____ | 18. _____ | 24. _____ |           |

b)

- |          |          |          |           |           |
|----------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 4. _____ | 7. _____ | 10. _____ | 13. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 5. _____ | 8. _____ | 11. _____ | 14. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 6. _____ | 9. _____ | 12. _____ | 15. _____ |

c)

- |          |          |          |           |           |
|----------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 4. _____ | 7. _____ | 10. _____ | 13. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 5. _____ | 8. _____ | 11. _____ |           |
| 3. _____ | 6. _____ | 9. _____ | 12. _____ |           |

**29** 🗣️ Answer and discuss the following questions.



- 1. Why do we need to wear shoes?
- 2. How many pairs of shoes do you own, and why?
- 3. Can men and women wear the same shoes?
- 4. Do you have a favorite pair of shoes?
- 5. Do you prefer comfortable boring shoes or uncomfortable fashionable shoes?
- 6. Why do men have fewer pairs of shoes than women?
- 7. What does someone's shoes tell us about that person?
- 8. Are shoes old-fashioned? Should we all wear sneakers?
- 9. Are leather shoes best? If yes, why? If no, why?
- 10. What is the best colour for shoes?

- 11. Should people take off their shoes in the house?
- 12. What kind of shoes do you hate?
- 13. What material are your shoes made of? What's the most comfortable material?
- 14. How old were you when you learnt to do up your shoe laces?

30

### Translate into English.

1. Коли я купую якісне шкіряне взуття, то спочатку воно тисне, а з часом розношується й стає зручним. Я завжди доглядаю за своїм взуттям: регулярно чищу кремом для взуття, слідкую, щоб не стоптувалися каблуки і вчасно підбиваю набійки. Моє взуття довго носить, але виходить з моди і я мушу купувати нове.



2. Йде дощ. Одягни краще гумові чоботи. Хіба ти хочеш, щоб твої нові босоніжки на тонкій підошві зіпсувалися? Вони не підходять для калюж.

3. З повсякденним одягом ділова жінка може носити однотонні шкіряні туфлі без пряжок або туфлі на високих підборах. Їй не можна носити відкриті босоніжки або туфлі з відкритим носиком. Їй зрозуміло, що кросівки, легке спортивне взуття, мокасини, сабо та туфлі без задника зовсім не підходять до ділового одягу.

4. Вечірній одяг шийють із дорогого шовку, оксамиту, шифону, мережива, тафти, атласу. А туфлі, виготовлені з тканини, повинні пасувати аксесуарам та сукні. Як правило, вони на високих шпильках, гостроносі. Вечірні туфлі можуть бути прикрашені дуже модною зараз вишивкою, бісером тощо.

5. Взуття на кожен день повинно бути зручним, надійним, добре носитися, а отже на танкетці, низьких підборах або без них.

6. Влітку я полюблюю носити різноманітні шкіряні чи замшеві босоніжки (з ремінцями позаду, з ремінцями на щиколотці), в'єтнамки, туфлі на дерев'яній підошві, туфлі з відкритим носком, балетки, парусинові туфлі та мокасини. Взимку я ношу чоботи на хутряній підкладці та з товстою підошвою або високі чоботи-ботфорти на танкетці. Коли не дуже холодно, я можу одягти напівчоботи на хутрі або теплі уггі з джинсами.

7. Діти не люблять черевики зі шнурками, бо не вміють їх правильно зав'язувати. Тому вони надають перевагу черевикам "на липучках" чи замках або кросівкам.

8. Якось у магазині я побачив модельні лаковані туфлі та вирішив приміряти їх. Вважаю, що вони якраз для сучасного чоловіка. На жаль, вони були завеликі для мене.

9. Зараз модно носити туфлі на високих підборах чи на шпильках та панчохи, а не колготки.

10. Вчора ми ходили в магазин купувати собі взуття на кожен день. Білі черевики сподобалися мені більше, ніж чорні. До них я купив шкарпетки у відділі панчішних виробів.

11. Чоловіки люблять носити спортивне взуття типу кросівок чи кедів. На них не потрібно ставити набійки чи чистити пастою і вони не тиснуть.

12. Мій брат купив собі шкіряні повсякденні туфлі, але вони були затісні і він змушений був їх розношувати протягом тижня.

13. Якщо ви обираєте гумові чоботи до колін, то переконайтеся наскільки вони міцні та зручні. Беріть чоботи на розмір більші, адже ви будете їх носити з теплими шкарпетками.

14. Вчора ми купили рожеві замшеві кімнатні капці для бабусі, ролики для племінниці та пару парусинових черевиків для дідуся.

## Headgear

### Vocabulary

Headgear	Головний Убір
a bandanna	бандана
a beret	берет
a bowler hat	котелок (чоловічий капелюх)
a cap	шапка, кепка, кашкет
• a cloth ~ / a flat ~	• кепі (тряпчана кепка)
• a skull ~	• тубетейка
• a peaked ~	• картуз
• a skiing ~	• лижна шапка
• a fur ~ with ear flaps	• хутряна шапка з одворотами (шапка-вушанка)
earmuffs	навушники для захисту від холоду
a hat	капелюх
• a felt ~	• фетровий ~
• a hard ~	• каска
• a straw ~	• солом'яний ~
• a top ~	• циліндр
• a fur ~	• хутряний ~
• a wide ~ / ~ narrow-brimmed ~	• широкополий ~ / з вузькими полями ~
• a cowboy ~	• ковбойський ~
• a knitted ~	• в'язаний ~
• a Panama ~ / a sun ~	• панама
a (crash) helmet	шолом
a kerchief	хустка; косинка
a mortar board / a graduation cap	академічний капелюх



a pompon	ПОМПОН
a scarf / a headscarf	шарф
a shawl	шаль, хустка
a trilby	чоловічий фетровий капелюх
a turban	тюрбан, чалма
a veil	вуаль
• a bridal ~	• <i>фата</i>

**31** Match different headgear with the correct number in the picture below. Which items do you wear? Which ones would you like to have?

- |                                       |                                  |  |   |   |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> trilby       | <input type="checkbox"/> scarf   | <input type="checkbox"/> bandanna                | <input type="checkbox"/> helmet                     | <input type="checkbox"/> peaked cap             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> beret        | <input type="checkbox"/> sun hat | <input type="checkbox"/> bowler hat              | <input type="checkbox"/> turban                     | <input type="checkbox"/> snood hat              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> cap          | <input type="checkbox"/> fox hat | <input type="checkbox"/> cloth cap               | <input type="checkbox"/> earmuffs                   | <input type="checkbox"/> skiing hat             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> shawl        | <input type="checkbox"/> panama  | <input type="checkbox"/> cowboy hat              | <input type="checkbox"/> straw hat                  | <input type="checkbox"/> hard hat               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> mortar board | <input type="checkbox"/> top hat | <input type="checkbox"/> knitted hat with pompon | <input type="checkbox"/> leather cap with fur flaps | <input type="checkbox"/> fur hat with ear flaps |

1. 	2. 	3. 	4. 	5. 
6. 	7. 	8. 	9. 	10. 
11. 	12. 	13. 	14. 	15. 
16. 	17. 	18. 	19. 	20. 
21. 	22. 	23. 	24. 	25. 

**32**

**Transcribe the words from the left column. Match the words and phrases with their definitions.**

- |                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>a beret</i>            | a) a man's hat which is made of felt and has a groove along the top from front to back   |
| 2. <i>a snood</i>            | b) a soft flat cap with a stiff, curved part at the front called a peak, usually worn by men   |
| 3. <i>a helmet</i>           | c) a large piece of woollen cloth which a woman wears over her shoulders or head   |
| 4. <i>a top hat</i>          | d) a hat with a pointed or rounded part that sticks out above your eyes  |
| 5. <i>a bandanna</i>         | e) a wide-brimmed hat that protects your head and neck from the sun  |
| 6. <i>a trilby</i>           | f) a stiff black cap which has a flat square top with a bunch of threads attached to it; usually worn by students and teachers at special ceremonies at high schools, colleges, and universities |
| 7. <i>a bowler hat</i>       | g) a man's wide-brimmed hat of straw-like material, originally made from the leaves of a particular tropical palm tree   |
| 8. <i>a flat / cloth cap</i> | h) a scarf like and bag like object, in a circle shape that you place over your head   |
| 9. <i>a peaked cap</i>       | i) a hat made of a strong material which you wear to protect your head   |
| 10. <i>a sun hat</i>         | j) a brightly-coloured piece of cloth which is worn around a person's neck or head   |
| 11. <i>earmuffs</i>          | k) a circular, flat hat that is made of soft material and has no brim  |
| 12. <i>a panama</i>          | l) a man's tall hat with a narrow brim and a high cylindrical crown worn only on special occasions, for example, at some weddings.   |
| 13. <i>a pom-pon</i>         | m) an old-fashioned round, hard, black hat with a narrow brim, which is worn by men, especially by British businessmen   |
| 14. <i>a mortar board</i>    | n) a pair of soft fabric coverings, connected by a band across the top of the head, that are worn over the ears to protect them from cold  |
| 15. <i>a shawl</i>           | o) a small woollen or fur ball attached to a garment for decoration  |

**33**

**🔊 Listen to the speaker, write down the items you hear and translate them into Ukrainian. Which hats do you have, like or hate?**

a)

- |          |          |          |          |           |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 3. _____ | 5. _____ | 7. _____ | 9. _____  |
| 2. _____ | 4. _____ | 6. _____ | 8. _____ | 10. _____ |
|          |          |          |          | 11. _____ |

b)

- |          |          |          |          |           |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 3. _____ | 5. _____ | 7. _____ | 9. _____  |
| 2. _____ | 4. _____ | 6. _____ | 8. _____ | 10. _____ |
|          |          |          |          | 11. _____ |

34

🔊 Answer and discuss the following questions.



- 1. How often do you wear hats? Why do you wear them?
- 2. How many hats do you have?
- 3. Can men and women wear the same hats?
- 4. Do you have your favorite hats? What are they?
- 5. What hats are in fashion now?
- 6. What are typical hats for men? What hats are designed for women?
- 7. What material is good for hats? What's the most comfortable material?
- 8. What colours are good for hats?
- 9. What style in hats do you dislike?

35

Translate into English.



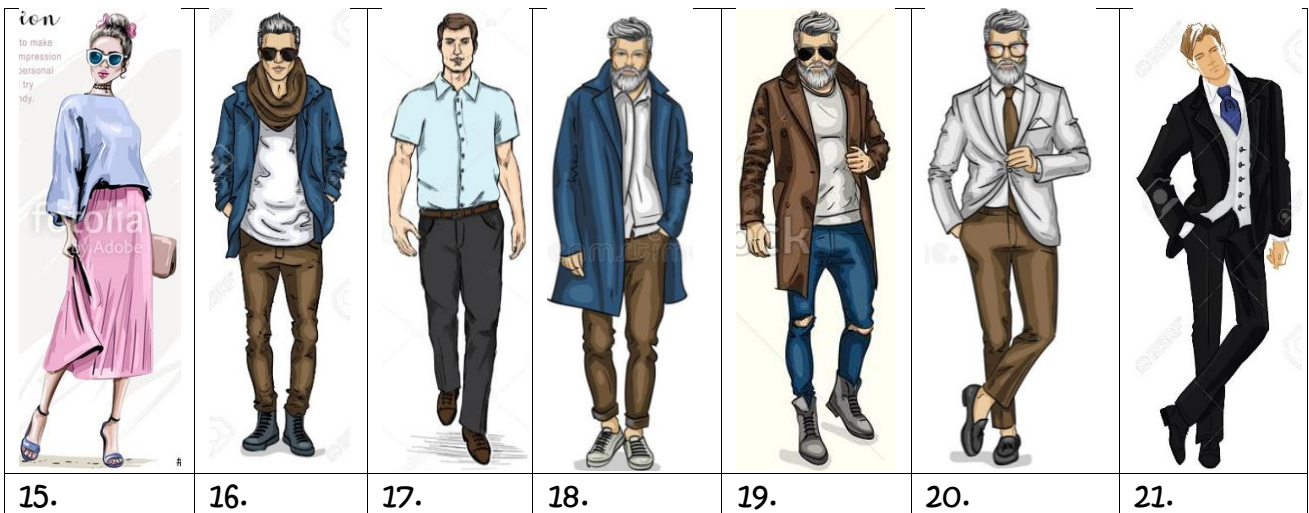
1. Моя дочка терпіти не може носити капелюхи, тому вона завжди купує верхній одяг з каптуром. Якщо взимку нестерпно холодно, вона може одягнути або шарф-снуд або навушники.
2. Окрім теплої куртки з капюшоном на Марійці були в'язана блакитна шапка з білим помпоном, картатий шарф і в'язані рукавички. Вони йшли до парку грати у сніжки та кататися на санчатах.
3. Батьки були дуже щасливі й пишалися своїми дітьми, коли побачили їх у довгих просторих чорних мантиях та академічних капелюхах на церемонії вручення дипломів в університеті.
4. Влітку, щоб захистити своє волосся від сонця, Джейн носить барвисту хустку, панаму чи капелюх від сонця, або оздоблений квітами солом'яний капелюх з яскравою стрічкою.
5. Моїй подрузі дуже личать берети та фетрові капелюхи з широкими полями. Вона виглядає в них дуже елегантно та жіночно.
6. Наша бабуся любить носити хусточки, а нещодавно їй подарували розкішну шерстяну шаль, яка дуже пасує до її кашемірового пальто.
7. Влітку завжди великий попит на легкі туфлі, босоніжки, парео та панамы.
8. Мій дідусь колись був військовим і завжди носив картуз. Зараз він на пенсії, але він ніколи не виходить на вулицю без головного убору. Влітку він носить кепку або солом'яний капелюх, восени – фетровий капелюх чи шкіряний картуз, а взимку – лижну шапочку або норкову шапку з



одворотами. У дідуся є невеличка мрія – він хоче приміряти котелок, циліндр та ковбойський капелюх.

9. Цього року зима сувора, тому вчора ми з чоловіком пішли до магазину капелюхів і купили мені лисячу шапку та шапку-вушанку для нього.

- 36 a) Watch the demo video and learn how to describe people's clothes.  
 b) Describe what the people in the picture are wearing.



37

🎧 Listen to the speaker telling about fashion. Fill in the gaps and answer the questions below.

### *Fashion*

Have you ever thought 1. \_\_\_\_\_ fashion is? People tell us what clothes to wear. 2. \_\_\_\_\_. Fashion stores tell us what is “in” this summer or this winter. People then buy the same clothes 3. \_\_\_\_\_ everyone else because they want 4. \_\_\_\_\_. The thing is, fashion is about being an individual, but then we all wear clothes that are 5. \_\_\_\_\_ everyone else’s! Keeping up with fashion is expensive these days. Everyone 6. \_\_\_\_\_ fashion. Have you seen how much the most fashionable sneakers are? How can kids 7. \_\_\_\_\_? The craziest fashion is the 8. \_\_\_\_\_. People 9. \_\_\_\_\_ salary, or more, on a handbag or watch. That’s crazy. I’m happy with an unknown brand at 10. \_\_\_\_\_. I don’t mind being unfashionable.

- 1. Do you follow the fashion? Why? or Why not?
- 2. What is your attitude towards fashion?
- 3. Do you share the speaker’s ideas?

38

🎧 Listen to Shayna describing her opinion about clothing and fashion. Answer the questions below. Is your opinion similar?

### *Clothing & Fashion*

1. When Shayna was a child, she enjoyed
  - braiding hair*                       *going hiking*                       *playing with boys*
2. In college, her style was
  - athletic*                                       *professional*                                       *trendy*
3. She finds shopping for clothes frustrating because
  - it’s hard to find clothes that fit*                       *clothing is expensive*
  - it takes too much time to go from store to store*
4. She thinks designer clothing is
  - desirable*                                       *impressive*                                       *overpriced*
5. She thinks fashion is important
  - cause people judge you on your appearance*       *to feel comfortable & confident*
  - to get better opportunities in your professional life and love life*
6. Shayna wears high heels
  - often, because she is short and wants to look taller*
  - seldom, only on special occasions*       *never, because they make her feet hurt*

39

Decide which answer **a**, **b**, **c** or **d** best fits each space.

### *Choosing Clothes*

- Are you one of the thousands of people who eagerly follow every new
1. \_\_\_\_\_ that appears? Or are you one of those who go to the shops and just buy

whatever they can find in their 2. \_\_\_\_\_ that 3. \_\_\_\_\_ them? Or perhaps you order from a mail-order catalogue, and then have to send everything back because nothing 4. \_\_\_\_\_? Whatever 5. \_\_\_\_\_ of shopper you are, one thing is certain. Everyone finds 6. \_\_\_\_\_ important. According to a recent survey, people spend more time either buying clothes, or thinking about buying them, or looking at them in shop 7. \_\_\_\_\_, than they do on most other products, 8. \_\_\_\_\_ from food. And the reason is obvious. Clothes are an important part of our 9. \_\_\_\_\_ at work, you may need to impress a customer, or persuade the boss that you know what you are doing, and clothes certainly help. 10. \_\_\_\_\_-dressed people, so they say, get on in the world. And as far as attracting the opposite sex is concerned, clothes also play a vital role. If a friend who has been 11. \_\_\_\_\_ the same old jacket or the same old dress suddenly appears in the 12. \_\_\_\_\_ fashion, you can be sure that romance is in the air. And apart from work and romance, there are the influences of sport, music and leisure on the way we 13. \_\_\_\_\_. So, excuse me while I 14. \_\_\_\_\_ on my tracksuit and training 15. \_\_\_\_\_ I'm just dashing off for some fast window-shopping.

- |     |               |               |              |             |
|-----|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1.  | a) appearance | b) fashion    | c) uniform   | d) dress    |
| 2.  | a) place      | b) price      | c) size      | d) self     |
| 3.  | a) suits      | b) makes      | c) takes     | d) likes    |
| 4.  | a) sizes      | b) styles     | c) fits      | d) measures |
| 5.  | a) means      | b) typical    | c) idea      | d) kind     |
| 6.  | a) out        | b) clothes    | c) dresses   | d) vests    |
| 7.  | a) centres    | b) sales      | c) times     | d) windows  |
| 8.  | a) apart      | b) or         | c) according | d) taken    |
| 9.  | a) nowadays   | b) appearance | c) looking   | d) events   |
| 10. | a) well       | b) good       | c) best      | d) fancy    |
| 11. | a) dressing   | b) putting on | c) carrying  | d) wearing  |
| 12. | a) last       | b) minute     | c) latest    | d) complete |
| 13. | a) clothes    | b) have       | c) dress     | d) go       |
| 14. | a) put        | b) dress      | c) wear      | d) have     |
| 15. | a) fit        | b) shoes      | c) tonight   | d) again    |

40

Use the word in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.

### *Father and Son*

My next-door neighbour has a very unusual 1. \_\_\_\_\_. He *APPEAR*  
 has long hair with a 2. \_\_\_\_\_ in the middle, and usually wears *PART*  
 an old pair of jeans and a 3. \_\_\_\_\_ shirt. His clothes are very *STRIPE*  
 4. \_\_\_\_\_ for working in a bank, but that is what he does! Unless *SUIT*  
 he 5. \_\_\_\_\_ when he gets to work and changes his clothes! His *DRESS*



clothes are usually very filthy and I am sure he never washes them or takes them to the 6. \_\_\_\_\_. When he wears a coat it is always old and 7. \_\_\_\_\_, and even on very cold days it is 8. \_\_\_\_\_ all down the front. The funny thing is that his son is very 9. \_\_\_\_\_, always wears the latest styles, and never wears casual clothes, even on an 10. \_\_\_\_\_ occasion.

CLEAN  
WEAR  
BUTTON  
FASHION  
FORMAL

41

🔊 Listen to the speaker, write down the items you hear and translate them into Ukrainian.

*a) Summer Clothing*

- |          |           |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 6. _____  | 11. _____ | 16. _____ | 21. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 7. _____  | 12. _____ | 17. _____ | 22. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 8. _____  | 13. _____ | 18. _____ | 23. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 9. _____  | 14. _____ | 19. _____ | 24. _____ |
| 5. _____ | 10. _____ | 15. _____ | 20. _____ | 25. _____ |

*b) Women's Clothing*

- |          |          |           |           |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 5. _____ | 9. _____  | 13. _____ | 17. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 6. _____ | 10. _____ | 14. _____ | 18. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 7. _____ | 11. _____ | 15. _____ | 19. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 8. _____ | 12. _____ | 16. _____ |           |

*c) Men's Clothing*

- |          |           |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 7. _____  | 13. _____ | 19. _____ | 25. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 8. _____  | 14. _____ | 20. _____ | 26. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 9. _____  | 15. _____ | 21. _____ | 27. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 10. _____ | 16. _____ | 22. _____ |           |
| 5. _____ | 11. _____ | 17. _____ | 23. _____ |           |
| 6. _____ | 12. _____ | 18. _____ | 24. _____ |           |

*d) Winter Clothing*

- |          |          |          |           |           |
|----------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 4. _____ | 7. _____ | 10. _____ | 13. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 5. _____ | 8. _____ | 11. _____ | 14. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 6. _____ | 9. _____ | 12. _____ | 15. _____ |

*e) Accessories*

- |          |           |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 7. _____  | 13. _____ | 19. _____ | 25. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 8. _____  | 14. _____ | 20. _____ | 26. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 9. _____  | 15. _____ | 21. _____ | 27. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 10. _____ | 16. _____ | 22. _____ | 28. _____ |
| 5. _____ | 11. _____ | 17. _____ | 23. _____ |           |
| 6. _____ | 12. _____ | 18. _____ | 24. _____ |           |

**f) Clothes and Accessories**

- |          |           |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 6. _____  | 11. _____ | 16. _____ | 21. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 7. _____  | 12. _____ | 17. _____ | 22. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 8. _____  | 13. _____ | 18. _____ | 23. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 9. _____  | 14. _____ | 19. _____ | 24. _____ |
| 5. _____ | 10. _____ | 15. _____ | 20. _____ | 25. _____ |

**g)**

- |           |           |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____  | 11. _____ | 21. _____ | 31. _____ | 41. _____ |
| 2. _____  | 12. _____ | 22. _____ | 32. _____ | 42. _____ |
| 3. _____  | 13. _____ | 23. _____ | 33. _____ | 43. _____ |
| 4. _____  | 14. _____ | 24. _____ | 34. _____ | 44. _____ |
| 5. _____  | 15. _____ | 25. _____ | 35. _____ | 45. _____ |
| 6. _____  | 16. _____ | 26. _____ | 36. _____ | 46. _____ |
| 7. _____  | 17. _____ | 27. _____ | 37. _____ | 47. _____ |
| 8. _____  | 18. _____ | 28. _____ | 38. _____ | 48. _____ |
| 9. _____  | 19. _____ | 29. _____ | 39. _____ | 49. _____ |
| 10. _____ | 20. _____ | 30. _____ | 40. _____ |           |

**e) General Items of Clothing**

- |           |           |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____  | 12. _____ | 23. _____ | 34. _____ | 45. _____ |
| 2. _____  | 13. _____ | 24. _____ | 35. _____ | 46. _____ |
| 3. _____  | 14. _____ | 25. _____ | 36. _____ | 47. _____ |
| 4. _____  | 15. _____ | 26. _____ | 37. _____ | 48. _____ |
| 5. _____  | 16. _____ | 27. _____ | 38. _____ | 49. _____ |
| 6. _____  | 17. _____ | 28. _____ | 39. _____ | 50. _____ |
| 7. _____  | 18. _____ | 29. _____ | 40. _____ | 51. _____ |
| 8. _____  | 19. _____ | 30. _____ | 41. _____ | 52. _____ |
| 9. _____  | 20. _____ | 31. _____ | 42. _____ | 53. _____ |
| 10. _____ | 21. _____ | 32. _____ | 43. _____ | 54. _____ |
| 11. _____ | 22. _____ | 33. _____ | 44. _____ | 55. _____ |

42

☛ Read the short paragraph below and choose the correct heading for it. Then answer and discuss the questions after the text.

- A. *Expensive clothes make a difference.*
- B. *Choosing what to wear can be very hard.*
- C. *What people can learn from our clothes?*

The decision about what you're going to wear every day is a significant one. Your clothes can say a lot about you. They tell people how you are feeling and what impression you want to make. Your personality in the clothes you wear as well as how clean and tidy you are. And, of course, they show how much money you are willing to spend on your appearance.

- 1. Do you think that the clothes we wear reflect what is inside us?
- 2. Why do we need clothes? Why do people spend lots of money on clothes? Do you think clothes are a waste of money?
- 3. Do fashionable clothes really change the way a person looks? Do you think it is important to wear fashionable clothes? Who decides which clothes are fashionable?
- 4. Do you think there's a difference between "fashion" and "style"?
- 5. Do you think people feel different when they wear different clothes? How long does it take you to decide which clothes to wear?
- 6. What colors and clothes do you choose to wear when you are happy? Do you dress the same when you are depressed as you do when you are very happy? In what ways do you dress differently?
- 7. What type of clothing do you wear when you are angry and you want to express yourself?
- 8. If you went out with a group of high school friends, would you dress differently than if you went out with your grandmother and her friends?
- 9. When was the last time you got dressed up? Why? How often do you get dressed up? Do you like to get dressed up?
- 10. What would you do or feel if you were refused entry to somewhere because of what you are wearing?
- 11. Do children in your country have to wear a school uniform? Did you wear a school uniform? Do you think wearing uniforms is a good idea?
- 12. Were you embarrassed to wear the clothes you wore as a kid?
- 13. Do you always recycle your old clothes or give them to charity?



43

### Translate into English.



1. Я люблю просторий, практичний одяг, що підкреслює достоїнства моєї фігури і добре носить. Я намагаюсь стежити за модою і змінювати стиль одягу в залежності від ситуації – від класичного під час ділових зустрічей і шикарного для особливих випадків до спортивного – для відпочинку дома і на природі. У своїх ділових костюмах я віддаю перевагу строгому крою піджаків, спідниць і брюк,

усі мої вечірні туалети мають силует, що облягає, а весь мій домашній повсякденний одяг вільного, навіть мішкуватого стилю. При виборі вбрання я завжди звертаю увагу на деталі: форму коміра, вирізу, місце розташування та вид кишень, гудзики та інші застібки. Купуючи одяг я намагаюся відразу придбати взуття та аксесуари, що до нього підходять.

2. Минулої зими в будинку було дуже холодно. Я прибігала з роботи, знімала свій кашеміровий діловий костюм, черевики на високих каблуках і переодягалася в затишний вовняний светр, вільні вельветові штани і теплі хутрянні домашні капці. Ранком, перед тим, як робити зарядку, я надягала спортивний костюм, футболку з довгим рукавом і кросівки. Іноді я бігала в парку; тоді я вдягалася в теплу куртку з каптуром, облямованим хутром.

44

🗣️ **Speak (or write) about your preferences in clothes and footwear according to the plan below.**

**Plan**

1. Clothes you like and dislike
2. Footwear you prefer and shoes you hate
3. Exotic items of clothing and footwear you have or you would like to have
4. Places where you buy your clothes and shoes

## Buying Clothes and Footwear

### Vocabulary

What size in shoes (clothes) do you wear? / What size do you take in shoes (clothes)? / What is your size in shoes (clothes)?	Якого розміру взуття (одяг) ви носите?
I wear size ... shoes (clothes). I take size ... <b>in</b> shoes (clothes).	Я ношу взуття (одяг) ... розміру.
to need a size smaller / larger	потребувати менший / більший розмір
to be just <i>one's</i> size	бути якраз <i>чийогось</i> розміру
to be the right / wrong size	бути вірного / невірного розміру
to fit perfectly / to be a perfect fit	ідеально підходити за розміром
to fit like a glove	сидіти як влитий
to be loose <b>in</b> <i>the shoulders</i> / <i>waist</i> ...	бути вільним в плечах / поясі
to be tight <b>in</b> <i>the shoulders</i> / <i>waist</i> ...	бути тісним в плечах / поясі
misplaced waistline / shoulders	зміщена лінія поясу / плечей
to be too narrow	бути надто вузьким
to pinch <i>sb.</i> terribly	тиснути <i>комусь</i> добряче
to stretch with wearing	розтягнутись з носкою
to look dangling	виглядати як мішок; висіти (про одяг)
to look a fright / scarecrow	виглядати як опудало
to be the laughing stock of the group <b>in</b> <i>sth.</i>	бути об'єктом для насміхань
to look pretty dressy <b>in</b> <i>sth.</i>	виглядати досить нарядно в <i>чомусь</i>

to make <i>sb.</i> stand out of the crowd	робити когось помітним серед інших (про речі)
to be available <b>in</b> various colours / sizes	бути в наявності в різноманітних кольорах / розмірах
to pay cash / with cash	платити готівкою
to make purchases	робити покупки
to look <b>for</b> bargains	шукати речі за вигідною ціною
to buy <i>sth.</i> <b>for</b> a song	купити щось за копійки
to be a steal at the price	бути практично задарма
to resist the temptation to buy <i>sth.</i>	встояти перед спокусою купити щось
to be satisfied <b>with</b> the purchase	бути задоволеним покупкою
to set the eyes <b>on</b> <i>sth.</i>	зупинити погляд на <i>чомусь</i>
to set the eyes <b>off</b> <i>sth.</i>	відвести очі від <i>чогось</i>
to try <b>on</b> <i>sth.</i>	приміряти <i>щось</i>
a fitting room / a fitting booth / a trying on cubicle / a try on room / a changing room	примірочна кабінка
a label	бирка, фабрична марка (на одязі)
a make	виробництво
• <i>made in Germany</i>	• <i>вироблено в Німеччині</i>
a tag	ярлик з ціною, цінник
a fake / a counterfeit / an imitation	підробка
Will it do for you?	Це вам підійде?

45

Read the following text, translate it into Ukrainian and pay special attention to the topical vocabulary.

### *My Shopping Habits and My Last Purchase*



Usually before I go out to buy some new clothes or footwear, I go window shopping first in order to find out which shops are worth visiting. I think I am a reasonable customer. With me quality counts above all. If I like the article, I am ready to buy it even at a sky-high price, but I feel good if I manage to buy a good thing for a song. Generally, I stick to the rule: I'm not too rich to buy cheap things.

Frankly speaking, I don't enjoy looking for bargains in clothes markets. I find it rather annoying and uncomfortable to walk around the stalls, among the crowds of shoppers. Moreover, clothes markets can be a problem, as it is difficult to try on new clothes in the open air. I enjoy shopping tours in large department stores where I can make all my purchases under one roof.

Last week I went to Kyiv Department Store “TSUM” to shop. At the department of ready-made clothes, I saw a very beautiful pink summer frock on display. I **couldn't resist the temptation** to buy that dress, so I made up my mind **to drop in at** the department and to try the dress on.

You know, I prefer **ready-made clothes** to **made-to-measure** ones but sometimes choosing **off-the-peg clothes** can be a problem. I know that I **wear a size 36 dress**. So, I asked a pleasant-looking shop assistant to show me the dress. The girl brought me a size 36 dress and I went to the **fitting room** to try it on in front of a mirror. I like dresses which **fit perfectly** but when I **put that dress on**, I didn't **feel comfortable** in it. Instead of looking beautiful, smart and elegant in a new dress I **looked a scarecrow** and I was sure **to be the laughing stock of all around** if I bought it. It was too tight in the shoulders and in the hips, the waistline was misplaced. The salesgirl tried to be helpful and brought me a **2 sizes larger dress**. It appeared to be too loose on me and **looked dangling**. Unfortunately, the size 38 dress **was available** only **in** green. The green dress was **a perfect fit**, but the colour didn't **match** the colour of my eyes and my complexion. Generally, the dress didn't **suit** me at all.

The shop assistant noticed my frustration and showed me another dress. It was a bright-coloured viscose dress of **a loose cut** with a V-neck and without sleeves. I liked myself in that dress and the salesgirl also assured me that I **looked pretty dressy** and subtle in it. The navy blue colour of the dress **made me stand out of the crowd** and what is more, it **set my eyes off**.

Therefore, I looked at the **tag** for the price and was happy to see it wasn't exorbitant. The dress cost €1800. I found it quite reasonable so I went to the cash-desk to pay. I paid cash. I gave the cashier €2000 and she took my money, put it into the till and gave me €200 change. I got a receipt, thanked for good customer service and went out **satisfied with my purchase**.

After that I went to **a shoe department** to buy a pair of shoes **to go with** my new dress. I know that thick-soled shoes with square or round toes don't match a light summer frock. So, I **decided on** open-toe ankle-strap wedges. My **size in shoes** is 38. I tried on a pair of dark blue patent-leather sandals. Unfortunately, they were too narrow and the right one pinched me terribly. I thought they could give a little and stretch with wearing, but then I noticed elegant light-blue sling-back sandals with a stiletto heel. They were **just my size**, besides they were leather and the instep was very comfortable. The sandals cost €2500, which was a bit expensive. As with me quality counts above all, I took that pair and a box of boot polish. That time I paid by credit card, took a receipt and went home, **feeling happy but completely exhausted and worn out!**



46

Fill in the blanks with appropriate words. The first letter is given and each space represents one letter.

*What Size Do You Take in Clothes?*

Let me see. 40 is too l \_ \_ \_ \_ on me, 36 is a bit t \_ \_ \_ \_ , 38 is just the r \_ \_ \_ \_ size. Yes, I take a s \_ \_ \_ 38 dress. I like dresses which f \_ \_ perfectly. I don't like r \_ \_ \_ \_ -m \_ \_ \_ \_ clothes . I remember once buying a ready-made dress. Instead of looking beautiful, smart and elegant in a new dress I looked a s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ and I was sure to be the l \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ s \_ \_ \_ \_ of all around if I bought it. It was t \_ \_ \_ \_ in the shoulders and too l \_ \_ \_ \_ in the hips, the w \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ was misplaced, the belt didn't go with the dress, the colour didn't m \_ \_ \_ \_ the colour of my eyes and my complexion. The dress didn't s \_ \_ \_ at all. Since then I either make my dresses or at least content myself with m \_ \_ \_ -t \_ -m \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ ones. I hate to wear off-the-peg clothes.

47

Put each of the following words or phrases in its correct place in the passage below.

tag label cash desk off-the-peg refund sales try on fit till  
assistant mail order bargain receipt cashier exchange

If you want to buy a ready-made (or we sometimes say 1. \_\_\_\_\_) jacket, first find the jackets in the shop and look at the 2. \_\_\_\_\_ inside to see the size, material and make. For the price, look at the price 3. \_\_\_\_\_. To see if it will 4. \_\_\_\_\_ you, you can 5. \_\_\_\_\_ the jacket in front of a mirror. If necessary an 6. \_\_\_\_\_ will help you. You pay the 7. \_\_\_\_\_, who you will find at the 8. \_\_\_\_\_. He or she will take your money, put it in the 9. \_\_\_\_\_, give you your change. Make sure you also get a 10. \_\_\_\_\_, which you should keep and bring back to the shop with the jacket if something is wrong with it and you want to 11. \_\_\_\_\_ it or ask for a 12. \_\_\_\_\_ of your money. In clothes shops you pay the fixed price, of course. You don't 13. \_\_\_\_\_. Or you can wait until the 14. \_\_\_\_\_, when many goods are reduced in price. If you don't like shops, you can stay at home, look at catalogues and newspaper advertisements and do your shopping by 15. \_\_\_\_\_.

48

Translate into English.

1. Коли купуєте готовий одяг, спочатку вам потрібно знайти його у відповідному магазині, потім подивитися на ярлик, де зазначений розмір, матеріал та виробництво.
2. Якщо ви не любите ходити по магазинам, ви можете вдома подивитися каталоги та зробити покупку поштовим замовленням.
3. Моя сестра неперевершений покупець. Вона вміє добре торгуватись і купити товар за зниженою ціною, тому ніколи не переплачує.



4. Якість товару для мене понад усе. Якщо мені подобається товар, я не можу встояти перед спокусою і готова купити його навіть за високу ціну, але я більше люблю купувати якісні речі за помірними цінами.

5. Моя подруга одягається елегантно і модно, обираючи лише відомі бренди. Вона ніколи не купує одяг на ринку, де повно підрбок, а лише у butikах. Вона любить виділятися у натовпі.

6. Мені подобається колір і крій цього плаща, але він великий в плечах, і рукава занадто довгі. Я схожа в ньому на опудало. Мабуть, мені потрібен на розмір менший.

7. Поміряйте це пальто. Я впевнений, що воно вам буде якраз. У ньому вам буде зручно. Потім підберемо капелюха до нього.

8. Я хочу купити собі чорну шовкову сукню, щоб носити її до театру. Ще хочу легкі замшеві босоніжки на платформі на літо.

9. Я візьму ці шорти, гольфи, 3 футболки, 2 майки та кросівки. Загорніть їх для мене, будь ласка. Я б ще хотів чорного шкіряного паска.

10. Мені треба купити однотонну шерстяну сукню для дочки, красиві шкіряні черевики на шнурках та піжаму для сина, смугасту сорочку чоловікові під його сірий костюм та літню сукню без рукавів для себе.

11. Вибачте, вам спідницю в горошок, клітинку, квітчасту чи смугасту? В нашому магазині є всі малюнки. До того ж, зараз розпродаж і тому ви можете купити одяг надзвичайно дешево.

12. – Я збираюся у відпустку до моря. Допоможи мені купити все необхідне.



– Тобі краще вибирати одяг з легких натуральних тканин: льону, шовку, бавовни. Купи який-небудь яскравий сарафан чи сукню без рукавів; зараз у моді речі в смужку і дрібний горошок. Візьми із собою футболку, шорти і пару спідниць. Не забудь джинси і теплий джемпер, вони тобі знадобляться у прохолодну погоду.

– А що взяти із взуття?

– В'єтнамки, босоніжки й кросівки. І не забудь покласти до валізи купальник, сонцезахисні окуляри і солом'яний капелюх чи панаму з широкими полями.

49

✪ Answer and discuss the following questions.

- 1. Do you like shopping for new clothes? How often do you go clothes shopping? Do you buy new clothes every time you visit a shop?
- 2. Do you prefer to go shopping or just browse? Why?



- 3. Where are some good stores to buy clothes in your area? Where is your favorite shopping centre?
- 4. Do you go to many shops before buying one particular item or do you just buy the first one you find?
- 5. Would you bring your husband/boyfriend with you when you go clothes shopping? Who do you like to go with?
- 6. How much money do you usually spend?
- 7. Do you like to go shopping during the sales? Why?
- 8. Where did you buy your favorite piece of clothing? How much did it cost?
- 9. When and where did you buy an article of clothing you're wearing right now? Why did you choose it?
- 10. What is your favorite brand of clothes? Have you ever bought imitation brand clothing?
- 11. How often do you buy shoes?
- 12. What is the most expensive pair of shoes you've bought?
- 13. Is there a pair of shoes you would really like to buy?
- 14. Have you ever regretted buying a pair of shoes?

50

Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions given below.

on back at in up out off from

A: Hi! Do you like my new boots? They were reduced 1. \_\_\_\_\_ £80 to £50  
 2. \_\_\_\_\_ the sale 3. \_\_\_\_\_ that shop! That's £30 4. \_\_\_\_\_. Good, huh? The  
 boot polish was 5. \_\_\_\_\_ special offer too.

B: *I love them! I might get a pair.*

A: You'd better hurry – they'll probably be sold 6. \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of the sale.  
 Then they'll put 7. \_\_\_\_\_ the price again. And remember – if there's a  
 problem with them, you can't take them 8. \_\_\_\_\_.

51

a) Read and translate two stories about Louis and Kate. Why are these people successful?

*Working Their Way Up to the Top*



**Louis** is very successful. For the past six years, he has been the manager of the Big Value Supermarket on Grant Street. Louis has worked very hard to get where he is today. First, he was a clerk for two years. Then, he was a cashier for

three years. After that, he was an assistant manager for five years. Finally, six years ago, he became the manager of the store. Everybody at the Big Value Supermarket is very proud of Louis. He started at the bottom, and he has worked his way up to the top.



**Kate** is very successful. For the past two years, she has been the president of the Marcy Company. Kate has worked very hard to get where she is today. She started her career at the Marcy Department Store in Dallas, Texas. First, she was a salesperson for three years. Then, she was the manager of the Women's Clothing Department for ten years. Then, she was the store manager for eight years. After that, she moved to New York and became a vice president. Finally, two years ago, she became the president. Everybody at the Marcy Company is very proud of Kate. She started at the bottom, and she has worked her way up to the top.

**b) Answer *True, False, or Maybe* (if the answer isn't in the story).**

1. Louis started as a cashier at the Big Value Supermarket.
2. He has worked there for sixteen years.
3. All employees at the Big Value Supermarket start at the bottom.
4. Kate has been the manager of the Women's Clothing Department in Dallas for ten years.
5. The Women's Clothing Department was on the bottom floor of the store.
6. Kate hasn't been a vice president for two years.

**c) Write a story about your English teacher.**

1. How long have you known him/her?
2. How long has he/she been an English teacher?
3. What did he/she do before that? How long?
4. Where does he/she live?
5. How long has he/she lived there?
6. Has he/she lived anywhere else?
7. Where? How long? Besides teaching English, what is your English teacher interested in?
8. How long has he/she been interested in that?



52

Complete the text with *had to, didn't have to, could, couldn't, can, can't, have to, don't have to* and *must*.

I used to work as a sales assistant in a shop that had really strict rules. First of all, we 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*necessary*) wear a suit and tie at all times. Even in the summer when it was really hot we 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not possible*) take them off. It wasn't fair for the men, because the women 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*possible*) wear a short skirt and a short-sleeved shirt, they 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not necessary*) wear a jacket. Anyway, one really hot day I 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not possible*) open the window in the shop, so I took my jacket off. My boss was so angry with me. "You 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not allowed*) take your jacket off in here!" he shouted. "But I 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*necessary*)," I replied. "It's too hot to work in here." "We 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not possible*) have one rule for you and another rule for the others," he said. "But the women 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not necessary*) wear a jacket, so why should I?" I said. Then he told me I 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*necessary*) leave. Now I have a new job in a different shop. I like it very much because we 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*allowed*) wear whatever we like. And we 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*allowed*) open the window too if we want!

53

a) Translate the advertisement into English.



*Ласкаво Просимо до Нашої Нової  
Крамниці!*

Тут Ви знайдете взуття на будь-який смак і будь-якого розміру! Наші продавчині

Вам запропонують сучасні елегантні туфлі на шпильках, зручні відкриті босоніжки на платформі та танкетці, легкі мокасини та балетки, в'єтнамки, силіконове взуття і шкіряні сандалі, що ніколи не виходять з моди; чоловічі туфлі зі шнурками і пряжками, напівчоботи та чоботи. У нас широкий вибір м'яких домашніх тапочок, спортивного взуття і гумових чобіт. Бажаємо Вам удалих покупок!

b) Now make up an advertisement for a new shop. You may choose a hat shop, ladies' wear shop or men's clothing shop.

54

Read, learn and act out the following conversations.

*At the Department Store*

*1. Buying a Suit*

Shop-assistant: *Can I help you?*

Andrew: Yes, I'd like a grey suit, please.

Shop-assistant: *Very well, sir. What size do you take in suits?*

Andrew: I'm not quite sure. Besides sizes vary in different countries. I'd better try it on.

Shop-assistant: *Here are the latest styles. I think this one will fit you. You can change in the fitting booth over there.*

Andrew: Thank you.

## 2. Trying on a Suit

Andrew: How do you find me, Peter? Does it suit me?

Peter: ***Oh, yes, you look elegant in it. But it seems to me it's a bit too loose in the shoulders.***

Andrew: I wouldn't say that. I feel comfortable in it. I wonder how much it is.

Shop-assistant: £2000.

Andrew: A bit too expensive. But all the same I'm going to take it. I like the style and the colour. Besides, it's pure wool. I'm taking it. Where do I pay?

Shop-assistant: *This way at the cash desk, please.*

Peter: ***And now you need a shirt and a tie to go with your new suit.***

Andrew: I have a new shirt and a tie. I think they'll match the suit perfectly.

Peter: ***Then let's drop in at the shoe department. I need shoes for everyday wear.***



## 3. Buying Shoes

Peter: ***I want a pair of walking shoes, please. My size is 42.***

Shop-assistant: *Will you try these on?*

Peter: ***Oh, no, I don't want lace-shoes. I want moccasins.***

Shop-assistant: *Very well. Here are the moccasins. What do you think of them?*

Peter: ***They are too narrow. The right one pinches me terribly.***

Shop-assistant: *But they'll get a little larger with wear.*

Peter: ***Please, show me another pair.***

Shop-assistant: *Shall I get you size 43? Perhaps 42 is too small.*

Peter: ***No, 42 is my size. But I don't like these pointed toes. Will you show me shoes with square or round toes?***

Shop-assistant: *Here you are. Try this pair on, will you?*

Peter: ***These shoes are just my size. I'll take this pair and a box of boot polish. How much do I owe you?***

Shop-assistant: *£1900, please.*

## 4. Buying a Skirt

Shop-assistant: *Can I help you?*

Lisa: **Yes, how much is that skirt?**



*Shop-assistant:* It's \$40.

**Lisa:** Can I try it on?

*Shop-assistant:* Yes, what size are you?

**Lisa:** I don't know.

*Shop-assistant:* Ok, try a size 10. The changing room is over there.

**Lisa:** (putting on the skirt, which is too small) **Do you have it in a bigger size?**

*Shop-assistant:* Yes, here you are.

**Lisa:** Thank you. (putting on the new skirt, which fits)

*Shop-assistant:* How was it?

**Lisa:** I'll take it.

55

Fill in the missing parts using words and phrases from the conversations above. You can make any necessary changes. Then roleplay the dialogues.

### 1. Choosing a Suit

Steve: How do you find this suit?

**Jess:** ...

Steve: I wouldn't say that. Check the price tag, please.  
How much is it?

**Jess:** ...

Steve: A bit too expensive. But all the same I'm going to take it.



### 2. Trying on a Suit



*Shop-assistant:* Can I help you?

**Customer:** ...

*Shop-assistant:* What's your size?

**Customer:** ...

*Shop-assistant:* Then will you try this suit on?

**Customer:** ...

*Shop-assistant:* It's over there to the right.

### 3. Choosing a Shirt

**Customer:** I'd like a shirt to match a dark grey suit.

*Shop-assistant:* ...

**Customer:** I take size 42 in collar.

*Shop-assistant:* ...

**Customer:** No, it's too loud. Show me something in blue.

*Shop-assistant:* ...

**Customer:** Oh, it's just the thing I want.



#### 4. Trying on Shoes

**Customer:** ...

**Shop-assistant:** *What is your size in shoes?*

**Customer:** ...

**Shop-assistant:** *Try on these shoes, please. How do you feel in them?*



**Customer:** ...

**Shop-assistant:** *All right. Here is another pair.*

**Customer:** ...

**Shop-assistant:** *Shall I get you size 39? Perhaps, 38 is too small.*

**Customer:** ...

**Shop-assistant:** *Will you try this pair on?*

**Customer:** ...

56

🔊 Listen to the dialogues and fill in the table with the relevant details about shopping for a shirt. If there is no information on the featured point, mark it with a cross (×). Be ready to describe each episode.

#### Buying a Shirt

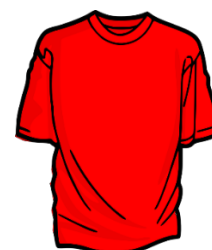
	<i>Dialogue 1</i>	<i>Dialogue 2</i>	<i>Dialogue 3</i>
<i>number of customers</i>			
<i>for men/women</i>			
<i>sleeves</i>			
<i>size</i>			
<i>colour</i>			
<i>price</i>			
<i>customer's decision</i>			

57

🔊 Listen to the conversation between a customer and a shop assistant. Write the correct answers to answer questions below.

#### Buying a T-shirt

1. What size T-shirt does the customer want?
2. Does the shop have a medium size purple T-shirt?
3. What colour T-shirt does the customer try on?
4. Does the customer buy the red T-shirt?
5. How much does it cost?
6. Does the customer pay by credit card or with cash?



58


🔊 Listen to three conversations in the clothes shop and answer the questions below.

#### Buying a Dress

1. What was the customer's choice (colour, style, material, size, price)?

2. Did each customer try on the item(s)?
3. What did the customer like about the selected dress?

<i>Conversation 1.</i>	1. _____	1. _____	1. _____
<i>Conversation 2.</i>	2. _____	2. _____	2. _____
<i>Conversation 3.</i>	3. _____	3. _____	3. _____

**59**  Listen to the conversations in a shop. Write down the customer's words. Translate the dialogue into Ukrainian.


*Buying a Jacket*

*Shop-assistant:* Good afternoon.  
**Customer:** ...  
*Shop-assistant:* Can I help you?  
**Customer:** ...  
*Shop-assistant:* Jacket? Ok. What colour are you looking for?  
**Customer:** ...  
*Shop-assistant:* Black? Ok. And what size are you looking for?  
**Customer:** ...  
*Shop-assistant:* Medium? Alright. A black jacket in medium. Here you are.  
**Customer:** ...

*Trying on a Jacket*

**Customer:** ...  
*Shop-assistant:* Yes? Can I help you?  
**Customer:** ...  
*Shop-assistant:* Sure. How does the jacket fit?  
**Customer:** ...  
*Shop-assistant:* Too tight? Yes, it is too tight. Would you like to try on another size?  
**Customer:** ...



**60**  Listen to the conversation in a shop and answer the questions. Translate the dialogue into Ukrainian.

*Buying a Sweater*



1. What did the customer want to buy?
2. What size and color did she need?
3. Did she try the item on?
4. What was the price?

61

🔊 Listen to four customers in the clothes shop. Why don't they buy what they try on? Match each customer with a reason.

Customer 1  a) It's a waste of money.

Customer 2  b) It doesn't fit.

Customer 3  c) It doesn't match another piece of clothing.

Customer 4  d) It doesn't suit him/her.



62

🔊 Listen to two conversations in a shop that sells trousers. Retell the story as if you were the customer.

Customer 1. ...

Customer 2. ...

63

Trevor and Laura are shopping for clothes. Choose the correct form.

**Trevor:** These trousers (1) *is / are* a bit tight. They (2) *doesn't / don't* feel very comfortable. And I think the blue ones (3) *goes / go* better with the jacket.

**Laura:** That jacket (4) *is / are* too long.

**Trevor:** Well, the jeans (5) *fits / fit* all right. Perhaps I'll buy the jeans instead.

**Laura:** Yes, the jeans (6) *looks / look* good on you. I like the style. I think they (7) *suits / suit* you. Now you get changed while I look for (8) *a / some* shorts. And I might get (9) *a / some* skirt.

64

Fill in *all, every, none, both, either or neither*.

**Assistant:** Can I help you, Madam?

**Customer:** Yes, I'd like to try 1. \_\_\_\_\_ these skirts on please.

**Assistant:** Of course. This way please. (A few minutes later) Is 2. \_\_\_\_\_ of them what you're looking for?

**Customer:** No. I'm afraid 3. \_\_\_\_\_ of them are suitable. They are 4. \_\_\_\_\_ too big.

**Assistant:** Would you like to try something else?

**Customer:** Yes, please. I'd really like something trendy. 5. \_\_\_\_\_ my clothes are plain and 6. \_\_\_\_\_ of them are very nice. I'm fed up with them. 7. \_\_\_\_\_ time I go shopping, I say I'll get something more fashionable and I never do.

**Assistant:** Let's have a look. 8. \_\_\_\_\_ our clothes are on offer at the moment and we have something for 9. \_\_\_\_\_ age, size and taste. I'm sure we'll find something for you.

65

🔊 Listen to the conversation between a customer and a shop assistant. Write down the customer's words. Translate the dialogue into Ukrainian.

*Buying a Raincoat*

Shop-assistant: *May I help you?*

Customer: ...

Shop-assistant: *Yes, they are over here. What colour are you looking for?*

Customer: ...

Shop-assistant: *And what size are you?*

Customer: ...

Shop-assistant: *Do you like this one?*

Customer: ...

Shop-assistant: *\$185.*

Customer: ...

Shop-assistant: *How about this one? It's only \$120.*

Customer: ...

Shop-assistant: *Certainly. The fitting room's just over there. How does it fit?*

Customer: ...



66

🔊 Listen to the speaker and learn how to buy a hat that suits you. Complete the sections with the relevant information.

*How to Buy a Hat That Flatters Your Face*

Step 1: ...

Step 4: ...

Step 2: ...

Tip: ...

Tip: ...

Step 5: ...

Step 3: ...

Did You Know? ...

67

🔊 Listen to the conversation in the shop and fill in the gaps. Retell the story as if you were the shop assistant.

*Buying a Swimsuit*

Customer: **Hi, how are you?**

Shop-assistant: *I'm good, how are you?*

Customer: **Good, thanks.**

Shop-assistant: *What can I help you with?*

Customer: **Well, I'm looking for something \_\_\_\_\_ to buy my daughter.**

Shop-assistant: *Alright, how old is she?*

Customer: **She's \_\_\_\_\_.**

Shop-assistant: *Girls that age are usually \_\_\_\_\_.*

Customer: **Yes, she's very fashionable; unfortunately, I'm not.**

Shop-assistant: *Well, you came to the \_\_\_\_\_.*

Customer: **Only because my daughter recommended it.**

Shop-assistant: Don't worry, I'm here to help you out.

Customer: Good. I'm looking for \_\_\_\_\_ for her.

Shop-assistant: Well, the \_\_\_\_\_ department is right over there.

Customer: Wow, there's a lot.

Shop-assistant: Yeah, we have everything your daughter could want.

Customer: \_\_\_\_\_ when I was fifteen. What do you recommend?

Shop-assistant: We just got some new \_\_\_\_\_ in that she would probably love.

Customer: Great! Do you have any \_\_\_\_\_?

Shop-assistant: Yes we do. One-piece or two-piece?

Customer: She likes wearing a \_\_\_\_\_.

Shop-assistant: Ok, you can go talk to Julie in \_\_\_\_\_.

Customer: Alright, great. Thanks for your help.

Shop-assistant: No problem. Have a nice day.

Customer: You too.



**68** Fill in one or ones.

Mary: Which shoes do you prefer, Ted?

Ted: I like the black leather 1. \_\_\_\_\_. What do you think?

Mary: They're nice but I think the brown 2. \_\_\_\_\_ are better.

Ted: Would they go with my new shirt?

Mary: Your blue 3. \_\_\_\_\_?

Ted: No, the red 4. \_\_\_\_\_ I bought yesterday.

Mary: Well, if you wear dark trousers, yes.

Ted: Maybe I should get the black 5. \_\_\_\_\_, they would go with any colour.

Mary: Well, you're the 6. \_\_\_\_\_ buying them, it's up to you!

Ted: I'm sorry, I just can't decide which 7. \_\_\_\_\_ would be best.



**69** Listen to the dialogues and fill in the table with the relevant details. If there is no information on the featured question, mark it with a cross (x). Be ready to answer the questions about each episode.

1. Who was the customer?
2. What type of shoes did the customer want to buy?
3. What size did the customer want?
4. How many pairs of shoes was the customer shown?
5. Did the customer try on the shoes?
6. What problems did the customer have?
7. What help did the shop assistant offer to solve the problem?
8. Did the customer buy the shoes?
9. How much was the purchase?





Dialogues	D. 1	D. 2	D. 3	D. 4	D. 5	D. 6	D. 7	D. 8
Question 1.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Question 2.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Question 3.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Question 4.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Question 5.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Question 6.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Question 7.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Question 8.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Question 9.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

**70** 🗣️ **Speak about your last purchase according to the plan below.**

**Plan**

1. What you need to buy and why you need it
2. What shops are good to buy what you need
3. The range of goods in the selected shop
4. Your preferences in the suggested goods
5. The process of trying on the selected goods
6. Relevant accessories to go with the purchased items
7. The procedure of payment for your purchases



**71** **Translate into English.**

*Dialogues in the Shop*

**1.**

- Я хочу купити легкий шерстяний костюм. Покажіть мені щось сіре.
- *Ось останні моделі.*
- Я б хотіла приміряти оцей облягаючий костюм.
- *Звичайно, ви можете переодягтися в примірочній в кінці зали наліво.*

**2.**

- Мені потрібно літню сукню. Але щось не дуже яскраве.
- *В нас в продажі є дуже красиві сукні зелених та синіх тонів.*
- Покажіть нам щось зелене. Зелений тобі до лиця.
- *Як тобі ця сукня?*
- Вона тобі пасує. Ти виглядаєш в ній дуже мило та елегантно, але я боюся ці панчохи не гармонують. Вони на тон темніші.

**3.**

- Мені потрібні гостроносі черевики на шнурках.
- *У нашому магазині продається першокласне взуття. Ви хочете придбати шкіряні, лаковані чи замшеві?*

- Будь ласка, зі шкіри.
- **Якого розміру взуття ви носите?**
- 42.
- **Як ви себе відчуваєте в них?**
- Вони дуже вузькі. Лівий дуже тисне.
- **Вони розтягнуться, коли ви їх носитимете.**
- Краще я візьму на один розмір більші.
- **Як вам подобається ця пара?**
- Я думаю, що ці будуть у самий раз. Так, ці черевики якраз мій розмір. В них дуже затишно. Я візьму їх.
- **Ви будете платити готівкою чи карткою?**
- Готівкою. Скільки я вам винен?
- **2350 гр. Можна заплатити ось тут біля каси. Ось ваша здача і чек.**

#### 4.

- **Здрастуйте, чим можу Вам допомогти?**
- Здрастуйте. Я хотіла б купити що-небудь з верхнього зимового одягу.
- **Ви хочете шубу, пальто чи куртку?**
- Я хочу купити теплу куртку з каптуром. В ній більш зручно, вона не така довга, як пальто чи шуба. До того ж вироби з натурального хутра неймовірно дорогі. Я ношу одяг спортивного стилю, тому я вибираю цю замшеву куртку на “блискавці”. Я хочу її приміряти.
- **Будь ласка, пройдіть у примірювальну. Вона добре на Вас сидить і дуже Вам личить. Я б порадила тільки вибрати інший головний убір. До цієї куртки підійде берет і довгий шарф. Така комбінація виглядає дуже романтично.**

#### 5.

- **Здрастуйте, чим можу Вам допомогти?**
- Здрастуйте. Я хотіла б вибрати який-небудь головний убір.
- **Що Вам показати – капелюхи, кепки, берети?**
- Мені потрібен фетровий капелюх із широкими полями. Я думаю, що він підійде до мого нового пальта.
- **Якого кольору?**
- Світло-коричневого. Я також хочу вибрати кепку для мого сина. І покажіть, будь ласка, шапку з помпоном для моєї дочки.
- **Ось, будь ласка.**



## SECTION III: BUYING VARIOUS ITEMS AT THE DEPARTMENT STORE. BUYING A PRESENT

### GRAMMAR:

- Tenses. Prepositions. (Revision)

### Jewellery and Ornaments

#### Vocabulary

Jewellery (Jewelry) and Ornaments	Ювелірні Вироби та Прикраси
an anklet	ножний браслет
a bangle	браслет (ручний або для ніг)
a bracelet	браслет
a brooch	брошка
a chain	ланцюг; ланцюжок
• <i>gold ~ / silver ~</i>	• <i>золотий ~ / срібний ~</i>
• <i>a clasp</i>	• <i>застібка</i>
a charm	талісман, амулет
a crown	корона; вінець
a choker	чокер, бархатка з декоративною пряжкою (шийна прикраса)
a cufflink	запонка
an earring / earrings	сережка / сережки
• <i>clip ~</i>	• <i>кліпси</i>
• <i>drop ~ / pendant ~ / dangly ~</i>	• <i>сережки-висульки</i>
• <i>hoop ~</i>	• <i>сережки-кільця</i>
imitation / junk jewelry	біжутерія
a locket	медальйон (для вкладеного портрета)
a medallion	медальйон
a necklace	намисто; кольє
a pendant	підвіска, висулька; кулон, брелок
a ring	каблучка
• <i>a wedding ~</i>	• <i>обручка</i>
• <i>a signet ~</i>	• <i>печатка, перстень з печаткою</i>
a string of beads	нитка намиста
a stud	“гвоздик”, гігієнічна сережка
a tiara	діадема
a tie clip	кліпс для краватки
a tie pin	шпилька для краватки
a precious stone	дорогоцінний камінь
a semi-precious stone / gem	напівкоштовний камінь; самоцвіт

<i>amber</i>	<i>буристин, янтар</i>
<i>amethyst</i>	<i>аметист</i>
<i>aquamarine</i>	<i>аквамарин</i>
<i>diamond</i>	<i>алмаз; діамант</i>
<i>emerald</i>	<i>смарагд</i>
<i>moonstone</i>	<i>місячний камінь</i>
<i>pearl</i>	<i>перли; перлина</i>
<i>ruby</i>	<i>рубін</i>
<i>sapphire</i>	<i>сапфір</i>
<i>topaz</i>	<i>топаз</i>
<i>turquoise</i>	<i>бірюза</i>

## Haberdashery

### Vocabulary

<b>Haberdashery</b>	<b>Галантерея</b>
<i>items used in sewing</i>	<i>все для шиття</i>
buttons	гудзики
fastenings	застібки
hooks and eyes	гачки та петлі
needles	голки
knitting needles / ~ sticks	шпиці для в'язання
pins	шпильки
a ribbon	стрічка
tape / lace	тасьма, мереживо
• <i>a tape measure</i>	• <i>сантиметр</i>
a thimble	наперсток
threads	нитки
zips	блискавки
<i>small leather items</i>	<i>дрібна шкіргалантерея</i>
a belt	пояс, ремінь
a bag	сумка
• <i>a clutch bag</i>	• <i>клатч, пласка сумка без ручки</i>
• <i>a bum bag / a fanny pack</i>	• <i>барсетка</i>
• <i>a handbag</i>	• <i>дамська сумочка</i>
• <i>a shoulder bag</i>	• <i>сумка через плече; сумка на ремені</i>
a briefcase	портфель
gloves	рукавички
a purse / a change purse	жіночий гаманець для дрібних грошей
a rucksack / a backpack	ранець; рюкзак

a suitcase	невелика плоска валіза
a wallet	портмоне, гаманець для паперових грошей та карток
a watch band	ремінець для годинника
<i>various items</i>	<i>різноманітні речі</i>
braces	підтяжки
a clock	годинник (настінний, настольний)
a comb	гребінь, гребінець
a hairbrush	щітка для волосся
a hairpin	шпилька для волосся
a hair slide / a hair clip	затискач для волосся, закладка
a key ring	брелок
a nail file	пилочка для нігтів
a razor / a ~ blade	бритва / лезо (безпечної) бритви
a tie	краватка
a trinket	дрібничка; дешева прикраса
an umbrella	парасолька
a watch	годинник (наручний, кишеньковий)

## Perfumery and Make-up

### Vocabulary

<b>Perfumery and Make-up</b>	<b>Парфумерія та Косметика</b>
face care products	засоби для догляду за обличчям
• <i>face cream / lotion / milk</i>	• <i>крем / лосьйон / молочко для обличчя</i>
make-up / cosmetics	косметика, макіяж
• <i>~ remover</i>	• <i>засіб для зняття макіяжу</i>
• <i>~ kit / beauty kit</i>	• <i>косметичка</i>
blush(er)	рум'яна
• <i>a ~ brush</i>	• <i>пензлик для нанесення рум'ян</i>
concealer	консілер
eye pencil / eye liner	олівець або рідина для підведення очей
eye shadow	тіні для повік
• <i>an ~ applicator</i>	• <i>пензлик для нанесення тіней</i>
foundation	крем під пудру / тональний крем
lip gloss	блиск для губ
lip pencil / lip liner	олівець для підведення губ
lipstick	губна помада
mascara	туш для вій, брів
• <i>a ~ wand</i>	• <i>пензлик для нанесення туші</i>

powder	пудра
• <i>compact ~ with a mirror</i>	• <i>компактна пудра з люстерком</i>
body cream / ~ lotion / ~ milk	крем для тіла / лосьйон ~ / молочко ~
aftershave / shaving lotion	<i>лосьйон після гоління</i>
deodorant / deospray	дезодорант, дезодорант для тіла
• <i>deostick / antiperspirant</i>	• <i>антиперспірант</i>
foam	піна
• <i>shaving ~</i>	• <i>~ для гоління</i>
• <i>shower ~</i>	• <i>~ для душі</i>
gel	гель
• <i>shaving ~</i>	• <i>~ для гоління</i>
• <i>shower ~</i>	• <i>~ для душі</i>
hair care products	засоби для догляду за волоссям
• <i>hair dye</i>	• <i>фарба для волосся</i>
• <i>hair spray</i>	• <i>лак для волосся</i>
• <i>hair styling mousse</i>	• <i>засіб для укладки волосся</i>
• <i>hair shampoo / balm; balsam</i>	• <i>шампунь / бальзам</i>
nail polish / nail varnish	лак для нігтів
• <i>a ~ file</i>	• <i>пилочка для нігтів</i>
• <i>~ remover</i>	• <i>рідина для зняття лаку</i>
perfume / scent	парфуми, духи
• <i>a bottle of ~</i>	• <i>флакони духів</i>
• <i>niche ~ / selective ~</i>	• <i>ексклюзивні духи з натур-и компон-ми</i>
• <i>eau de Cologne</i>	• <i>одеколон</i>
• <i>eau de toilette / toilet water</i>	• <i>туалетна (парфумована) вода</i>
soap	мило
• <i>a bar of soap</i>	• <i>брусочок ~</i>
• <i>liquid soap</i>	• <i>рідке ~</i>

## Stationery

### Vocabulary

Stationery	Канцелярське Приладдя
a calculator	калькулятор
a clip	скоба
• <i>a paper ~</i>	• <i>канцелярська скріпка</i>
• <i>a Bulldog ~</i>	• <i>зажим, затискач для паперу</i>
a clipboard	пюпітр у вигляді дощечки із затискачем
correction fluid / a ~ pen	коректор / коректор-олівець
an envelope	конверт



an eraser / a rubber	гумка, ластик (для стирання)
a file / a filer	швидкозшивач
a folder	папка для паперів
• <i>a ring binder</i>	• <i>папка на кільцях</i>
glue	клей
• <i>liquid ~</i>	• <i>рідкий ~</i>
• <i>a ~ stick</i>	• <i>~-олівець</i>
a hole punch(er)	діркопробивач
ink	чорнило
a marker / a highlighter	маркер / маркер-хайлайтер
a white board ~	маркер для дошки
notes	папір для записів, заміток
• <i>Post-it ~ / sticky ~</i>	• <i>папір для заміток із клейкою стрічкою</i>
a notebook	зошит, записник, блокнот
• <i>a ~ with spiral-bound</i>	• <i>зошит, скріплений спіраллю</i>
a notepad / a memo pad	блокнот
paints	фарби
• <i>watercolours</i>	• <i>акварель</i>
paper	папір
• <i>a pack of ~</i>	• <i>пачка паперу</i>
• <i>a sheet of ~</i>	• <i>аркуш паперу</i>
a pen	ручка
• <i>a ball ~ / a ballpoint</i>	• <i>кулькова ~</i>
• <i>a fountain ~</i>	• <i>чорнильна ~</i>
• <i>a felt ~</i>	• <i>фломастер</i>
• <i>a gel ~</i>	• <i>гелева ~</i>
a pencil	олівець
• <i>a ~ case / a ~ box</i>	• <i>пенал</i>
• <i>a ~ sharpener</i>	• <i>стругачка для олівців</i>
• <i>to write in ~ / draw in ~</i>	• <i>писати / малювати олівцем</i>
a pin	кнопка
• <i>a drawing ~ / thumbtack</i>	• <i>креслярська кнопка</i>
• <i>a pushpin</i>	• <i>канцелярська кнопка (пласка)</i>
plasticine	пластилін
a ruler	лінійка
a stapler	степлер
• <i>staples</i>	• <i>скоби, дужки для скріплювання зшивання паперу</i>
• <i>staple remover</i>	• <i>пристрій для видалення скоб</i>

tape	стрічка
• <i>a ~ dispenser</i>	• <i>розподільювач (катушка)</i>
• <i>adhesive ~ / sticky ~</i>	• <i>клейка канцелярська стрічка</i>
• <i>Scotch ~</i>	• <i>прозора клейка стрічка, скотч</i>

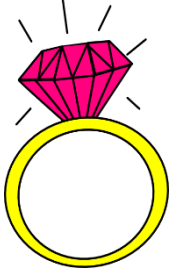
## Electric Goods and Electronics

### Vocabulary

<b>Electric Goods</b>	<b>Електротовари</b>
a bulb	електрична лампа
a fuse	запобіжник, електрична “пробка”
a lamp holder	патрон лампи
a plug	штепсельна вилка; штиковий контакт
a power point	електрощиток
a socket	штепсельна розетка
an electric torch	кишеньковий ліхтар
wire	дріт
household electrical appliances	побутова техніка
kitchen electrical appliances	кухонні електроприлади
<b>Electronics and Office Supplies</b>	<b>Електронна Апаратура та Офісна Техніка</b>
an amplifier	гучномовець, підсилювач звуку
a camera	фотоапарат
• <i>a digital camera</i>	• <i>цифровий ~</i>
a phone	телефон
• <i>a cell phone</i>	• <i>сотовий ~</i>
• <i>a mobile phone</i>	• <i>мобільний ~</i>
a computer (PC)	комп’ютер
• <i>a flat-screen monitor</i>	• <i>монітор з плоским екраном</i>
• <i>a keyboard</i>	• <i>клавіатура</i>
• <i>a mouse</i>	• <i>мишка</i>
• <i>a system unit</i>	• <i>системний блок</i>
a laptop	ноутбук
• <i>~ with a CD / DVD drive</i>	• <i>ноутбук з дисководом</i>
a fax / a fax machine	факс
a photocopier	фотокопіювальний пристрій
a printer	принтер
• <i>a cartridge</i>	• <i>картридж</i>
a remote control	пульт, дистанційне управління
a router / a Wi-fi ~	Вай-фай роутер

a (flatbed) scanner	сканер
an MP3 player / a Walkman	плеєр
• ~ <i>earbuds / earphones / earpieces</i>	• <i>маленькі навушники для плеєра</i>
a headset / headphones	навушники з мікрофоном
a webcam	веб-камера
a TV set / a flat-screen ~	телевізор
a USB flash drive / a memory stick	флешка

**1** Fill in the gaps with the relevant jewellery items.



1. You wear a silver \_\_\_\_\_ on your finger; you can have an \_\_\_\_\_ with a \_\_\_\_\_ during the proposal or a \_\_\_\_\_ after a wedding. 2. I wear a \_\_\_\_\_ on my left wrist to know the time and a designer \_\_\_\_\_ on my right wrist to stay stylish. 3. Maria wears a pearl \_\_\_\_\_ on her neck and emerald \_\_\_\_\_ on her ears. 4. She doesn't wear a \_\_\_\_\_ as her hair is short. 5. A queen wears a gold \_\_\_\_\_ on her head. 6. I prefer diamond \_\_\_\_\_ to pearl ones as the latter make me older. 7. \_\_\_\_\_ are worn with a long-sleeve shirt to make it stylish and aristocratic.

**2** Listen to the conversation between a robber and a pawn broker. Name the items of jewelry the pawn broker got interested in and the ones he refused to take and state the reasons.

Item 1. \_\_\_\_\_ Status: \_\_\_\_\_ Reason: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Item 2. \_\_\_\_\_ Status: \_\_\_\_\_ Reason: \_\_\_\_\_  
 ... ...

**3** Listen to the speaker, write down the items of jewelry you hear and translate them into Ukrainian.

- |          |          |           |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 5. _____ | 9. _____  | 13. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 6. _____ | 10. _____ | 14. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 7. _____ | 11. _____ | 15. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 8. _____ | 12. _____ | 16. _____ |

**4** a) Read and translate the text into Ukrainian. Are your preferences similar?

*Modern Preferences in Jewelry*

Looking fashionable and chic at all times is not as hard as it may seem. As long as you know the nuances that go into making every look matter, you can look smart and always in style, even when wearing simple jeans and a T-shirt. Jewelry and accessories are a great way to alter a look in a subtle manner.

So, what kind of jewelry do girls like most of all? Anything that is unique, anything that is different and colourful is what girls prefer. Fashionable and trendy jewelry that sets them apart, is affordable and can be used over and over again without tiring itself out is a preference with girls.

Jewelry that girls like most of all are as follow:

- **Gemstone Studded Jewelry:** Girls love to wear colored jewelry and hence they prefer gemstone jewelry. They look charming with a ruby gemstone ring or blue sapphire pendant.
- **Pearl Jewelry:** It is said that classy girls wear classy pearls. Hence, girls are still following this style and love to wear pearl jewelry at many occasions. They like to wear a pearl necklace or a strand of pearls as it gives a classic and elegant look. Pearls enhances the style of a girl.
- **Gold Jewelry:** Some girls like to wear traditional gold jewelry that goes with their traditional attire.
- **Studs:** Studs are the first thing people own whenever they get ear piercing, they could be edgy, bold, sweet and anything possible. They are affordable, suit our pocket money and go with our daily outfits.
- **Necklaces:** Choker necklaces are immensely popular and are now gaining popularity among young girls. They suit with almost all types of outfits.
- **Bracelets:** Bracelets have been part of women's jewelry but young girls now opt for bracelets, which are not common but cool looking and elegant. Bracelets with charms are on top of their preference list.
- **Rings:** Rings can prove to be quite a lifesaver in this case. When it comes to designs of rings for girls and boys, there is a wide collection available in jewelry shops. You can choose between traditional, indo western and even precious stone studded rings. While women can choose from cocktail rings, bands, clusters, solitaires, and statement rings, men can go for rings that give a fashionable, modern, or classic look. Diamond cocktail rings are all the rage as well. You can even choose between real pearls and artificial jewelry.



Most men are not big fans of jewelry but they do enjoy looking at their girls wearing nice pieces of true artworks. Men say they hate feeling uncomfortable having different little useless items on them. But in some cases, usually very official, they do accessorize their outfits with ornaments like cufflinks, rings or a fashionable wristwatch. But jewelry is always one of the most popular choices of gifts because they are pleasing to the eye and often of substantial monetary value.

In any case, jewelry reveals a little bit about the wearer's style and taste, and even their social and financial status.

**b) 🎧 Now listen to the speaker telling about jewelry. Fill in the gaps.**

***Jewelry***

I think jewelry is stupid. What's **1.** \_\_\_\_\_? I can understand it was popular **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ thousand years ago, but not today. **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ to when we lived in caves. Why do people feel **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ wear necklaces and bracelets? It seems that jewelry is becoming more **5.** \_\_\_\_\_. Nowadays people are wearing rings on their toes and piercing their tongues and bodies. I've never really understood **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ jewelry, especially thick gold chains. A lot of jewelry is dangerous. I **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ ear-rings catch on something, **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ your ears. Some rings that women wear are also dangerous. They **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ serious damage to someone's face. The only jewelry I wear is a wedding ring. Just **10.** \_\_\_\_\_.

**c) 🎧 Now answer the questions about jewelry.**

- **1.** What is your attitude towards jewelry? Are you a jewelry person?
- **2.** Do you wear jewelry? If so, what kind of jewelry do you wear on your head, neck, wrist, ears?
- **3.** How often do you wear jewelry? Is there any jewelry that you wear 24/7?
- **4.** Do you think wearing a lot of jewelry looks good or bad?
- **5.** What kind of jewelry looks good on men?
- **6.** What is your most valuable piece of jewelry?
- **7.** Do you like traditional or ethnic jewelry? What do you think of cheap jewelry? Do people look better with or without jewelry?
- **8.** Do you think jewelry should be passed down from one generation to the next? Do you have such items in your family?

**5**

**🎧 Listen to the speaker's opinion about gold. Fill in the gaps and translate the text. Answer the questions below.**

***Gold***

I don't understand the **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ with gold. It's just a **2.** \_\_\_\_\_. It isn't even the **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ metal. It's interesting how almost every culture in the world loves gold. Indians spend a **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ on it. When their children get married, they give gold **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ as gifts. Most of the world's wedding rings are gold. I know different countries prefer **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ of gold. In Thailand, only **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ is good enough, but in England, people buy a lot of 9-carat gold. It seems like we have always loved gold. Think how many stories there are from hundreds of years ago about gold **8.** \_\_\_\_\_. In fact, if you go back further, Egyptian **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ had lots of gold. I'll never forget Tutankhamen's mask. The gold in that was **10.** \_\_\_\_\_.

- **1.** Do you prefer gold or silver jewelry?
- **2.** What is the best age for boys and girls to start wearing gold jewelry?
- **3.** What piece of gold jewelry would you like to design and then have a jeweler make for you?

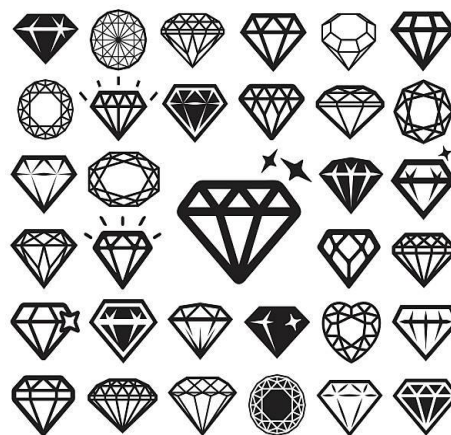
6

🔊 Listen to the speaker telling about diamonds. Fill in the gaps and translate the text. Answer the questions below.

### Diamonds

There's a famous song that says "Diamonds are a girl's 1. \_\_\_\_". Is that true? Do all 2. \_\_\_\_ like diamonds? They are certainly very beautiful, especially when you see them 3. \_\_\_\_\_. But really, only 4. \_\_\_\_ can afford diamonds. When I bought my wife's 5. \_\_\_\_\_, we could only afford a 6. \_\_\_\_\_. There were lots of beautiful rings in the store with 7. \_\_\_\_\_ but they all cost 8. \_\_\_\_\_. One day I'll buy her a big diamond as 9. \_\_\_\_\_. Nowadays you have to worry where diamonds 10. \_\_\_\_\_. Many countries sell diamonds to buy 11. \_\_\_\_\_. These are called 12. \_\_\_\_\_ diamonds. If you buy a diamond, make sure it has a 13. \_\_\_\_\_ so you know which country it came from.

- 1. Do you have diamonds? What items of jewelry are they in?
- 2. Do you like diamonds? Why or Why not?
- 3. Where is the best place to buy jewelry with diamonds?
- 4. Are all jewelry stores the same? Do they have high quality rings?
- 5. What do you think about Tiffany's? Does it have good quality jewelry?
- 6. What jewelry store do you recommend?
- 7. Why are blood diamonds called blood diamonds? Which term do you prefer, "blood diamonds" or "conflict diamonds"? What do you know about blood diamonds? Why do countries buy these diamonds?
- 8. Would you buy a blood diamonds product if it were really cheap?
- 9. Does your country insist on "conflict-free" diamond certificates? How can you be sure you're not buying a conflict diamond?
- 10. What question would you like to ask a blood diamond seller? What do you think his/her answer would be?



7


🔊 Listen to the speaker, write down the items of jewelry and haberdashery you hear and translate them into Ukrainian.

a)

- |          |           |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 7. _____  | 13. _____ | 19. _____ | 25. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 8. _____  | 14. _____ | 20. _____ | 26. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 9. _____  | 15. _____ | 21. _____ | 27. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 10. _____ | 16. _____ | 22. _____ |           |
| 5. _____ | 11. _____ | 17. _____ | 23. _____ |           |
| 6. _____ | 12. _____ | 18. _____ | 24. _____ |           |



b)

- |          |           |           |           |   |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|---|
| 1. _____ | 6. _____  | 11. _____ | 16. _____ | 21. _____   |
| 2. _____ | 7. _____  | 12. _____ | 17. _____ | 22. _____   |
| 3. _____ | 8. _____  | 13. _____ | 18. _____ |   |
| 4. _____ | 9. _____  | 14. _____ | 19. _____ |  |
| 5. _____ | 10. _____ | 15. _____ | 20. _____ |   |

8

Answer the questions connected with haberdashery issues.



- 1. How often do you visit haberdashery stores?
- 2. What do you buy there?
- 3. What was your last purchase?
- 4. Who do you think are typical customers of such shops?
- 5. What would you recommend to buy in your favourite haberdashery store?
- 6. Would you like to own a haberdashery shop? What would be your top items?

9

Listen to the speaker, write down the items of makeup and cosmetics you hear and translate them into Ukrainian.

a)

- |          |          |           |           |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 5. _____ | 9. _____  | 13. _____ | 17. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 6. _____ | 10. _____ | 14. _____ | 18. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 7. _____ | 11. _____ | 15. _____ | 19. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 8. _____ | 12. _____ | 16. _____ | 20. _____ |

b)

- |          |           |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 7. _____  | 13. _____ | 19. _____ | 25. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 8. _____  | 14. _____ | 20. _____ | 26. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 9. _____  | 15. _____ | 21. _____ | 27. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 10. _____ | 16. _____ | 22. _____ | 28. _____ |
| 5. _____ | 11. _____ | 17. _____ | 23. _____ | 29. _____ |
| 6. _____ | 12. _____ | 18. _____ | 24. _____ | 30. _____ |

c)

- |          |           |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 6. _____  | 11. _____ | 16. _____ | 21. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 7. _____  | 12. _____ | 17. _____ | 22. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 8. _____  | 13. _____ | 18. _____ | 23. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 9. _____  | 14. _____ | 19. _____ | 24. _____ |
| 5. _____ | 10. _____ | 15. _____ | 20. _____ |           |

10

a) Read and translate the text into Ukrainian. Which articles do you have in your make-up kit?

## Cosmetics

**Cosmetics** (also called **personal care products** or **make-up**) are products used to make the human body look different. Personal care includes products as diverse as **cleansing pads, colognes, cotton swabs, cotton pads, deodorant, eye liner, facial tissue, hair clippers, lip gloss, lipstick, lotion, makeup, nail files, perfumes, razors, shaving cream, moisturizer, talcum powder, toilet paper, toothpaste, facial treatments, wet wipes** and so on.



Often cosmetics are used to make someone more attractive to one person, or to a culture or sub-culture. In Western culture, women are the main users of cosmetics. Their use by men is less frequent, except on stage, television and movies. Cosmetics are widely used in the world of acting.

All cosmetics are temporary. They need to be renewed after a certain time. Most cosmetic products and methods are intended to improve the look of the face. The purpose is to clean the skin, improve its basic quality, and prepare it for the application of make-up. Key make-up products are:

- **Cleansers**, used to remove make-up and clean the skin.
- **Toners**, used to remove oil from the skin and close the pores on the skin.
- **Moisturizers**, used to make the skin soft and to reduce evaporation of water from the skin.
- **Primers**, used to prepare the surface for the later application of make-up.
- **Concealers**, to mask flaws or slightly modify the colour of the skin.
- **Foundation**, a product which holds face-powder in place. More generally, it creates an even, uniform colour, covers flaws and adjusts the natural skintone.
- **Rouge or Blusher**, talcum-based reddish powder, to give a more youthful appearance. Used mainly to emphasize the cheekbones, sometimes to redden the cheeks.
- **Face Powder**, applied with a powder puff, brush or sponge, it comes in all shades to match skin.
- **Lipstick**, used to make the lips shiny or to color them.
- **Eye Make-up (mascara, eye shadow, eye liner)**, makes the eyes look noticeable and attractive.
- **Hand Care**, includes **hand cream, manicure cosmetics, and nail polish**.

You can use cosmetics to look younger and even older, if you want. Of course, most of the times we do it for ourselves but sometimes there is pressure from the side of our society which expects people to look a certain way. That's why people who think makeup is dishonest sometimes call makeup *fake-up*.

b) 🎧 Listen to the speaker's opinion about cosmetics. Fill in the gaps and translate the text. Answer the questions below.

### *Cosmetics*

I wish we didn't need cosmetics. We spend so much **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ on them. And for what? We take them off **2.** \_\_\_\_\_, only to put them all on again **3.** \_\_\_\_\_. If you think about it, they're **4.** \_\_\_\_\_. Why does a lipstick or **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ cost so much? The really expensive cosmetics don't actually make you **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ than really cheap ones. A lot depends too on **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ – choosing the right colours to match **8.** \_\_\_\_\_, and how you put your make-up on. I sometimes laugh at the ladies selling cosmetics in **9.** \_\_\_\_\_. They're meant to be **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ but they look like **11.** \_\_\_\_\_. I mean, do they really need to **12.** \_\_\_\_\_? One thing I worry about is whether the chemicals **13.** \_\_\_\_\_.

- **1.** What do you think of cosmetics? How important are they?
- **2.** Is there anything strange about people using cosmetics? Do you think people look better without make-up and cosmetics? How much more beautiful do you and other people look with cosmetics?
- **3.** Do people use cosmetics because they lack confidence? Do you know anyone who uses too much make-up? What is their reason?
- **4.** Do you think cosmetics are reasonably priced? Don't you think cosmetics are a waste of money?
- **5.** Do you believe cosmetics companies' ads that say their products erase wrinkles and slow down the aging process?
- **6.** What do you think of men wearing lipstick, mascara and foundation?
- **7.** Why is most lipstick red or pink? What's wrong with black or green?
- **8.** Do you think cosmetics are good for the skin?
- **9.** From what age is it OK to start using cosmetics?
- **10.** Do people use cosmetics differently in different countries?
- **11.** What cosmetics and cosmetics companies are best?
- **12.** What new type of cosmetics would you like to see on the market?

11

🎧 Listen to the dialogue. Fill in the gaps and translate the text. Answer the questions below.

### *Makeup, Lotions and Skin Care*

Suzy: *I love makeup.*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *I like Maybelline. What about you?*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *I like Mac's lipstick, it looks good on me.*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *I like pink lipstick the best. What about you?*

Meggy: ...



Suzy: *Yeah, I like to change my makeup to match what I'm wearing.*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *Not really, unless it's a special occasion. What about you?*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *Well, I use a lot of skin care products too.*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *I use a facial wash and body lotion. How about you?*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *I don't like sunscreen because I like to get tan.*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *I think my husband uses sunscreen.*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *Really? I think it's okay for men to use makeup.*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *Plastic surgery isn't okay for anyone, including women!*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *I think it looks unnatural.*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *Not if you apply it correctly.*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *I do a small amount of foundation, then I put on eyeliner, and I finish with lipstick.*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *Yeah, I try to make it as natural as possible.*

Meggy: ...

Suzy: *I agree!*



- 1. What's your favorite brand? What products from this brand are your favourite?
- 2. Do you wear a lot of makeup? Why or Why not? How do you apply it?
- 3. What skin care products do you use on a daily basis?
- 4. What do you think about plastic surgery?

12

🎧 Listen to the speaker telling about perfume and answer the questions.

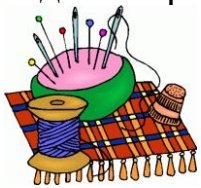
### *Perfume*

- 1. What does the speaker think about perfume? Why does he think so?
- 2. Why do people need to wear perfume?
- 3. What do you think of perfume? Is it OK for men and women?
- 4. Do you wear a lot of perfume? Why or Why not? How do you apply it?
- 5. What perfume brands are your favourite?
- 6. Do you use the same perfume in winter and in summer? Why or Why not?

**Translate into English.**

1. В асортименті цього ювелірного магазину представлені розкішні прикраси з дорогоцінних матеріалів. Магазин зустрічає покупця неймовірним блиском діамантів, мерехтінням золота й срібла, різноманітними ювелірними виробами, які чекають на своїх власників. Сережки, кліпси, підвіски, каблучки, ланцюжки, брошки з діамантами, топазами, рубінами, сапфірами, перлинами та іншими дорогоцінними каміннями не залишать байдужим жодного шанувальника ювелірних прикрас.

2. Моя бабуся завжди носить янтарне намисто, обручку, браслет та брошку з дорогоцінним камінням. А ці сережки з перлинами вона подарувала мені на день народження минулого року.



3. Я рідко заходжу до галантереї, щоб придбати щось для шиття, тому що я не дуже добре шию. Хоча, іноді мені бракує якогось кольору ниток чи голок, і я з задоволенням йду туди. Мені подобається, яким чином різноманітні кольорові нитки, гудзики, застібки, стрічки, мережива та тасьма виставлені на вітринах. Я можу годинами роздивлятися їх.

4. Відділ галантереї пропонує широкий вибір шкіряних сумок, чемоданів, гаманців, пасків та рукавичок.



5. Давай заїдемо до відділу галантереї. Мені треба купити елегантний клатч з блискітками та вишивкою до моєї нової вечірньої сукні. Я хочу ще подивитися барсетку та портмоне для чоловіка, невеличкий гаманець та косметичку для мами і зручний рюкзак для сина. Крім того, пропоную вибрати тобі нову сумку з ременем чи дамську сумочку, бо твоя вже вийшла з моди та й виглядає заношеною.

6. Щоб купити брусок мила, зубну пасту чи крем для гоління, не треба шукати відділ господарських товарів чи косметики. Всі ці речі продаються у будь-якому супермаркеті, на базарі, навіть в кіосках на вулиці.



7. У магазині косметики завжди величезний вибір декоративної косметики різних брендів. Будь-яка жінка може придбати тут туш, помаду, блиск для губ, рум'яна, тіні, пудру та тональний крем за прийнятну для неї ціну. Все залежить від її вподобань. Учора я теж придбала тут собі пудру, туш для вій, крем для рук та крем для обличчя, рум'яна. А тіні для очей та духи були дуже вигідною покупкою.

8. На день народження своєї сестри я придбала набір косметики, в який входять тіні для очей, рум'яна, туш, пудра та декілька помад різних відтінків. У неї завжди повно губних помад різних кольорів та олівців для очей.





9. Мережа магазинів “ДЦ” пропонує якісні духи, одеколони та туалетну воду. При виборі парфумів, ви маєте пам’ятати, що парфумерна продукція ділиться на групи. Перша група – духи. Вони мають максимальну кількість запашних речовин і дуже стійкі. Друга група – парфумерна вода, що має в своєму складі таку ж кількість запашних речовин, як і в духів, але їх загальна концентрація тут трохи менше. Від цього аромат парфумерної води стає надзвичайно ніжним. Третя група – туалетна вода. Це найпопулярніший вид парфумерної продукції, тому що вона не має сильного запаху, що дозволяє використовувати її протягом усього дня. До четвертої, самої “легкої” групи належить одеколон. Зміст запашних речовин у ньому менше, тому запах не такий стійкий.

14

**Read the text and translate into English. Do you love stationery? Why or why not? What are your favourite items?**

### *Why I Love Stationery*

The digital age was meant to put an end to paper – but we still cannot get enough of pens, notebooks and fancy rubber band holders. Exercise and memo books, writing sets and endless rubbers, coloured pens and propelling pencils, Post-it Notes and fountain pens, highlighters in different hues, markers – great, galumphing things – and tiny fibre-tips, envelopes all shapes and sizes, notebooks stapled (spiral-bound or sewn-spined) – I own and love them all.

We all love stationery (some more moderately and tastefully than others). But why? It seems to me to offer two great and seductive promises. The first is that it will unleash your creative potential. The unsullied page, the pristine pen offer limitless possibilities. The second promise is baser but, I find as I get older, even more attractive than bestsellerdom. It is the promise of organisation. After all, stationery still makes us feel better. In a recession, you can still find something to suit your pocket and cheer you up.

15

**Listen to the dialogues. Fill in the gaps and translate the texts. What did the customer want to buy each time? What did she buy?**

### *Buying a Pen*

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** School supplies? We have them all! Any specific pen type?

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** We have both of those kinds.

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** Yes, we do. Is that all?

**Customer:** ...



### *Buying a Pen as a Gift*

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** What kind of pen would he like?

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** We have plenty of those in aisle 7 and 8.

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** Yes, in aisle 12.

**Customer:** ...

### *Getting a Cheaper Alternative*

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** That pen is \$2.50.

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** We have ballpoint pens and special paper in this section here.

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** That set is \$80.00.

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** You can buy the same pen by itself for only \$15.00.

**Customer:** ...

### *Buying a Notebook*

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** Sure. What kind of notebook?

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** Okay. I have this one in good quality paper and plastic cover.

**Customer:** ...

**Employee:** It's 5 dollars.

**Customer:** ...

16

**Answer the questions.**

#### *Electronics and Electric Appliances*

- 1. What electric appliances do you often buy? Why do you need them?
- 2. Where you prefer to buy such products?
- 3. Is it safe to buy electronics online? What experience do you have?
- 4. Are electronic devices expensive?
- 5. What brands are your favourite?

17

**Translate into English.**



1. Ніяк не знайду в цьому величезному універмазі відділ канцтоварів. У мене в степлері закінчилися скоби. Також літо вже закінчується і моя донька вже скоро знов піде до школи. Я хочу

подивитися ціни на кулькові ручки, олівці, фломастери, пенали, лінійки, зошити, блокноти, папір, чорнила, фарби та клей. Думаю цього року усе це мені обійдеться у кругленьку суму грошей.

2. Ви не могли б мені сказати, які телевізори на дистанційному управлінні та плеєри з навушниками користуються зараз широким попитом у людей?



3. Ми збираємося купити пилосос та праску в магазині електротоварів. Ми вчора вже купили ліхтарика та пару електричних лампочок.

4. Завітайте до нового супермаркету, де можна купити майже все починаючи з гудзиків, гребінців та зубних щіток і закінчуючи аудіо-відео технікою та автомобілями. І все продається за зниженими цінами.

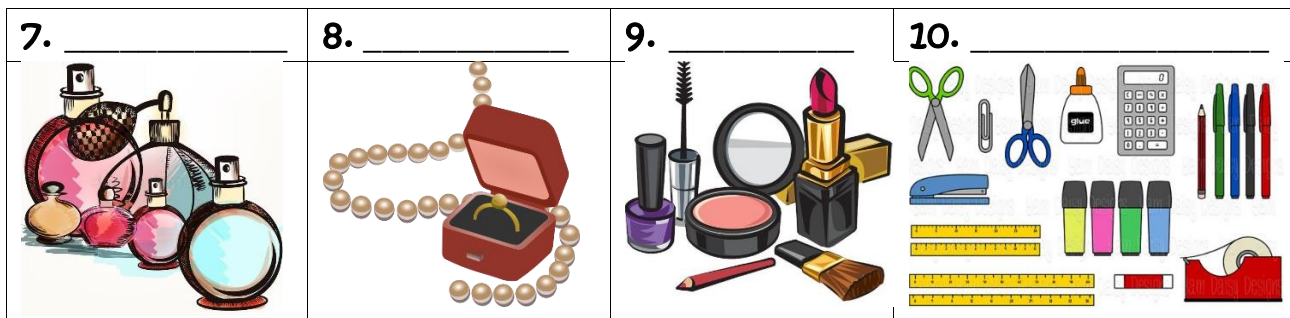


5. Мережа магазинів побутової техніки “Ельдорадо” тепер у самому центрі Києва в ТРЦ Gulliver! Магазин зібрав кращі пропозиції високоякісної техніки знаменитих брендів за цінами, які вас приємно вразять. Ви знайдете велику і дрібну побутову техніку, останні й популярні моделі телевізорів, ноутбуків, смартфонів та іншої електроніки, яка спростить ваше життя, зробивши його яскравішим і приємнішим. Консультанти магазину завжди раді допомогти в вашому виборі, запропонувавши найбільш доречні варіанти техніки на ваш смак та запланований бюджет.

18

What do you see in the pictures? Say where you usually buy these items.

<p>1. _____</p>	<p>2. _____</p>	<p>3. _____</p>
<p>4. _____</p>	<p>5. _____</p>	<p>6. _____</p>



19

You see four words in each line. One word doesn't go with the rest for some reason. You have to spot the odd one and tick it (✓). There can be different reasons.

	<i>a</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>c</i>	<i>d</i>
1.	<i>tie clip</i>	<i>tie pin</i>	<i>hairpin</i>	<i>pushpin</i>
2.	<i>blusher</i>	<i>ink</i>	<i>powder</i>	<i>foundation</i>
3.	<i>eyelid</i>	<i>eye liner</i>	<i>eye shadow</i>	<i>mascara</i>
4.	<i>eau de Cologne</i>	<i>toilet water</i>	<i>aftershave</i>	<i>perfume</i>
5.	<i>clutch bag</i>	<i>tea bag</i>	<i>handbag</i>	<i>shoulder bag</i>
6.	<i>adhesive tape</i>	<i>tape measure</i>	<i>threads</i>	<i>needles</i>
7.	<i>wallet</i>	<i>gloves</i>	<i>belt</i>	<i>bulb</i>
8.	<i>nail file</i>	<i>mouse</i>	<i>screen</i>	<i>keyboard</i>
9.	<i>bracelet</i>	<i>choker</i>	<i>cufflink</i>	<i>ring</i>
10.	<i>comb</i>	<i>ballpoint</i>	<i>stapler</i>	<i>hole punch</i>
11.	<i>webcam</i>	<i>photocopier</i>	<i>antiperspirant</i>	<i>amplifier</i>
12.	<i>tights</i>	<i>stockings</i>	<i>gloves</i>	<i>socks</i>
13.	<i>lipstick</i>	<i>memory stick</i>	<i>knitting stick</i>	<i>walking stick</i>
14.	<i>hair dye</i>	<i>hair spray</i>	<i>hair balm</i>	<i>hair cut</i>
15.	<i>mixer</i>	<i>toaster</i>	<i>iron</i>	<i>mincer</i>
16.	<i>belt</i>	<i>suspenders</i>	<i>watch band</i>	<i>file</i>
17.	<i>watercolours</i>	<i>paints</i>	<i>dye</i>	<i>glue</i>
18.	<i>banknote</i>	<i>notebook</i>	<i>notepad</i>	<i>notes</i>
19.	<i>necklace</i>	<i>chain</i>	<i>scarf</i>	<i>string of beads</i>
20.	<i>correction pen</i>	<i>fountain pen</i>	<i>gel pen</i>	<i>felt pen</i>

20

Transcribe the words from the left column. Match the words and phrases with their definitions.

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1. <i>a folder</i>    | a) a decorated metal or wooden ring that you can wear round your wrist or ankle                                      |
| 2. <i>Scotch tape</i> | b) a small bag attached to a belt that you wear round your waist. You use it to carry things such as money and keys. |
| 3. <i>a bulb</i>      | c) a substance used as make-up to make eyelashes darker and thicker  |

4. *Post-it note* **d)** a small pair of headphones, typically with a microphone attached that you can use for listening to music or for using a telephone
5. *a paper clip* **e)** a device for punching holes in sheets of paper, so that they can be filed in a ring binder
6. *a torch* **f)** a piece of jewellery, typically made of gold or silver, containing something of sentimental value, such as a photograph, which a person wears on a chain around the neck
7. *a trinket* **g)** a strip of metal, plastic, or cloth which has numbers marked on it and is used for measuring
8. *a bum bag* **h)** clear sticky tape that is sold in rolls and that you use, for example to stick paper or card together, or to stick things onto a wall
9. *a bangle* **i)** a thin piece of cardboard in which you can keep loose papers
10. *a headset* **j)** a piece of paper with an adhesive strip on one side, designed to be stuck prominently to an object or surface and easily removed when necessary
11. *a hole punch* **k)** a strong sprung metal device with two flat plates that close so as to hold papers together
12. *a choker* **l)** an electronic device in a radio or stereo system which causes sounds or signals to get louder
13. *a locket* **m)** a piece of bent wire or plastic used for holding several sheets of paper together
14. *mascara* **n)** the glass part of an electric lamp, which gives out light when electricity passes through it
15. *scent* **o)** a pretty piece of jewellery or small ornament that is inexpensive
16. *a socket* **p)** a panel of keys that operate a computer or typewriter
17. *a tape measure* **q)** a small electric light which is powered by batteries and which you can carry in your hand
18. *an amplifier* **r)** a leather or plastic rectangular container with a handle for carrying books and documents
19. *eau de cologne* **s)** a substance that is applied to the skin, especially under the arms, to prevent or reduce perspiration
20. *antiperspirant* **t)** a liquid with a pleasant smell that men sometimes put on their faces after shaving
21. *a clutch bag* **u)** a flat piece of plastic or metal with narrow pointed teeth along one side, which you use to tidy your hair
22. *a keyboard* **v)** a kind of weak perfume

23. *a bulldog clip* w) a necklace or ornamental band of material that fits very closely round a woman's neck
24. *a briefcase* x) a device on a piece of electrical equipment into which you can put a bulb or plug.
25. *aftershave* y) a liquid which women put on their necks and wrists to make themselves smell nice
26. *a comb* z) a slim, flat handbag without handles or a strap

21

Fill in the correct tense form of the verbs.

I'm a singer and I love clothes. When I was in a musical I 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*wear*) wonderful skirts made by a designer but they 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) incredibly heavy, and during the first performance I 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*fall*) over twice on stage performing in them. That 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/happen*) to me again because I 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) now that you 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*need*) much lighter clothes to perform in. A little bit while after that, I 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*sing*) at a friend's wedding so I 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*ask*) the same designer to make a really wonderful dress for me. I 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*wear*) it just a few times since then – to awards ceremonies – but I feel great in it. My career has never been structured. Perhaps it should have been but I'm hopeless at pushing myself. I suppose one measure of success was when I 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) my first TV advert and I 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) into the sort of shop I always 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) scared to go into before and 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) something without looking at the price. That just 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/be*) like me.

22

Supply prepositions where necessary.



1. The quality \_\_\_\_\_ this briefcase is excellent \_\_\_\_\_ the price. 2. They have a very good selection \_\_\_\_\_ ties \_\_\_\_\_ different shades to choose. 3. These scents are all \_\_\_\_\_ the same price. It's a bargain. 4. I would like to have a look \_\_\_\_\_ one \_\_\_\_\_ the leather bum bags. 5. – "Would you like to pay \_\_\_\_\_ the scanner now, or do you want it delivered c.o.d. (cash on delivery)?" – "I'll pay \_\_\_\_\_ once." 6. I want a silk dress \_\_\_\_\_ summer wear. Show me something \_\_\_\_\_ light blue. Where can I try it \_\_\_\_\_? 7. I asked \_\_\_\_\_ scarlet and pink silk threads but they were \_\_\_\_\_ stock. 8. Oh, you look perfect \_\_\_\_\_ it! It suits \_\_\_\_\_ you, really! 9. This ring with emerald is too expensive \_\_\_\_\_ me. I can't afford it. 10. I needed a new pair \_\_\_\_\_ gloves, so I went \_\_\_\_\_ a haberdashery shop, tried \_\_\_\_\_ ten pairs and finally bought one \_\_\_\_\_ very good brown leather. 11. Sue called \_\_\_\_\_ the jewellery shop to buy a birthday present \_\_\_\_\_ her sister. They showed her some lovely earrings, necklaces and bracelets, but she finally decided \_\_\_\_\_ a very pretty brooch. 12. I bought a new fridge and a washing machine and had them



sent \_\_\_\_\_ my address. **13.** These digital cameras are reduced \_\_\_\_\_ price. **14.** He bought many household electrical appliances \_\_\_\_\_ mail order. **15.** I asked \_\_\_\_\_ a refund. **16.** The fourth floor is entirely taken \_\_\_\_\_ electronics. **17.** This laptop is a bargain \_\_\_\_\_ the price. **18.** What do you have \_\_\_\_\_ stock in the way of aftershaves? **19.** Will you make \_\_\_\_\_ the bill, please? **20.** They have very nice glaze shoulder bags \_\_\_\_\_ display. **21.** "I'll pay \_\_\_\_\_ delivery", she said. **22.** What size do you take \_\_\_\_\_ shoes? **23.** He spends a lot of money \_\_\_\_\_ software. **24.** How much money did you borrow \_\_\_\_\_ him? **25.** How much did you pay \_\_\_\_\_ your new car? **26.** He withdrew \$100 \_\_\_\_\_ his bank. **27.** All employees can stay \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel \_\_\_\_\_ paying. **28.** It'll cost \$10 more if you pay \_\_\_\_\_ cheque. **29.** Can you change this pound note \_\_\_\_\_ coins for the coffee machine? **30.** I owe \_\_\_\_\_ you £30. When do you want me to pay you back? **31.** Can you lend \_\_\_\_\_ me five dollars until Monday? **32.** She has a lot of money \_\_\_\_\_ the bank account. **33.** He borrowed \$10 \_\_\_\_\_ his father.

23

**Insert articles where necessary.**



**1.** \_\_\_\_\_ wardrobe I've bought is too heavy. It weights over \_\_\_\_\_ hundred kilos. **2.** In this store they always have a wide choice in \_\_\_\_\_ coats and suits. \_\_\_\_\_ suits are ready-made. **3.** – How much are \_\_\_\_\_ dinner-sets? How many articles are there in \_\_\_\_\_ set? **4.** Have you got \_\_\_\_\_ fountain-pens on sale? **5.** We went into shops, which had absolutely nothing on \_\_\_\_\_ shelves. **6.** I'm not surprised you can't walk in those shoes. \_\_\_\_\_ heels are much too high. **7.** I bought \_\_\_\_\_ radio in \_\_\_\_\_ sale. \_\_\_\_\_ price had been slashed by 50%. **8.** What's the point in buying \_\_\_\_\_ expensive TV set if \_\_\_\_\_ picture isn't clear? **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ refrigerator like theirs is very expensive. **10.** He's going to \_\_\_\_\_ grocery store to buy \_\_\_\_\_ loaf of bread. **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ drugstore hired \_\_\_\_\_ new pharmacist. **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ supermarket sells not only \_\_\_\_\_ groceries, but also \_\_\_\_\_ household items, \_\_\_\_\_ liquor, \_\_\_\_\_ plants, \_\_\_\_\_ magazines, and \_\_\_\_\_ candies. **13.** I must buy \_\_\_\_\_ tin opener. I am always borrowing one from \_\_\_\_\_ woman next door. **14.** – Jane bought \_\_\_\_\_ fridge and \_\_\_\_\_ washing machine for her house, but \_\_\_\_\_ washing machine wouldn't go through \_\_\_\_\_ kitchen door so she had to send it back. – What did \_\_\_\_\_ shop say? – They offered to sell her \_\_\_\_\_ smaller one. **15.** – I've no idea what to get Mark for his birthday. – What about \_\_\_\_\_ new jumper? – Well...it's not \_\_\_\_\_ very interesting present. – Why don't you buy



him \_\_\_\_\_ set of golf clubs he's always wanted? – What \_\_\_\_\_ great idea! **16.** I went shopping at \_\_\_\_\_ Macy's and bought \_\_\_\_\_ expensive overcoat. **17.** – Where's \_\_\_\_\_ nearest shop? – There's one at \_\_\_\_\_ end of this street. **18.** – We spent all \_\_\_\_\_ money



because we stayed at \_\_\_\_\_ most expensive hotel in town. –Why didn't you stay at \_\_\_\_\_ cheaper hotel? **19.** This morning I bought \_\_\_\_\_ newspaper and \_\_\_\_\_ magazine. \_\_\_\_\_ newspaper is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put \_\_\_\_\_ magazine. **20.** – What is \_\_\_\_\_ currency of \_\_\_\_\_ United States? – \_\_\_\_\_ dollar is \_\_\_\_\_ currency of \_\_\_\_\_ United States.

24

**Speak about your last shopping tour stating all possible details.**

25

**Read the following text and pay special attention to topical vocabulary.**

### *Choosing and Buying Presents*

**Shopping for presents** can be a pleasure and **an ordeal** at the same time. From one hand, it is art in itself. We have to take into account people's temperament, intellect and interests thinking of a **suitable present** for them. From the other hand, presents and present giving should be fun. We have to remember that the whole idea of giving presents is to please and to surprise someone. The value of a present is **the least important thing** about it. What matters is that it is **a token of our love and appreciation** of the person. **An ideal present** should be something one will like and want, not just something we like. The simplest present is often the most appreciated.

Talking about me, I am in a habit of shopping for presents **in advance**. When I see just **the right presents** for my relatives and friends, I buy them and then **put** them **away** till they are wanted. I usually buy something **in the way of** cosmetics or a bottle of sent at the perfumery for my mother, a new tie, a wallet, a belt at the haberdashery or an expensive pen and an organizer at the stationer's for my dad. My granny adores hats, kerchiefs and shawls, so I often buy them for her in a millinery shop. My grandfather is obsessed with jazz, so I buy him new discs in the music shop in the downtown. When it comes to my numerous cousins, nieces and nephews, I **drop in at** a toy shop to buy dolls and handcraft sets for girls or cars and mechanical toys for boys. I can choose various tinkles at a fancy goods shop for adult girls and CDs or computer games for adult boys.

As for my friends, they are usually happy with perfumes, make-up kits, sets of matching ornaments, knick-knacks, different accessories for gadgets and **what not**. Besides, I don't mind the idea of buying **a gift voucher** so that my friends can go shopping themselves **at their own convenience**.

In addition, I often buy chocolates and flowers to give as a present on different holidays or for some special occasions. In this way I try to show people that I care and that they are important and dear to me.

26

**Answer the following questions.**



- 1. What kinds of gifts do you like to give?
- 2. Who was the last person you gave a gift to? What was your last gift? Did the person like it?
- 3. What gift will you give your relatives, friends, boyfriend / girlfriend on their birthday?
- 4. What kinds of gifts would you like to get?
- 5. What was your last gift? How did you like your last gift?
- 6. What is the best gift you have ever received?
- 7. Is there a special gift you'd like to get?
- 8. Did you ever get a gift you didn't like?
- 9. Have you ever re-gifted anything?
- 10. Do you ever give or get a knick-knack as a gift?
- 11. Is it enough for a husband / boyfriend to give flowers to his wife / girlfriend on her birthday?
- 12. What are some of the things that you don't give as gifts in your country?
- 13. What do you think of people who do not give gifts?

27

**Listen to a woman talking about her shop. Tick (✓) the four statements which are correct.**

- a) Denise has owned the shop for two years.
- b) She lives next door to the shop.
- c) Most of the things she sells are handmade.
- d) She sells some ceramics imported from Greece and Portugal.
- e) The interviewer likes the Japanese dresses in the shop.
- f) The shop also sells kitchen equipment like washing machines.
- g) A lot of the jewellery is made by local artists.
- h) Denise would like to move somewhere else.
- i) Unfortunately, it's noisy because it is on a busy high street.
- j) Denise would like to have richer customers, rather than the students who come into the shop.



28

**Speak about the way you buy presents.**

### Revision Topics

1. What kind of shopper you are
2. Shopping for food
3. Advantages and disadvantages of shopping online
4. Your preferences in clothes and footwear
5. At the department store. Buying various consumer goods
6. Buying a present



## GRAMMAR REFERENCE

### Classification of Nouns

According to their lexical meaning nouns fall under two classes:

**Common nouns** (загальні назви)

**Proper nouns** (власні назви)

**Common nouns** are names applied to any individual of a class of persons or things, collections of similar individuals or things regarded as a unit, materials or abstract notions. They are subdivided into:

- ❖ **class nouns** (конкретні іменники)
- ❖ **collective nouns** (збірні іменники)
- ❖ **material nouns** (речовинні іменники)
- ❖ **abstract nouns** (абстрактні іменники)

**1. Class nouns** denote living beings or things belonging to a class, such as *a man, a dog, a book*. They are countable. They can have a singular and plural form.

**2. Collective nouns** denote a number of persons or things collected together to form a single unit. They are subdivided into:

**a)** Nouns that are used in both numbers: *a family, a company, a team*. They are countable.

When these nouns are used in singular, they may be followed by the verb either in the singular or in the plural. The verb is singular if the collective noun is thought of as a single unit. The verb is plural if the collective noun is thought of as a collection of separate individuals:

*My family is my everything.*

*My family are sitting at the table and drinking tea.*

**b)** Nouns that are used only in the singular. They are singular in form and singular in meaning. They are uncountable, e.g., *furniture, money, youth*.

**c)** Nouns that are used only in the plural. They are plural in form and plural in meaning. They are uncountable, e.g., *goods, belongings, looks*. Very often they are nouns formed from other parts of speech.

**d)** Nouns that are used only in the plural. These are names of things consisting of two similar parts (halves). They are plural in form and plural in meaning. They are uncountable, e.g., *scales, trousers, shorts*.

**e)** Nouns of multitude that are singular in form but plural in meaning. They are uncountable and followed by plural verbs, e.g., *people, police*.

**f)** Nouns that are used only in the singular. They are plural in form but singular in meaning. They are uncountable. These are names of some subjects, games and activities, e.g., *maths, phonetics, aerobics*.

3. **Material nouns** denote materials, such as *air, water, paper, cotton, leather*. They are uncountable and used only in the singular.

4. **Abstract nouns** denote notions (*science, information*), qualities (*beauty, humour*), actions (*work, conversation*), feelings and emotions (*joy, love, anger*). They are uncountable and used only in the singular.

**Proper nouns** are names given to individuals of a class to distinguish them from other individuals of the same class: 1) personal names; 2) geo names; 3) months, days; 4) hotels, streets, etc.

## Countable Nouns Plural of Nouns

Countable nouns denote things or individuals that can be counted. Countables have two numbers – **the singular** and **the plural**.

1. Normally nouns form the plural by adding **-s** to the singular form. This plural ending is pronounced as:

- ❖ /z/ after voiced consonants and vowels – *beds*, *bees*, *flowers*, *ladies*;
- ❖ /s/ after voiceless consonants – *books*, *caps*;
- ❖ /ɪz/ after sibilants – *noses*, *horses*, *bridges*.

2. If the noun ends in **-s, -ss, -x, -sh, -ch, -tch**, the plural is formed by adding **-es** to the singular stem. This plural ending is pronounced as /ɪz/:

<i>a bus</i> – <i>buses</i>	<i>a glass</i> – <i>glasses</i>	<i>a bench</i> – <i>benches</i>
<i>a box</i> – <i>boxes</i>	<i>a bush</i> – <i>bushes</i>	<i>a match</i> – <i>matches</i>

3. If the noun stem ends in **-y**:

<b>Consonant + y = y → i + es</b>	<i>a fly</i> – <i>flies</i> , <i>an army</i> – <i>armies</i> ;
<b>Vowel + y = y + s</b>	<i>a monkey</i> – <i>monkeys</i> , <i>a boy</i> – <i>boys</i> .

4. If a noun ends in **-o**:

<b>Consonant + o = o + es</b>	<i>a potato</i> – <i>potatoes</i> , <i>a hero</i> – <i>heroes</i> ;
<b>Vowel + o = o + s</b>	<i>a radio</i> – <i>radios</i> , <i>a cuckoo</i> – <i>cuckoos</i> .

**But:** *a piano* – *pianos* (піаніно); *a solo* – *solos* (сольний номер); *a photo* – *photos* (фотографія); *kilo* – *kilos* (кілограм).

5. If a noun ends in **-f(e)**:

<b>f(e) → v + es /vz/</b>	<i>a knife</i> – <i>knives</i> , <i>a wife</i> – <i>wives</i> , <i>a wolf</i> – <i>wolves</i> .
---------------------------	---

But there are some nouns in which there is no change:

<i>a chief</i> – <i>chiefs</i> (начальник)	<i>a gulf</i> – <i>gulfs</i> (затока)
<i>a roof</i> – <i>roofs</i> (дах)	<i>a kerchief</i> – <i>kerchiefs</i> (хусточка)
<i>a belief</i> – <i>beliefs</i> (віра)	<i>a safe</i> – <i>safes</i> (сейф)
<i>a handkerchief</i> – <i>handkerchiefs</i> (носова хусточка)	

There are some nouns which have two forms:

- a scarf* – *scarfs/scarves* (шарф)
- a hoof* – *hoofs/hooves* (копито)
- a wharf* – *wharfs/wharves* (пристань).

6. The plural forms of some nouns are survivals of earlier formations.

a) There are 7 nouns which form the plural by changing the root vowel:

- a man* – *men* (чоловік)
- a woman* – *women* (жінка)
- a foot* – *feet* (ступня)
- a tooth* – *teeth* (зуб)
- a goose* – *geese* (гуска)
- a mouse* – *mice* (миша)
- a louse* – *lice* (воша)

b) There are 3 nouns which form the plural in *-en*:

- an ox* – *oxen* (бик)
- a child* – *children* (дитина)
- a brother* – *brethren* (брат (реліг.))

c) In some nouns the plural form does not differ from the singular (they have the same form):

- a deer* – *deer* (олень)
- a fish* – *fish* (риба)
- a sheep* – *sheep* (вівця)
- a swine* – *swine* (свиня)
- a trout* – *trout* (форель)
- an aircraft* – *aircraft* (літак)
- a means* – *means* (засіб)
- a series* – *series* (серія)
- a species* – *species* (вид)

d) Some nouns from **Latin** and **Greek** retain their original forms:

<b>a</b> /ə/ → <b>ae</b> /i:/	<i>an antenna</i> – <i>antennae</i> , <i>a formula</i> – <i>formulae</i> ;
<b>ex(ix)</b> /ks/ → <b>ices</b> /si:z/	<i>an appendix</i> – <i>appendices</i> , <i>an index</i> – <i>indices</i> ;
<b>is</b> /Is/ → <b>es</b> /i:z/	<i>a basis</i> – <i>bases</i> , <i>a thesis</i> – <i>theses</i> ;
<b>on</b> /ən/ → <b>a</b> /ə/	<i>a criterion</i> – <i>criteria</i> , <i>a phenomenon</i> – <i>phenomena</i> ;
<b>um</b> /əm/ → <b>a</b> /ə/	<i>a medium</i> – <i>media</i> , <i>a curriculum</i> – <i>curricula</i> ;
<b>us</b> /əs/ → <b>i</b> /aI/	<i>a cactus</i> – <i>cacti</i> , <i>a nucleus</i> – <i>nuclei</i> ;
<b>o</b> /əʊ/ → <b>i</b> /i:/	<i>a tempo</i> – <i>tempo</i> .

7. In compound nouns the plural is formed in different ways.

a) if a noun is non-hyphenated, the last word is used in the plural:

*a housewife* – *housewives*, *an onlooker* – *onlookers*, *a postman* – *postmen*.

b) if the noun is hyphenated, the main meaningful word (the head word) is used in the plural:

*a brother-in-law* – *brothers-in-law*, *an editor-in-chief* – *editors-in-chief*.

c) if there is no noun stem in the compound, **-s** is added to the last element:  
*a forget-me-not – forget-me-nots*, *a merry-go-round – merry-go-rounds*.

d) if the first word of the compound is man or woman, both words are used in the plural:

*a man-servant – men-servants*, *a woman-doctor – women-doctors*.

## Uncountable Nouns

Uncountable nouns denote objects that cannot be counted. The uncountable nouns are subdivided into the so-called *singularia tantum* and *pluralia tantum*.

1. *Singularia tantum* are nouns used only in the singular in English. They agree with the predicate verb in the singular. Here belong the following:

a) **material nouns** such as *air, water, paper, cotton, leather*:

*Sugar is sweet.*

b) **abstract nouns** such as *love, courage, weather, traffic*:

*The traffic is very heavy here.*

Some abstract nouns are used only in the singular in English, but have both forms in Ukrainian: *advice* (порада – поради), *information* (інформація – відомості), *knowledge* (знання), *progress* (успіх – успіхи):

*Your advice was the best. – Твої поради були найкращі.*

c) some **collective nouns** such as *linen, equipment, luggage, furniture, currency, money, machinery*:

*There is a lot of equipment in this chemistry-lab.*

The nouns *money* (гроші) and *furniture* (меблі) are singular in English, but plural in Ukrainian:

*I don't need this money. – Мені не потрібні ці гроші.*

*This furniture is broken. – Ці меблі зламані.*

**Note** that these uncountable nouns can be made countable by means of partitives: *a piece of cake/information/advice/furniture; a glass/bottle of water; a jar of jam; a rasher of bacon; a box of chocolates; a packet of biscuits/tea; a slice/loaf of bread; a pot of yoghurt; a pot/cup of tea; a kilo/pound of meat; a bottle of vinegar, a tube of toothpaste; a bar of chocolate/soap; a bit/piece of chalk; an ice cube/scoop; a lump of sugar; a sheet of paper; a bag of flour; a pair of trousers; a game of soccer; a(n) item/piece of news; a drop/can of oil; a can of Coke; a carton of milk; a block of wood, a scoop of ice-cream.*

**NB:** Some of the above-mentioned nouns can be used in the singular and in the plural, but they have different meanings. Compare:



<i>This glass is transparent. (скло)</i>	<i>I'd like 3 glasses of juice. (склянка)</i>
<i>I have no time. (час)</i>	<i>I met him two times. (раз)</i>
<i>Her hair is wonderful. (волосся)</i>	<i>I see a hair in my plate. (волосина)</i>
<i>I have no paper. (папір)</i>	<i>I need a paper. (газета)</i>

**d)** Some nouns are plural in forms but singular in meanings. Their final **-s** loses the meaning of the plural inflexion and the nouns are treated as singular. Here belong names of some subjects, games and activities: *athletics* (атлетика, гімнастика), *economics* (економіка), *linguistics* (мовознавство, лінгвістика), *mathematics* (математика), *news* (новина, новини, звістка, вісті), *phonetics* (фонетика), *physics* (фізика), *classics* (класична література), *politics* (політика), *statistics* (статистика), *aerobics* (аеробіка), *billiards* (більярд), *dominoes* (доміно), *draughts* (шашки), *darts* (дартс, дротики), *bowls* (гра в кулі), *cards* (карти), *skittles* (кегли).

But when these nouns don't refer to subjects of study and activities, they may be used in plural:

*The statistics **are** not accurate.* – Статистичні данні (цифри) не є точними.  
*His politics **are** rude.* – Його політичні дії дуже грубі.

**2. Pluralia tantum** are nouns used only in the plural in English. They agree with the predicate verb in the plural. Here belong the following:

**a)** Names of things consisting of two similar halves. Here belong nouns which refer to clothes, tools and other things that people wear or use: *scales* (ваги), *scissors* (ножиці), *spectacles / glasses* (окуляри), *binoculars* (бінокль), *tweezers* (пінцет), *handcuffs* (наручники), *pyjamas* (піжама), *trousers* (штани), *jeans* (джинси).

*Her jeans **are** black.* – Її джинси чорні.

If we want to refer to a single piece of clothing or a single tool, we can use “**some**” or “**a pair of**” in front of the noun:

*She has a new pair of jeans.* – В неї є нова пара джинс.

*She bought three pairs of tights.* – Вона купила три пари панчіх.

**b)** some **collective nouns** such as: *clothes* (одяг, речі), *contents* (зміст), *goods* (товар, товари), *proceeds* (виторг, прибуток), *riches* (багатство, скарби), *wages* (заробітна плата), *expenses* (затрати, витрати), *looks* (зовнішній вигляд), *greens* (зелень, овочі), *troops* (війська), *remains* (залишок, рештки), *premises* (будинок з прилеглою територією), *stairs* (сходи, трап).

These nouns may have both forms in Ukrainian:

*These traffic-lights **are** not working.* – Цей світлофор не працює. або  
 Ці світлофори не працюють.

c) Nouns of multitude *people* (люди), *police* (міліція, поліція), *cattle* (велика рогата худоба), *poultry* (домашня птиця). These nouns are singular in form but plural in meaning:

*Do the police know about him? – Чи знає поліція про нього?*

d) The nouns *fruit* (фрукт) and *fish* (риба) are singular in English, but have both forms in Ukrainian. They agree with the predicate verb in the singular:

*Fruit is cheap in summer.*

**Note** that the plural is used to speak about different kinds of fruit:

*There are apples, plums and other fruits on the table.*

### Some – Any – No – Not Any – Every

	Adjectives	Pronouns	Adverbs	
		people	things	places
+	<b>some</b> <b>any</b>	<b>someone/somebody</b> <b>anyone/anybody</b>	<b>something</b> <b>anything</b>	<b>somewhere</b> <b>anywhere</b>
?	<b>any</b>	<b>anyone/anybody</b>	<b>anything</b>	<b>anywhere</b>
-	<b>no/</b> <b>not any</b>	<b>no one/not anyone</b> <b>nobody/not anybody</b>	<b>nothing</b> <b>not anything</b>	<b>nowhere</b> <b>not anywhere</b>
+ - ?	<b>every</b>	<b>everybody/everyone</b> <i>(all the people)</i>	<b>everything</b> <i>(all the things)</i>	<b>everywhere</b> <i>(in all the places)</i>

❖ **Some** is normally used in a positive sentence before uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns:

*There's **some** cheese left.*

**Some** is also used in questions when we want to make an offer, a request or when we expect a positive answer:

*Would you like **some** hot chocolate?*

*Could I have **some** cake, please?*

*Did you buy **some** oranges? (= I expect you bought.)*

❖ **Any** is normally used before uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns in questions:

*Are there **any** more apples?*

**Any** and its compounds can be used after *if* in a positive sentence:

*I doubt if **anyone** can help me.*

**Any** can also be used in positive sentences meaning *it doesn't matter when/which/who/where*:

*You can come **any** day you want.*

*You can go **anywhere** you want.*

❖ **No/Not any** are used before plural countable nouns or uncountable nouns in negations:

*There is **no** cheese left. or There **isn't any** cheese left.*

**Any** is always used after negative words (*hardly, never, without, seldom, rarely*):

*There's hardly **any** food left.*

❖ **Every** is used before singular countable nouns. **Every** and its compounds take a verb in the singular:

***Every** student has a task. (=all the students)*

***Everything** is ready for the wedding. (=all the things)*

❖ The above-mentioned rules apply to the compounds of **some/any/no/every**:

*There's **someone** in the office.*

### The Possessive Case of Nouns

To show possession, we can use both the *of + noun* and *the possessive case*. English nouns denoting living beings (and some nouns denoting lifeless things) have two cases the *common case* and the *possessive case*.

To make the possessive case of nouns in writing, we add 's (*apostrophe s*) to singular nouns and to irregular plurals that don't end in -s:

*Philip's car, the women's hats*

We add ' (an apostrophe) to regular plurals (which end in -s):

*the boys' football boots*

*the girls' room*

*the Carters' house*

<i>possessive 's</i> is used:	<i>of + noun</i> is used:
<b>1.</b> for people and animals <i>Tom's sister</i> <i>the cat's tail</i>	<b>1.</b> for things, ideas <i>the name of the book</i> <i>the handle of the bag</i>
<b>2.</b> for a group of people and organizations <i>the team's success</i> <i>the company's decision</i>	<b>2.</b> for a group of people and organizations <i>the success of the team</i> <i>the decision of the company</i>
<b>3.</b> for places <i>the city's streets</i> <i>the world's population</i> <i>Kyiv's parks</i>	<b>3.</b> for places <i>the streets of the city</i> <i>the population of the world</i> <i>the parks of Kyiv</i>
	When we are talking about a process, or a change over time only this construction is possible: <i>the reconstruction of the airport</i>

4. with time expressions <i>yesterday's newspaper</i> <i>tomorrow's meeting</i> <i>Monday's lesson</i>	
5. with periods of time, distance, weight <i>ten minutes' walk</i> <i>three miles' trip</i> <i>nine kilos' bag</i>	

**Notes:**

❖ We can use 's after more than one noun:

*Peter and Mary's wedding*

*Mr and Mrs John's house*

❖ To make the possessive form of names ending in -s we can add either ' or 's:

*It's Derek Jones' (or Derek Jones's) new sports car.*

❖ The noun following a possessive form can be left out when we talk about someone's home or some shops and services, e.g., *the newsagent's*, *the chemist's*, *the hairdresser's*:

*We're going to Linda's for the evening. (= Linda's home)*

*I must go to the butcher's this morning. (= the butcher's shop)*

We also usually leave out the noun when the meaning is clear in cases like:

*"Whose hat is this?" – "Richard's." (rather than Richard's hat.)*

This is the so-called **absolute possessive**.

❖ We use *of* + **possessive case/possessive pronoun** when there is a determiner (*this*, *some*, etc.) before the noun:

*That's a poem of Steve's. (= one of Steve's poem)*

*They have some books of mine. (= some of my books)*

❖ When the noun is a long noun phrase, we prefer to use *of* + **noun**:

*What is the name of the man who phoned you?*

### Special Subject-Verb Agreement Rules

1. Phrases and clauses which come between the subject and the verb do not change the number of the subject:

*The picture of his classmates pleases him.*

2. Some pronouns take singular verbs even though the pronouns may seem plural in meaning. These pronouns include:

<i>anybody</i>	<i>nobody</i>	<i>somebody</i>	<i>everybody</i>	<i>each</i>
<i>anyone</i>	<i>none</i>	<i>someone</i>	<i>everyone</i>	<i>either</i>
<i>anything</i>	<i>nothing</i>	<i>something</i>	<i>everything</i>	<i>neither</i>

*Everybody likes this pie.*

3. When subjects are joined by *either/or*, *neither/nor*, *not only/but also*, the verb agrees with the closer subject:

*Not only the teacher but also the students are going to the conference.*

4. When subjects are joined by *and* or by *both/and*, they take a plural verb:

*Both Ann and Fred are coming tonight.*

5. *None*, *all*, *some*, *any*, *most*, *majority* and other similar expressions can take either a singular or a plural verb depending on the noun that comes after them:

*None of the sugar was eaten. None of the students were pleased.*

6. *Several*, *both*, *many*, *few* are plural words which need plural verbs:

*Few were present at the last meeting.*

7. A *number of* requires a plural verb. *The number of* requires a singular verb:

*A number of my friends were here last night.*

*The number of books is limited.*

8. In sentences beginning with *it*, the verb should be singular:

*It is his problems at work that are bothering him.*

9. In sentences beginning with *there* or *here*, the verb agrees with the real subject which comes after the verb:

*Here are the pictures you wanted.*

10. *A pair of*, *a flock of*, *a herd of* and other expressions indicating group of things or animals take singular verbs even though nouns used with them will be plural:

*A pair of swans mates for life.*

11. The verbs in relative clauses agree with the nouns that their head relative words replace:

*The professor and the students, who were working together, wrote this article.*

12. Some nouns which look plural are really singular and take singular verbs. These words include: *news*, *politics*, *mathematics*, etc.:

*Linguistics is his major.*

13. Some nouns, which look singular, are really plural and take plural verbs. These nouns include those for which the singular and the plural form are the same:

*The magazine series are all located in the reference section of the library.*

*This television series is a popular one.*

14. Expressions showing quantities of time, money, weight, and volume look plural but take singular verbs:

*Three days is enough time to finish this project.*

**15.** Nouns that refer to a country or a nationality can be singular or plural. When one of these words refers to a language, it is singular; when to the people of a country, it is plural:

*French is a difficult language.*

*The French are interesting people.*

## The Article

The article is a structural part of speech used as a determiner with nouns. There are two articles in Modern English: the **indefinite** article and the **definite** article.

**The indefinite article** is used only with nouns in the singular and has the forms *a* and *an*. The form *a* is used before words beginning with a consonant sound, e.g., *a book* /ə'buk/, *a university* /ə ju:nɪ'vɜ:sɪtɪ/.

The form *an* is used before words beginning with a vowel sound, e.g., *an apple* /ən'æpl/, *an hour* /ən'aʊə/. This article is usually unstressed and pronounced /ə/, /ən/; when stressed it is pronounced /æn/.

**The definite article** has one graphic form **the**, which is pronounced in two ways: /ði/ before a vowel sound, e.g., *an apple* /ði'æpl/, and /ðə/ before a consonant sound, e.g., *a book* /ðə'buk/. The use of the definite article shows that a particular object is meant.

These two articles are related to other determiners in the following way: **the** = *this, that, the same*; **a (an)** = *some, any, such*.

The absence of articles (sometimes called “**zero**” article) with class nouns in the plural, with abstract nouns and nouns of material has grammatical significance: it shows that the nouns are used in a general sense.

## The Use of the Indefinite Article with Class Nouns

Class nouns are used with the indefinite article:

**1.** When the speaker mentions a noun (which is countable) for the first time:

*For lunch I usually have a sandwich and an apple.*

It is also used in sentences beginning with “**there is/was**”:

*There is a newspaper on the table.*

**2.** When the speaker presents the object expressed by the noun as belonging to a certain class. In this case the indefinite article has the meaning of “**який-небудь**”, “**якийсь**”, “**один**”, “**деякий**”:

*A man and a woman are sitting opposite us.*

*We saw a house with a lawn in front of it.*



In the plural we can use *some, a few, several* instead of *a/an* or no article is used in this case.

*(Some) men and (a few) women are sitting opposite us.*

*I like the room because there are flowers in it.*

3. With a predicative noun, when the speaker states that the object denoted by the noun belongs to a certain class (it is one of a class and has the meaning of “*один из базатъох*”):

*My husband is a sailor.*

*Tom is a very nice person.*

In the plural neither the article nor the pronoun *some* is used:

*They are good children, no doubt.*

4. When the noun is used in a general sense. The article has the meaning of “*every*” and indicates that the following noun denotes a typical member of a class:

*A cat is a domestic animal. (= Every cat is a domestic animal.)*

In this case plural nouns are used without any articles:

*Cats are domestic animals.*

5. There are cases when the indefinite article preserves its old original meaning of “*one*”:

*An hour in the morning is worth two in the evening.*

This meaning is generally found with:

❖ nouns denoting time, measure and weight:

*A week or two passed.*

*I'll come back in a minute.*

❖ in certain expressions of quantity:

*a lot of, a couple, a great many, etc.*

❖ in the pattern *a...of* with possessives, as in:

*She's a colleague of mine.*

*That's a friend of Bill's.*

❖ after a negative **not**:

*not a word, not a thought, etc.*

❖ in some set-phrases: *one at a time, at a draught*

❖ the numerals *hundred, thousand, million* and the nouns *dozen, score*:

*My new car cost a thousand pounds.*

❖ in expressions of price, speed, ratio, etc.:

*5p a kilo*

*four times a day*

*10p a dozen*

*60 kilometers an hour (an = per)*

However, we use **one** rather than **a/an** if we want to emphasize that we are talking about only one person or thing rather than two or more:

*Do you want one sandwich or more?*

*Are you staying just one night?*

With nouns in the plural **some** is used:

*Oliver kept silence for some minutes.*

**Note 1.** We use **one**, not **a/an** in the pattern **one...other/another**:

*Close one eye, and then the other.*

*Bees carry pollen from one plant to another.*

**Note 2.** We use **one** with the words **day, week, month, year, night, winter**, etc. or with specific day or month to say when something happened to mean a particular, but unspecified day, evening, winter, etc.:

*One summer, our family decided to go to the Crimea.*

We can use **one day** to refer to the future:

*One day, you will regret this.*

**6.** Before singular countable nouns after **such** and in exclamations after **what**:

*What a lovely day today!*

*It's such an interesting idea, isn't it?*

**But:** *What pretty girls!*

**7.** Nouns with the indefinite article are used after **quite** and **rather**:

*It's quite a long story and not a nice one.*

*He was rather a curious man to look at.*

Sometimes **quite** and **rather** can be placed after the indefinite article (especially in AmE):

*He is a rather clever man.*

*It's a quite important problem.*

**8.** Nouns with the indefinite article follow **many** (the verb is used in the singular):

*Many an evening he sat staring at the fire.*

**9.** The indefinite article is also used in various descriptions:

*He's got a long face and a turned-up nose.*

## The Use of the Definite Article with Class Nouns

The definite article is used both with singular and plural nouns.

Class nouns are used with the definite article:

**1.** When the speaker mentions a noun for the second time:

*For lunch I had a sandwich and an apple. The sandwich wasn't very nice.*

**2.** When the speaker and the hearer know what particular object is meant. No special indication is necessary:

*What do you think of the table? (= the table we are looking at)*

*How did you like the play?*

**3.** When the speaker uses an attribute pointing out a particular object:

*This is the house that Jack built.*

4. When the situation itself makes the object definite and when the speaker wants to talk about something that is associated with an earlier item:

*The wedding looked dismal. The bride was too old.*

*I went to the window again to try to smash the glass. (the glass in the window)*

5. When the noun denotes the object or group of objects, which is unique or considered to be unique.

Here are some words, which belong to this group:

<i>the devil</i>	<i>the north pole</i>	<i>the solar system</i>	<i>the universe</i>
<i>the earth</i>	<i>the planets</i>	<i>the south pole</i>	<i>the world</i>
<i>the equator</i>	<i>the pope</i>	<i>the stars</i>	
<i>the moon</i>	<i>the sky</i>	<i>the sun</i>	

*The sun was getting warmer.*

6. With nouns used in a generic sense. A noun becomes a composite image (збірний образ) of the class and is used to talk about the general features and characteristics of a class of things:

*The telephone was invented in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.*

*The tragedy and the comedy first appeared in Greece.*

**Note.** Groups of nouns which are used generically: names of animals, plants, professions and occupations, collective nouns denoting social groups, scientific terms, etc.:

*The verb is a part of speech.*

The noun **people** is used with the definite article when the idea of collectivity is emphasized (meaning “all the persons forming a state”). When this noun means “persons, human beings in general”, it has no article:

*The Ukrainian people are very hospitable.*

*People often believe in fairy tales.*

A noun used in a generic sense should not be confused with a noun used in a general sense:

<b>The</b>	1. <u>The lion</u> is a wild animal. 2. <u>Conan Doyle</u> is a master of <u>the detective story</u> .	<b>The</b> emphasizes the <i>class itself</i> , without regard for concrete representatives of the class.
<b>A</b>	1. <u>A lion</u> is a wild animal. 2. <u>A detective story</u> helps to while away the time.	<b>A</b> emphasizes an individual representative of a class. It has the sense of <i>any</i> or <i>every</i> .
<b>No article</b>	1. <u>Lions</u> are wild animals. 2. <u>Detective stories</u> are very popular with people.	The plural form without an article emphasizes <i>all</i> the representatives of this class.

7. When nouns are modified by adjectives in the superlative degree and by ordinal numerals:

*Mary had the softest voice in the class.*

8. With nouns in word-groups the first component of which is *some, many, none, most* and the second – a noun with the preposition **of**. Often, **of the** makes the situation specific:

*Most of the students looked both angry and uncomfortable.*

9. When nouns are modified by adjectives which are used to identify unique things:

*I began the last section of the book.*

Here is a list of adjectives, which are used in this way:

<i>following</i>	<i>next</i>	<i>present</i>	<i>same</i>	<i>usual</i>
<i>last</i>	<i>only</i>	<i>principal</i>	<i>sole</i>	<i>wrong</i>
<i>main</i>	<i>opposite</i>	<i>right</i>	<i>ultimate</i>	<i>past</i>

**Note 1.** The indefinite article can be used before “**only**” when it is used in the expressions “only child”, “only son”, and “only daughter”:

*I was an only child.*

**Note 2.** “**Next**” and “**last**” are commonly used in time expressions without **the**:

*I'm flying next week. I saw them last month.*

10. With substantivized adjectives and participles.

A combination of the definite article and substantivized adjective can be used to refer to all the people with that characteristic. “The poor” means people who are poor. Many adjectives can be used in this way; here are some common ones:

<i>aged</i>	<i>educated</i>	<i>injured</i>	<i>powerful</i>	<i>unemployed</i>
<i>blind</i>	<i>elderly</i>	<i>living</i>	<i>rich</i>	<i>weak</i>
<i>brave</i>	<i>free</i>	<i>needy</i>	<i>sick</i>	<i>wealthy</i>
<i>dead</i>	<i>handicapped</i>	<i>old</i>	<i>starving</i>	<i>wounded</i>
<i>deaf</i>	<i>homeless</i>	<i>oppressed</i>	<i>strong</i>	<i>young</i>
<i>disabled</i>	<i>hungry</i>	<i>poor</i>	<i>uneducated</i>	

**Note.** They behave like nouns in the plural and are followed by a plural verb:

*The aged have many problems with health.*

11. With collective nouns denoting social groups:

*The workers have nothing to lose.*

12. With nationality words when referring to nations or racial groups:

*The Chinese have their own version of this proverb.*

*It seems to me that the British are too often their own worst critics.*

When separate representatives are meant, the definite article is not used:

*Italians are good singers.*

**Note.** These words always begin with a capital letter; and they are followed by the plural form of a verb even if they do not look plural.

13. At the beginning of stories, in titles of stories and novels:

*“The Enemy”, “The Letter”.*

This is a stylistic device. The author indicates in this way that the reader will shortly be told more about these things.

## The Use of Articles with Class Nouns Modified by Attributes

In accordance with their role in the choice of articles attributes may be divided into **particularizing** (or **limiting**) and **descriptive**.

A **particularizing attribute** is used to single out an object from all the objects of the class, to point out one particular object or group of objects. The use of a particularizing attribute implies the idea of “*мой, який*”; “*саме той*”; “*мої саме*”. It makes the noun definite. So, the definite article is used with this kind of attribute:

*Look at picture 5 at the top of page 43.*

*I want to get back to the hotel where he was staying.*

*Where is the book I gave you last week?*

*He knocked at the door of a very neat house.*

A **descriptive attribute** is used to describe an object or to give some additional information about it. This kind of attribute does not single out an object (or a group of objects) but only narrows the class to which it belongs:

*He wrote a novel.*

*He wrote a good novel.*

*He wrote a good historical novel.*

*In a fortnight I got a long letter, which I considered odd.*

## The Use of Articles with Material Nouns

1. With nouns of material (substances) used in a general sense, when a certain material as such is meant, no article is used:

*I like coffee, I don't drink tea.*

2. Nouns of substances modified by a descriptive attribute are used with the zero article as well. A descriptive attribute only narrows the notion denoted by a noun without specifying it:

*There was not a single thing made of real wood in the room: everything was made of metal and plastic.*

3. When a definite part of the substance is meant (when the noun is modified by a particularizing attribute or is made definite by the situation), the definite article is used:

*The tea is too hot. I can't drink it.*

*The meat you prepared yesterday was very delicious.*

4. When an indefinite part of the substance is meant, **some** is used:

*We took some bread and cheese with us, and got some milk.*

5. Nouns of material denoting different sorts of material are countable and the articles are used according to the general use of articles with class nouns.

Names of materials become countable nouns in the following cases:

❖ when various sorts of food products are meant:

*We can buy different cheeses here.*

❖ when a portion of food or drink is meant:

*If you want to please the boy, buy him an ice-cream.*

*We went into the cafe and I ordered two coffees.*

6. Some collective nouns denoting a group of objects thought of as a whole, behave like names of substances. Among them are *furniture, equipment, machinery, crockery, hardware, silverware, china, luggage, baggage*, etc. Such nouns follow the rules of the use of articles for names of substances:

*I need furniture.*

*The furniture which I bought a few days ago was very expensive.*

### **The Use of Articles with Abstract Nouns**

Abstract nouns fall into two classes: *countables* and *uncountables*.

The use of articles with countable abstract nouns does not differ from their use with countable concrete nouns – in the singular countable abstract nouns are used with the indefinite or definite article; in the plural they are used without any article or with the definite article:

*He told the child a story.*

*He told the child stories.*

*The child knew the story he told.*

*The child knew the stories he told.*

### **The Use of Articles with Uncountable Abstract Nouns**

1. As a general rule, uncountable abstract nouns are used without any article:

*There was silence for a few moments.*

*Light was coming into the cellar from somewhere.*

2. The definite article is used with uncountable nouns when they are modified by a particularizing attribute or when the situation makes the idea definite. The definite article is used here to denote a particular instance of the notion expressed by the noun:

*Andrew was the first to break the silence.*

*The silence in the room was oppressive.*

*The light was shaded; his mother was sitting in the corner of the room.*

3. The definite article is also found with substantivized adjectives denoting abstract notions: *the ordinary, the average, the beautiful, the unusual, the supernatural, the extravagant, the unknown, the regrettable, the normal, the unbearable*, etc.:

*“You shouldn’t think you’re something out of the ordinary”, she said.*

*“Do you believe in the supernatural?”, he asked.*



To this group also belong nouns always used with the definite article as ***the present, the past, the future, the singular, the plural***:

*He is certain nothing will happen in the near future.*

*He told strange stories of the past.*

**Note.** Mark the difference in meaning between the expressions ***in future*** (надалі), i.e. from this time on, and ***in the future*** (у майбутньому), i.e. after a certain period of time passes:

*I hope in future you'll be more careful.*

*Everybody thinks he will find a good job in the future.*

**4.** Abstract nouns can be used with the indefinite article. In this case the abstract noun denotes a certain kind (відтінок) of a quality, feeling, state, etc. The noun nearly always has a descriptive attribute:

*There was a reflective silence.*

*There was a bitterness in her voice.*

**5.** Sometimes an uncountable abstract noun is used with an attribute and yet has no article. In some cases, the attribute does not bring out a special aspect of the notion expressed by the noun. The attribute may express:

- ❖ degree or extent (***great, perfect, sufficient, huge, tremendous, immense, sheer, complete, endless, major*** and some others): *immense joy, great success;*
- ❖ time and historical periods (***modern, ancient, eternal, daily, contemporary, further, final, original***): *modern art, further discussion, ancient history;*
- ❖ nationality (***English, French***, etc.): *Italian music, French poetry;*
- ❖ position or locality (***London, world, outside, inner, local, internal***, etc.): *inner vision, inside information;*
- ❖ authenticity or reliability (***real, genuine, authentic, symbolic, true, solid, false*** and some others): *real freedom, true friendship;*
- ❖ social characteristic (***Soviet, bourgeois, capitalist, racial, religious***, etc.): *racial segregation, feudal law;*
- ❖ genres or trends in art (***dramatic, theatrical, classical, romantic, detective***, etc.): *romantic prose, detective literature;*
- ❖ man's social and spiritual life (***social, public, political, intellectual, spiritual, moral, mental, reasonable, personal***, etc.): *public recognition, human philosophy;*
- ❖ man's manner or behaviour (***polite, formal, nervous, serious***, etc.): *nervous attitude, formal behavior;*
- ❖ recurrent or going on without stopping phenomena (***continual, continuous, constant, incessant***, etc.): *constant displeasure;*
- ❖ there are also some other adjectives of different meaning (***good, bad, free, critical, ordinary, plain, human***, etc.): *ordinary honesty, human psychology.*

As these attributes do not express a special aspect, the nouns modified by them are used without any article:

*I have perfect confidence in him.*

*She has great experience in her work.*

*They talked about modern poetry.*

*It's three o'clock by Kyiv time.*

**Note.** The definite article is used with the combinations *French poetry, modern art, American literature, German philosophy* if there is a descriptive attribute, as in *the French poetry of the 19<sup>th</sup> century*.

**6.** Some nouns are never used with the indefinite article. They are nouns of verbal character denoting actions, activity, and process, such as ***advice, assistance, admiration, guidance, permission, progress, recognition, research, torture, work, information, approval, concern, trade*** and some others.

This rule is also applied to the following nouns: ***weather, money, news, luck, fun, nature, health, nonsense, evidence, bliss, breeding, cunning*** and some others:

*I am not sure whether it is good news or bad.*

*He was anxiously waiting for permission to begin his experiment.*

*She was making great progress.*

*They promised Jackson further assistance.*

**Note.** Although the above-mentioned nouns are never used with the indefinite article, they can be used with the definite article:

*He told me of the progress he was making.*

*The news was so bad that she said she would not see anyone that night.*

*What is the weather like today?*

**7.** The nouns ***pity, shame, disgrace, pleasure, relief, comfort, disappointment*** are always used with the indefinite article in the following constructions:

❖ in sentences with the formal **it** as subject when they are used as predicative of the main clause:

*It's a pity. It's a shame.*

❖ in exclamatory sentences after **what**:

*What a disgrace!*

## Determiners

A determiner is a word that introduces a noun. It always comes before a noun, not after, and it also comes before any other adjectives used to describe the noun. Determiners are required before a singular noun but are optional when it comes to introducing before plural nouns.

Determiner	Meaning / Use	Examples
<b>Articles</b>		
<b>a / an</b> <b>the</b> <b>no article</b>	❖ (see <b>Article</b> )	<i>For lunch I usually have <b>a</b> sandwich and <b>an</b> apple. How did you like <b>the</b> play? They are good children.</i>
<b>Demonstratives</b>		
<b>this / these</b>  <b>that / those</b>	❖ people and things near us ❖ present / future situations ❖ people and things not near us ❖ past situations	<i><b>This</b> soup is tasty. <b>These</b> people are polite. I'm leaving <b>this</b> week. I don't like <b>that</b> building. <b>Those</b> days were the worst in my life.</i>
<b>Possessives and Possessive case</b>		
<b>my/your/its/</b> <b>her/his/our/</b> <b>their/ Ann's</b>	❖ ownership or relationship between people ❖ <i>my/your</i> , etc. + <b>own</b> + <b>noun</b>	<i>This is <b>my</b> diary. <b>Peter's</b> car is very fast. She's got <b>her own</b> chauffeur.</i>
<b>Numerals</b>		
<b>one/two/ten/</b> <b>hundred, etc.</b>	❖ exact number of people or things	<i><b>One</b> apple is not enough. She has <b>four</b> children.</i>
<b>Ordinals</b>		
<b>first / second</b> <b>next / last</b>	❖ order of people or things in a series	<i>This is his <b>first</b> car. The <b>last</b> train leaves at 10 p.m.</i>
<b>Quantifiers</b>		
<b>many</b>	❖ a large number of people or things ( <i>with countables</i> )	<i>How <b>many</b> sisters do you have?</i>
<b>much</b>	❖ a large amount of sth. ( <i>with uncountables</i> ) (in negations and questions)	<i>There isn't <b>much</b> coffee left.</i>
<b>more</b>	❖ a large number or amount ( <i>with plural countables and uncountables</i> )	<i>We need <b>more</b> apples. She makes <b>more</b> money.</i>
<b>most</b> <b>most of</b>	❖ nearly all ( <i>with plural countables and uncountables</i> )	<i><b>Most</b> shops are closed. <b>Most</b> information is fake. <b>Most</b> of the people are happy.</i>
<b>a lot of</b> <b>lots of</b> <b>plenty of</b>	❖ a large amount of sth. ( <i>with uncountables</i> ) ❖ a large number of people or things ( <i>with countables</i> ) (in statements)	<i>There are <b>a lot of</b> people in the street. He has <b>lots of</b> money.</i>

<b>a few</b>	❖ a small number of; enough (with plural countables)	<i>I have <b>a few</b> friends. But they are very reliable.</i>
<b>few</b>	❖ not many, not enough (with plural countables)	<i>I have <b>few</b> friends. I'm very lonely.</i>
<b>a little</b>	❖ a small amount, enough (with uncountables)	<i>I have <b>a little</b> money. Let's have some coffee.</i>
<b>little</b>	❖ not much, not enough (with uncountables)	<i>Unfortunately, I have <b>little</b> money left.</i>
<b>several</b>	❖ some, but not a large quantity (with countables)	<i>Milk will keep for <b>several</b> days in the fridge.</i>
<b>enough</b>	❖ as much or as many as required (with plural countables and uncountables)	<i>We have <b>enough</b> time. There are <b>enough</b> books for all the students.</i>
<b>some</b>	❖ not many or much ❖ a certain number or amount (with plural countables and uncountables) (in statements)	<i>We bought <b>some</b> flowers. I need <b>some</b> information.</i>
<b>any</b>	❖ quantities which do not or may not exist ❖ a certain number or amount (with plural countables and uncountables) (in negations and questions) ❖ it doesn't matter which one (in statements)	<i>I didn't buy <b>any</b> flowers. I don't need <b>any</b> information.  We can go to <b>any</b> restaurant you like.</i>
<b>no</b>	❖ quantities which do not exist (with countables and uncountables) (in negations)	<i>There was <b>no</b> bus at the stop. There is <b>no</b> money left. There were <b>no</b> shops open.</i>
<b>other</b> <b>the other</b>	❖ people or things in addition to the ones already known  <i>Note: <b>others</b> and <b>the others</b> can be used without a noun.</i>	<i>This is Peter and I have two <b>other</b> brothers. Give me <b>the other</b> pen. <b>The others</b> are waiting there. <b>Others</b> want to stay here.</i>
<b>another</b>	❖ an additional person or thing (with singular countables)	<i>We need <b>another</b> chair.</i>

<i>Predeterminers</i>		
<b>all</b> <b>all of</b>	❖ the whole number or amount of, every one of	<i>He has spent <b>all</b> money.</i> <i><b>All</b> shops are closed.</i>
<b>both</b> <b>both of</b>	❖ two people or things together  <i>Note: <b>both...and</b> + plural verb</i>	<i><b>Both (of)</b> her parents are teachers.</i> <i><b>Both</b> my father <b>and</b> my brother are here.</i>
<b>whole</b>	❖ all of; entire; complete	<i>She was hungry, so she ate the <b>whole</b> pizza.</i>
<i>Distributives</i>		
<b>each</b> <b>each of</b>	❖ every single one of two or more things or people considered separately  <i>Note: <b>each</b> + singular noun, <b>each of</b> + plural noun</i>	<i><b>Each</b> child was given a toy.</i> <i><b>Each of</b> the children was given a present.</i>
<b>every</b>	❖ each one of a group of things or people ❖ regular intervals of time and distance ( <i>with singular countables</i> )	<i><b>Every</b> student has to write the test.</i> <i>We meet <b>every</b> week.</i> <i>We check the route <b>every</b> kilometer.</i>
<b>either</b>	❖ each of two	<i>You can buy a Fiat or a Ford.</i> <i><b>Either</b> brand is good.</i>
<b>either ... or</b>	❖ one or the other of two people, things or groups	<i>I need <b>either</b> a pen <b>or</b> a pencil.</i>
<b>neither</b>	❖ none of two	<i><b>Neither</b> side of the street is clean.</i>
<b>neither...nor</b>	❖ not one or the other of two people, things or groups	<i><b>Neither</b> my sister <b>nor</b> my brother works.</i>
<b>none of</b>	❖ not any of three or more people or things	<i><b>None of</b> the boys has been to Paris.</i>

## Order of Adjectives

Adjectives describe nouns. They have the same form in singular and plural, e.g., *a beautiful girl – two beautiful girls.*

There are two types of adjectives.

**Opinion adjectives** describe what we think of someone or something, e.g., *beautiful, great, cheap, lovely.*

**Fact adjectives** describe what someone or something really is, e.g., *short, long, red, round.* Opinion adjectives go before fact adjectives:

*You live in a nice big house.*

When you use more than one adjective to express your opinion, an adjective with a more general meaning such as “**good**”, “**bad**”, “**nice**”, or “**lovely**” usually comes before an adjective with a more specific meaning:

*It’s a nice, clean shirt.*

If you use two or more fact adjectives, you normally put them in the following order:

1. **Size** (*large, big, small*)
2. **Length, height, weight** (*heavy, light, long, tall, short*)
3. **Age** (*young, old, modern*)
4. **Shape** (*round, square, triangular*)
5. **Colour** (*red, blue*)
6. **Origin** (*Spanish, Chinese*)
7. **Material** (*leather, glass, wooden*)
8. **Purpose (used for/be about)** (*private, historical, writing*).

Opinion adjectives		Fact adjectives								Noun
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	
general	specific	size	length height weight	age	shape	colour	origin	material	purpose	

Adjectives of character and emotion are used after adjectives of physical description, e.g., *She is a tall shy girl.*

You usually put comparative and superlative adjectives in front of other adjectives, e.g., *This is the largest round table I’ve ever seen.*

❖ The words **fast**, **hard**, **late** are both adjectives and adverbs. When they are used before nouns, they are adjectives, when after verbs – they are adverbs:

Adjectives:	Adverbs:
<i>Ann is a <b>hard</b> worker.</i>	<i>Ann works <b>hard</b>.</i>
<i>He is <b>late</b> for school every morning.</i>	<i>He gets up <b>late</b> every morning.</i>
<i>Jack is a very <b>fast</b> runner.</i>	<i>Jack can run very <b>fast</b>.</i>

❖ There are many pairs of adjectives ending in **-ing** and **-ed**. Someone is **-ed** if something or someone is **-ing**. Or, if something is **-ing**, it makes you **-ed**.

*Tom is **bored** because his job is **boring**.*

*Mary’s job is **tiring**, so she is **tired**.*



## Degrees of Comparison

Adjectives	Positive	Comparative ( <i>than</i> )	Superlative ( <i>in/of</i> )
of one syllable add <b>-er/-est</b>	short thin large	shorter thinner larger	<i>the</i> shortest <i>the</i> thinnest <i>the</i> largest
of two syllables ending in <b>-er, -le, -y, -ow</b> add <b>-er/-est</b>	heavy shallow clever	heavier shallower cleverer	<i>the</i> heaviest <i>the</i> shallowest <i>the</i> cleverest
of two syllables with stress on the second syllable add <b>-er/-est</b>	polite severe complete	politer severer completer	<i>the</i> politest <i>the</i> severest <i>the</i> completest
of two and more syllables take <b>more/most</b>	special attractive nervous	<b>more</b> special <b>more</b> attractive <b>more</b> nervous	<i>the</i> <b>most</b> special <i>the</i> <b>most</b> attractive <i>the</i> <b>most</b> nervous
ending in <b>-ed</b> and <b>-ing</b> take <b>more/most</b>	tired boring	<b>more</b> tired <b>more</b> boring	<i>the</i> <b>most</b> tired <i>the</i> <b>most</b> boring
used only predicatively take <b>more/most</b>	afraid aware	<b>more</b> afraid <b>more</b> aware	<i>the</i> <b>most</b> afraid <i>the</i> <b>most</b> aware

❖ Certain adjectives form their comparative and superlative in both ways, either by adding **-er/-est** to the positive form or taking **more/most**. Some of them are: *clever, friendly, gentle, narrow, polite, quiet, simple, stupid*, etc.

e.g., *simple – simpler – the simplest* **or** *simple – more simple – the most simple*

❖ Adjectives ending in mute **-e** drop it and add **-er/-est**:

e.g., *white – whiter – the whitest*

❖ Adjectives ending in **-y** after a consonant drop **-y** and add **-ier/-iest**:

e.g., *happy – happier – the happiest*

❖ In one syllable adjectives final consonants are doubled after short vowels:

e.g., *fat – fatter – the fattest*

## Irregular Forms

<b>good</b>	<b>better</b>	the <b>best</b>	гарний, хороший
<b>bad</b>	<b>worse</b>	the <b>worst</b>	поганий
<b>old</b>	<b>older</b> (age) <b>elder</b> (family order)	the <b>oldest</b> the <b>eldest</b>	старий
<b>far</b>	<b>farther</b> (distance) <b>further</b> (order)	the <b>farthest</b> the <b>furthest</b>	далекий, далеко

<b>much, many</b>	<b>more</b>	<b>the most</b>	багато
<b>little, few</b>	<b>less</b> (uncountable) <b>fewer</b> (countable)	<b>the least</b> <b>the fewest</b>	маленький, мало
<b>near</b>	<b>nearer</b>	<b>the nearest</b> (distance) <b>the next</b> (order)	близький, близько наступний
<b>late</b>	<b>later</b> (time) <b>latter</b> (order)	<b>the latest</b> (time) <b>the last</b> (order)	пізній, пізно останній

**Note.** In emphatic constructions different intensifiers can be used:

1) **a lot, much, still, far, pretty, extremely** + comparative degree:

*He is a lot better.*

*I'm pretty tired.*

2) **by far, possible, imaginable** + superlative degree:

This is by far the best teacher.

This is the most difficult task possible.

## The Verb

The verb is a part of speech which denotes an action. The verb has the following grammatical categories: **person, number, tense, aspect, voice** and **mood**.

Verbs may be **transitive** and **intransitive**.

Verbs have **finite** forms which can be used as the predicate of a sentence and **non-finite** forms which cannot be used as the predicate of a sentence.

According to their morphological structure verbs are divided into:

❖ **simple**, e.g., *read, live, speak*;

❖ **derived**, having affixes, e.g., *magnify, fertilize, captivate, undo, decompose*;

❖ **compound**, consisting of two stems, e.g., *daydream, browbeat, picklock*;

❖ **composite**, consisting of a verb and a postposition of adverbial origin, e.g., *sit down, go away, give up*.

The basic forms of the verb in Modern English are: **the Infinitive, the Past Indefinite** and **Participle II**: *to speak – spoke – spoken*. According to the way in which the Past Indefinite and Participle II are formed, verbs are divided into **regular** verbs, **irregular** verbs and **mixed** verbs.

According to the syntactic function of verbs, which depends on the extent to which they retain, weaken or lose their meaning, they are divided into **notional** verbs, **auxiliary** verbs and **link** verbs.

a) **Notional verbs** are those which have a full meaning of their own and can be used without any additional words as a simple predicate. Here belong such verbs as *to write, to read, to speak, to know*, etc.:

*I read and write very quickly.*

**b) Auxiliary verbs** are those which have lost their meaning and are used only as form words, thus having only a grammatical function. They are used in analytical forms. Here belong such verbs as *to do, to have, to be, shall, will, should, would*:

*I don't speak German. He has read this book twice.*

**c) Link verbs** are verbs which have partially lost their meaning and are used in the compound nominal predicate:

*They are very good people.*

*He suddenly turned pale.*

In different contexts the same verb can be used as a notional verb and an auxiliary verb or a link verb:

*I do lessons every day. (notional)*

*Do they speak any foreign language? (auxiliary)*

*Peter is in the classroom. (notional)*

*John is listening to music. (auxiliary)*

*Mark is a sailor. (link)*

**d)** There is a special group of verbs which cannot be used without additional words, though they have a meaning of their own. These are **modal verbs** such as *can, may, must, ought*, etc.:

*I can cook perfectly.*

## Modal Verbs

Modal verbs are used to show the speaker's attitude toward the action or state indicated by the infinitive. They show that the action is considered as *possible, impossible, probable, improbable, obligatory, necessary, advisable, uncertain*, etc.

- ❖ The modal verbs are: **can, could, may, might, must, ought to, will, would, shall and should.**
- ❖ They do not take -s in the third person singular. *He **can** ride fast.*
- ❖ They come before the subject in questions and are followed by 'not' in negations. ***Could** I leave now? – I'm afraid you **can't** leave.*
- ❖ The modal verbs are followed by an infinitive without **to** except for 'ought to'. *She **could** leave early but she really **ought to** stay till the end.*
- ❖ Each modal verb normally has more than one use or meaning.
- ❖ Certain verbs or expressions have virtually the same meaning as some modals. These are:  
***need** (= must), **have to/have got to** (= must), **be able to** (= can), **used to** (= would), etc.*

	Past	Present	Future
<b>can</b>	could	can	(=will be able to)
<b>may</b>	might	may	-
<b>must</b>	(=had to)	must	(=will have to)
<b>have to</b>	had to	have to/has to	will have to
<b>should/ought to</b>	-	should/ought to	-
<b>to be to</b>	was/were to	am/are/is to	-
<b>shall</b>	-	-	shall
<b>will/would</b>	-	-	will/would
<b>need</b>	-	need	-
<b>dare</b>	dared	dare	-

### Functions of Modal Verbs and Synonymous Expressions

Modals	Meaning / Use	Example
<b>can</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ mental or physical ability in the present and future</li> <li>❖ possibility (90% certain)</li> <li>❖ logical assumption / certainty (negative)</li> <li>❖ giving or refusing permission (informal)</li> <li>❖ requests (informal)</li> <li>❖ offers (informal)</li> <li>❖ prohibition (informal)</li> </ul>	<p><i>I <b>can</b> swim.</i></p> <p><i>We <b>can</b> do this task tomorrow.</i></p> <p><i>He <b>can</b> win the race.</i></p> <p><i>She <b>can't</b> be over forty. = (I'm sure she isn't over forty.)</i></p> <p><i>You <b>can/can't</b> borrow my car.</i></p> <p><i><b>Can</b> I borrow your book?</i></p> <p><i><b>Can</b> I/we do anything for you?</i></p> <p><i>You <b>can't</b> smoke there. = (You aren't allowed to smoke.)</i></p>
<b>could</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ ability and repeated actions in the past</li> <li>❖ possibility at present (50% certain)</li> <li>❖ asking for permission (more polite)</li> </ul>	<p><i>He <b>could</b> read when he was four.</i></p> <p><i>They <b>could</b> still be at school. = (It's possible they are still there.)</i></p> <p><i><b>Could</b> I use your phone?</i></p>
<b>be able to</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ ability</li> <li>❖ ability in the past for single actions</li> </ul>	<p><i>She <b>is able to</b> run a marathon.</i></p> <p><i>He <b>has been able to</b> work since 1999.</i></p> <p><i>If she studies hard, she <b>will be able to</b> pass the test.</i></p> <p><i>He <b>was able to</b> reach Brighton before midnight. (single action)</i></p> <p><i>was able to (= <b>managed to</b>)</i></p>

<b>may</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ giving permission (<i>formal</i>)</li> <li>❖ to refuse permission (<i>formal</i>)</li> <li>❖ to ask for permission (<i>formal</i>)</li> <li>❖ possibility (<i>perhaps; 50% certain</i>)</li> <li>❖ requests (<i>formal</i>)</li> <li>❖ prohibition (<i>formal</i>)</li> </ul>	<p><i>You <b>may</b> use the phone.</i>  <i>Children <b>may not</b> be left alone.</i></p> <p><i><b>May</b> I use your phone? (= Will you allow me to use your phone?)</i>  <i>Tom <b>may</b> be studying in his room.</i>  <i>It's possible that he's studying.</i>  <i><b>May</b> I have a cup of coffee, please?</i>  <i>You <b>may not</b> smoke there.</i></p>
<b>be allowed to</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ permission</li> </ul>	<p><i>Visitors <b>are / were / will be allowed to</b> use the car park.</i></p>
<b>not be allowed to</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ prohibition</li> </ul>	<p><i>He <b>isn't / wasn't / won't be allowed to</b> come in.</i></p>
<b>might</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ requests (<i>very formal</i>)</li> <li>❖ asking for permission (<i>very formal</i>)</li> <li>❖ permission in the past</li> <li>❖ possibility at present (<i>40% certain</i>)</li> <li>❖ reproach</li> </ul>	<p><i><b>Might</b> I use your phone?</i>  <i><b>Might</b> I speak to Mr Jones, please?</i></p> <p><i>He said I <b>might</b> go out.</i>  <i>He <b>might</b> want some more food.</i>  <i>(Perhaps he wants some more food.)</i>  <i>You <b>might</b> be more careful.</i></p>
<b>must</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ necessity</li> <li>❖ obligation</li> <li>❖ prohibition</li> <li>❖ duty and order</li> <li>❖ logical assumption / certainty (<i>positive</i>) (<i>90% certain</i>)</li> <li>❖ urgent advice</li> </ul>	<p><i>I <b>must</b> buy a new jacket. = (I say so.)</i>  <i>I <b>must</b> go on a diet. = (I'm obliged to; I say so.)</i>  <i>You <b>mustn't</b> smoke there. = (It's forbidden.)</i>  <i>Everyone <b>must</b> obey the law.</i>  <i>He <b>must</b> be a driver. = (I'm sure he's a driver.)</i>  <i>You <b>must</b> see the doctor.</i></p>
<b>have to = (have got to)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ necessity coming from outside the speaker</li> <li>❖ absence of necessity</li> <li>❖ obligation</li> </ul>	<p><i>He <b>has to</b> put some petrol in the car.</i>  <i>They <b>don't have to</b> come if they don't want to. (It isn't necessary)</i>  <i>I <b>have to</b> go on a diet. (I'm obliged to; the doctor says so.)</i></p>
<b>had to</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ necessity and obligation in the past</li> <li>❖ absence of necessity in the past</li> </ul>	<p><i>I <b>had to</b> go on a diet a month ago.</i>  <i>She <b>didn't have to</b> buy any apples. (It wasn't necessary for her to buy any apples and she didn't.)</i></p>

<b>should / ought to</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ giving advice</li> <li>❖ asking for advice</li> <li>❖ criticism</li> <li>❖ strong surprise or complain in the question “<i>Why should ...</i>”</li> </ul>	<p><i>You <b>should</b> drink more water. (general advice; I advise you)</i></p> <p><i>You <b>ought to</b> respect the elderly. (I advise you; most people believe this)</i></p> <p><i><b>Should</b> I go by car or by train?</i></p> <p><i>They <b>should</b> try harder.</i></p> <p><i>You <b>ought to</b> behave yourself.</i></p> <p><i><b>Why should</b> I do this?</i></p>
<b>be to</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ giving orders or instructions</li> <li>❖ arrangement which is not to be discussed</li> </ul>	<p><i>You <b>are to</b> stay here until I return.</i></p> <p><i>We <b>are to</b> meet at the theatre.</i></p>
<b>need</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ necessity</li> </ul>	<p><i>My car <b>needs</b> / <b>needed</b> / <b>will need</b> repairing. or</i></p> <p><i>My car <b>needs</b> / <b>needed</b> / <b>will need</b> to be repaired. = (It’s necessary.)</i></p>
<b>don’t need to / needn’t</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ absence of necessity</li> </ul>	<p><i>Today is a holiday, so you / <b>don’t need to</b> / <b>needn’t</b> go to work.</i></p>
<b>didn’t need</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ absence of necessity in the past</li> </ul>	<p><i>She <b>didn’t need</b> to buy any fruit. (It wasn’t necessary for her to buy any fruit and she didn’t.)</i></p>
<b>shall</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ offers (<i>informal</i>)</li> <li>❖ suggestions</li> <li>❖ asking for advice</li> <li>❖ threat or warning (<i>with the 2<sup>nd</sup> and the 3<sup>d</sup> person in statements and negations</i>)</li> </ul>	<p><i><b>Shall</b> I/we do it for you?</i></p> <p><i><b>Shall</b> we dance?</i></p> <p><i><b>Shall</b> I do it right now?</i></p> <p><i>You <b>shall not</b> do that again.</i></p> <p><i>You <b>shall</b> pay for this!</i></p>
<b>will</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ requests</li> <li>❖ invitation / suggestion</li> </ul>	<p><i><b>Will</b> you please be quiet in here?</i></p> <p><i><b>Will</b> you go to the cinema with me?</i></p> <p><i><b>Will</b> you have a cup of coffee?</i></p>
<b>would</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ requests</li> <li>❖ offers</li> <li>❖ habitual action in the past</li> </ul>	<p><i><b>Would</b> you do me a favour?</i></p> <p><i><b>Would</b> you like a lift to the airport?</i></p> <p><i>She <b>would</b> tell me all her secrets in her childhood.</i></p>
<b>dare</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ expressing courage or impertinence to do sth.</li> <li>❖ expressing lack of courage or impertinence to do sth.</li> </ul>	<p><i>How <b>dare</b> you say this?</i></p> <p><i>I <b>dare</b> say ...</i></p> <p><i>He <b>didn’t dare</b> (to) phone me.</i></p>



## The Present Simple = The Present Indefinite

The Present Indefinite is formed from the infinitive without the particle *to*. In the third person singular the ending *-s* is added. The interrogative and the negative forms are formed by means of the Present Indefinite of the auxiliary verb *to do* and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle *to*.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I work	<b>Do</b> I work?	<b>I do not (don't)</b> work
He works	<b>Does</b> he work?	He <b>does not (doesn't)</b> work
She works	<b>Does</b> she work?	She <b>does not (doesn't)</b> work
It works	<b>Does</b> it work?	It <b>does not (doesn't)</b> work
We work	<b>Do</b> we work?	We <b>do not (don't)</b> work
You work	<b>Do</b> you work?	You <b>do not (don't)</b> work
They work	<b>Do</b> they work?	They <b>do not (don't)</b> work

The Present Indefinite is used:

**1.** To express facts which are always true, general statements or a universal truth:

*The earth goes round the sun.*

*Domestic animals return to their homes.*

**2.** To express habitual or repeated actions in present (*usually, sometimes, often, rarely/seldom, never, always, every..., once/twice a week*):

*We often see him in the evening.*

*She never drinks coffee.*

**3.** To express permanent actions. Such actions give a general characteristic to a person:

*She has skills in her work.*

*She sings and plays the piano beautifully.*

**4.** When the action as such attracts the attention of the speaker and the idea of its progress becomes unimportant at the moment:

*You talk too much.*

*I repeat, you have to stay.*

**5.** With verbs that perform the action they describe (performative verbs), e.g., *to accept, to advise, to apologize, to deny, to guarantee, to inform, to predict, to promise, to recommend, to suggest, to suppose*, etc.:

*I promise I will call on Monday.*

*I refuse to believe in it. (refusal)*

**6.** To describe the events in a narrative, when the events are summarized. To describe what happens in a film or book:

*In Chapter 1, Susan meets David, and agrees to dance with him.*

7. With **Stative Verbs** (verbs describing states) (not used in the Continuous), e.g., *to agree, to love, to like, to belong, to contain, to consist, to cost, to hear, to know*, etc. to describe a state at the moment of speaking:

*Now I know what you mean.*

*I see she understands me perfectly.*

8. To express future actions according to timetables, programmes (for public transport, theatre, etc.):

*My train leaves at 11.30 on Tuesday.*

The Present Indefinite is used with the following time indicators:

*every day, usually, seldom=rarely, often, always, never, sometimes, from time to time, at weekends, on Sundays, several times/once/twice a week, as a rule.*

### The Present Continuous = The Present Progressive

The Present Continuous is formed by means of the Present Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>am</b> working	<b>Am</b> I working?	I <b>am not</b> working
He <b>is</b> working	<b>Is</b> he working?	He <b>is not</b> working
She <b>is</b> working	<b>Is</b> she working?	She <b>is not</b> working
It <b>is</b> working	<b>Is</b> it working?	It <b>is not</b> working
We <b>are</b> working	<b>Are</b> we working?	We <b>are not</b> working
You <b>are</b> working	<b>Are</b> you working?	You <b>are not</b> working
They <b>are</b> working	<b>Are</b> they working?	They <b>are not</b> working

The Present Continuous is used:

1. To express actions which are in progress, in their development **now, at the/this moment**:

*It is raining now. I can't go out.*

*We are not speaking at the moment.*

2. To express habits over a period of time, temporary habits. The action is not necessarily happening at the time of speaking:

*He is writing a new play now. I think it will be successful.*

*I am reading an interesting historical novel. It's about the Second World War.*

3. To show that the situation is temporary (**at this period, currently, this year, this season**):

*Banks are lending more money these days to encourage new businesses.*

*I'm living with some friends until I find a flat.*

4. To express changes, developments and trends over a period of time:  
*The climate is getting warmer.*  
*The prices are going up.*
  5. To express anger or irritation at a repeated action, to emphasize that something is done repeatedly (too/very often, all the time) (***always, constantly, continually***):  
*You are always coming late!*  
*He is constantly losing his keys!*
  6. To describe background events when we give commentaries, instructions, tell a story or a joke:  
*She goes up. She looks tired. She is carrying a bag full of shopping.*
  7. With some ***Stative Verbs*** when there is a change of meaning and they become ***dynamic verbs*** (denote an action):  
*I am thinking of you.*  
*She is having breakfast.*
  8. To express future actions which are fixed personal arrangements made in advance:  
*Peter is getting married next month.*  
*We are flying to Paris tomorrow.*
  9. With ***never ... again*** to show the intention not to do something in future:  
*I'm never speaking to you again.*  
*I'm never driving again.*
- The Present Continuous is used with the following time indicators: ***now, at the moment, at present, nowadays, still, these days, this year (month), today, at this period, currently, always/constantly/continually.***

### Stative Verbs

Verbs describing a permanent state (**Stative Verbs**) do not normally have continuous forms. These are:

- ❖ verbs of the senses: **see, hear, smell, feel, taste**, etc. We often use ***can*** or ***could*** with these verbs, e.g., *Can you see that tall boy over there?*
- ❖ verbs of opinion: **agree, believe, consider**, etc.
- ❖ verbs of emotions: **feel, forgive, hate, like, love**, etc.
- ❖ other verbs: **appear, seem, be, belong, fit** (= be the right shape and size for sth), **have** (= possess), **know, look** (= appear), **need, prefer, require, want, weigh, wish**, etc.:

*He knows where Peter is. (not ~~is knowing~~)*

Some Stative Verbs (**see, smell, taste, feel, think, have**, etc.) have continuous forms but there is a difference in meaning.

State	Action
<i>I think she's rich.</i> (= I believe)	<i>I'm thinking about your plan.</i> (= I'm considering)
<i>The milk tastes awful.</i> (= it has a bad flavour)	<i>He's tasting the sauce; it might need some salt.</i> (= he's trying its flavour)
<i>He has a pet dog.</i> (= he owns)	<i>He's having dinner now.</i> (= he's eating)
<i>This cloth feels like velvet.</i> (= has the texture)	<i>She's feeling her way in the dark.</i> (= she's finding her way)
<i>I see you're in trouble.</i> (= I understand)	<i>I'm seeing my lawyer tonight.</i> (= I'm visiting)
<i>The kitchen smells of burnt meat.</i> (= has the smell)	<i>Why are you smelling your food?</i> (= trying the smell of)
<i>He comes from Spain.</i> (= he was born in)	<i>He's coming from Spain.</i> (= he's travelling from)
<i>Your hair looks great.</i> (= it appears)	<i>She's looking at some old photographs.</i> (= she's examining)
<i>The baby weighs 5 kilos.</i> (= it is)	<i>I'm weighing myself on my new scales.</i> (= I'm finding out my weight)
<i>These shoes fit me perfectly.</i> (= they are the right size)	<i>We're fitting a new carpet in the hall.</i> (= laying)
<i>I love/enjoy good films.</i> (= I like in general)	<i>I'm loving/enjoying this film.</i> (= I like specifically)
<i>He appears to be working.</i> (= he seems to be)	<i>The opera singer is appearing on stage tonight.</i> (= he will make an appearance)
<i>Peter is naughty.</i> (= his character is bad.)	<i>Suzy is being very naughty.</i> (= she is misbehaving)

Here are some of the many **Stative Verbs** in English:

❖ **mental & emotional states:**

<b>to believe</b>	вірити	<b>to (dis)like</b>	(не)любити
<b>to prefer</b>	надавати перевагу	<b>to feel*</b> <b>(have an opinion)</b>	мати передчуття
<b>to doubt</b>	сумніватися	<b>to love</b>	любити
<b>to realise</b>	усвідомлювати	<b>to want</b>	хотіти
<b>to recognize</b>	впізнавати	<b>to hate</b>	ненавидіти
<b>to suppose</b>	припускати	<b>to wish</b>	бажати
<b>to imagine</b>	уявляти	<b>to understand</b>	розуміти
<b>to remember</b>	пам'ятати	<b>to know</b>	знати
<b>to mind</b>	мати на увазі	<b>to find</b>	переконуватися
<b>to see*(understand)</b>	розуміти	<b>to consider</b>	брати до уваги
<b>to appreciate</b>	цінувати	<b>to adore</b>	обожнювати

❖ use of the senses:

<b>to appear</b>	виявлятися	<b>to look (seem)</b>	здаватися
<b>to seem</b>	здаватися	<b>to sound</b>	звучати
<b>to hear</b>	чути	<b>to see</b>	бачити
<b>to smell</b>	пахнути	<b>to taste</b>	мати смак

❖ other:

<b>to agree on/with</b>	погоджуватись з	<b>to please</b>	радувати, догоджати
<b>to belong to</b>	належати до	<b>to lack</b>	бракувати, не мати
<b>to consist of</b>	складатися з	<b>to matter</b>	мати значення
<b>to deny</b>	заперечувати	<b>to need</b>	потребувати
<b>to contain</b>	включати в себе	<b>to owe</b>	заборгувати
<b>to depend on</b>	залежати від	<b>to satisfy</b>	задовольняти
<b>to impress</b>	вражати	<b>to possess</b>	володіти
<b>to deserve</b>	заслужувати	<b>to surprise</b>	дивувати
<b>to fit</b>	підходити за розм.	<b>to weigh</b>	мати вагу
<b>to mean</b>	означати	<b>to require</b>	потребувати
<b>to include</b>	включати в себе	<b>to sound</b>	звучати
<b>to involve</b>	включати	<b>to be</b>	бути

### The Past Simple = The Past Indefinite

The Past Indefinite is formed by adding **-ed** or **-d** to the stem (regular verbs), or by changing the root vowel, or in some other ways (irregular verbs). The interrogative and the negative forms are formed by means of the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to do (did)** and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle **to**.

<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
I worked <u>ed</u> ( <b>wrote</b> )	<b>Did</b> I work ( <b>write</b> )?	I <b>didn't</b> work ( <b>write</b> )
He worked <u>ed</u> ( <b>wrote</b> )	<b>Did</b> he work ( <b>write</b> )?	He <b>didn't</b> work ( <b>write</b> )
She worked <u>ed</u> ( <b>wrote</b> )	<b>Did</b> she work ( <b>write</b> )?	She <b>didn't</b> work ( <b>write</b> )
It worked <u>ed</u> ( <b>wrote</b> )	<b>Did</b> it work ( <b>write</b> )?	It <b>didn't</b> work ( <b>write</b> )
We worked <u>ed</u> ( <b>wrote</b> )	<b>Did</b> we work ( <b>write</b> )?	We <b>didn't</b> work ( <b>write</b> )
You worked <u>ed</u> ( <b>wrote</b> )	<b>Did</b> you work ( <b>write</b> )?	You <b>didn't</b> work ( <b>write</b> )
They worked <u>ed</u> ( <b>wrote</b> )	<b>Did</b> they work ( <b>write</b> )?	They <b>didn't</b> work ( <b>write</b> )

The Past Indefinite is used:

1. To express a complete action or event which happened at a stated past time (*yesterday, last (week), (a week) ago, in 1998, then*):

*I cleaned the room yesterday.*

*Last time I played tennis a week ago.*

2. To express past habits or states, repeated actions in the past:

*In my childhood I lived with my granny.*

*I always got up at six in those days.*

3. To express an action which happened at a definite past time, but the time is not mentioned. This action is not connected with the present:

*Shakespeare wrote a lot of plays.*

*My mother grew up in Scotland.*

4. With **Stative Verbs** (verbs describing states) (not used in the Continuous), e.g., *to agree, to love, to like, to belong, to contain, to consist, to cost, to hear, to know*, etc:

*At that moment I didn't know what to do.*

*We didn't agree with her.*

The Past Indefinite is used with the following time indicators: *yesterday, then, when, How long ago...?, last night/week/month, two days/weeks ago, in 1997*, etc.

### Used to do

**Used to do** means that something happened regularly in the past, but no longer happens. It describes past habits, past states or regularly repeated actions in the past, usually in contrast with the present:

*I used to play football a lot, but I don't play very often now.*

*I used to think Peter was unfriendly, but now I see he is a nice person.*

The interrogative and the negative forms are formed by means of the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to do (did)** and the infinitive of the verb **to use** without the particle **to**.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> I use to work?	I <b>didn't</b> use to work
He <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> he use to work?	He <b>didn't</b> use to work
She <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> she use to work?	She <b>didn't</b> use to work
It <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> it use to work?	It <b>didn't</b> use to work
We <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> we use to work?	We <b>didn't</b> use to work
You <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> you use to work?	You <b>didn't</b> use to work
They <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> they use to work?	They <b>didn't</b> use to work

**I used to do** something is the past. There is no present form. Use the Present Simple to talk about the present:

*I used to live in a small village, but now I live in Kyiv.*

*There used to be four banks in our town. Now there is only one.*

**Note** that **would** is also used to express regularly repeated actions and routines in the past, but it isn't used for states:

*She used to tell me the stories. (= She would tell me the stories.)*

*He used to have a beard. (not would – state)*



## The Past Continuous = The Past Progressive

The Present Continuous is formed by means of the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>was</b> working	<b>Was</b> I working?	I <b>was not</b> working
He <b>was</b> working	<b>Was</b> he working?	He <b>was not</b> working
She <b>was</b> working	<b>Was</b> she working?	She <b>was not</b> working
It <b>was</b> working	<b>Was</b> it working?	It <b>was not</b> working
We <b>were</b> working	<b>Were</b> we working?	We <b>were not</b> working
You <b>were</b> working	<b>Were</b> you working?	You <b>were not</b> working
They <b>were</b> working	<b>Were</b> they working?	They <b>were not</b> working

The Past Continuous is used:

**1.** To express an action which was in progress, in its development at a particular moment of time or period in the past:

*He was playing tennis at 4.30 yesterday.*

*We were cleaning the flat the whole evening yesterday.*

**2.** To express anger or irritation at a repeated action in the past, to emphasize that something was done repeatedly (too/very often, all the time) (**always, constantly, continually**):

*At school you were always coming late.*

*In his childhood he was constantly losing his keys.*

**3.** With some **Stative Verbs** when there is a change of meaning and they become **dynamic verbs** (denote an action):

*Yesterday the whole evening I was thinking of you.*

*She was being very naughty during the party.*

**4.** **Was/were going to do sth.** is used to express actions one intended to do but didn't do:

*She was going to move to London but she decided to stay in York.*

The Past Continuous is used with the following time indicators: **while, when, as, all morning/evening/day/night**, etc.

## The Past Simple vs The Past Continuous

<i>The Past Simple</i>	<i>The Past Continuous</i>
<b>1.</b> To express several past actions which happened one after the other:	<b>1.</b> To express two or more simultaneous past actions ( <b>while/when</b> ):
<i>She came home, had dinner, did her homework and went for a walk.</i>	<i>While I was reading, my mother was watching TV.</i>

2. To express a single past action which interrupts another past action in its development: →	2. To show an action or activity that was in progress, and which was interrupted by another action:
<i>The bell rang</i> <i>My mother entered the room</i>	<i>while I was getting dressed.</i> <i>when I was doing my homework.</i>
3. To describe main events in a story: →	3. To express background descriptions to events in a story:
<i>That funny accident happened</i>	<i>while she was flying to Paris.</i>

### The Future Indefinite = The Future Simple

The Future Indefinite is formed by means of the auxiliary verb *will* and *shall* and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle *to*. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>will/shall</b> work	<b>Shall/Will</b> I work?	I <b>will not (won't)</b> work
He <b>will</b> work	<b>Will</b> he work?	He <b>will not (won't)</b> work
She <b>will</b> work	<b>Will</b> she work?	She <b>will not (won't)</b> work
It <b>will</b> work	<b>Will</b> it work?	It <b>will not (won't)</b> work
We <b>will/shall</b> work	<b>Shall/Will</b> we work?	We <b>will not (won't)</b> work
You <b>will</b> work	<b>Will</b> you work?	You <b>will not (won't)</b> work
They <b>will</b> work	<b>Will</b> they work?	They <b>will not (won't)</b> work

**Note.** We normally use *shall* only in questions with **I** and **we** to ask somebody's opinion (especially in offers and suggestions) and to ask for advice or instructions:

*Shall I open the window?* (= Do you want me to open the window?)

*Shall we go for a walk?* (= Let's go for a walk.)

The Future Indefinite is used:

1. To express decisions made at the moment of speaking:

*I'm tired. I will go and have a nap.*

*OK, I'll see you this evening at eight.*

2. To express predictions, often with *I believe*, *expect*, *hope*, *think*, etc:

*I think it will be a difficult game.*

*Don't worry. Everything will be ok.*

3. To express offers or willingness:

*I'll give you a lift home if you like.*

*All right. I'll water the flowers.*

4. To ask somebody to do something:

*Will you please make some coffee?*

*Will you do me a favour?*

5. To say that you or somebody refuses, promises and threats to do something:

*I won't speak to you ever again!*

*I'll pay you back on Friday.*

*Don't give her advice. She won't listen.*

The Future Indefinite is used with the following time indicators:

*tomorrow, soon, next week/month/year, the day after tomorrow, etc.*

### Different Ways of Expressing the Future

We can use different ways to express the future in English. The choice depends on the situation. Here are the main forms and their uses:

<p>1. To express future actions which are fixed personal arrangements made in advance: <i>I'm not working tomorrow.</i> <i>What are you doing this evening?</i></p>	<p><b>Present Continuous</b></p>
<p>2. To express a future action according to timetable, programme (for public transport, theatre, etc.): <i>My train leaves at 11.30 on Tuesday.</i> <i>The football championship begins on Monday.</i></p>	<p><b>Present Simple</b></p>
<p>3. To express plans and intentions to do something in future: <i>I'm going to phone him tomorrow.</i> <i>He is going to join a gym next week.</i></p>	<p><b>to be going to do</b></p>
<p>4. To make on-the-spot decisions and also to offer, to refuse, to agree, to promise, to threat and to ask to do something: <i>I'll go and shut the door.</i> <i>We'll help you with your housework.</i></p>	<p><b>Future Simple</b></p>
<p>5. To make predictions based on what we see or we know, especially when there is evidence: <i>Look at the dark clouds! It's going to rain.</i> <i>That building is going to collapse soon.</i></p>	<p><b>to be going to do</b></p>
<p>6. To make predictions based on what we believe or think, often with <i>I believe, expect, hope, think</i>, etc: <i>I hope it won't rain tomorrow.</i> <i>I'm sure she will pass the exam easily.</i></p>	<p><b>Future Simple</b></p>

## WHEN and IF Clauses

Sentences with adverbial clauses of **time** (*when*) and **condition** (*if*) have two parts:

### *if/when-clause* and **main clause**

*If you finish work early, we will go for a walk.*

*We will go to the cinema when you finish work.*

❖ Note that we use a comma (,) when the *if/when-clause* comes before the **main clause**.

Adverbial clauses of **time** show the time of the action expressed in the main clause. They are introduced by the following conjunctions: *when, while, whenever* (коли б не), *as, till, until, as soon as, as long as, after, before*.

Adverbial clauses of **condition** state the condition which is necessary for the realization of the action expressed in the main clause. They are introduced by the conjunctions *if, unless* (якщо не), *on condition that, as long as, in case*.

## Zero and First Conditionals

The **Zero Conditional** is used to show that one action, result, etc. always follows another:

<i>if/when-clause</i>	<i>main clause</i>
<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>Present Simple</b>
<i>If/When water freezes, it turns into ice.</i> <i>When I travel by car, I'm always sick.</i>	

The **First Conditional** is used to talk about events which are possible, real or very probable in the present or future:

<i>if/when-clause</i>	<i>main clause</i>
<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>Future Simple</b>
<i>If you study hard, you will do well in the test.</i> <i>When I am in London again, I'll phone you.</i>	

Note that we use **when** for things which are *sure* to happen, and we use **if** (not **when**) for things that will *possibly* happen:

*If they don't come soon, I won't wait for them.* (= it's possible)

*When I go shopping, I'll buy some food.* (= for sure)

❖ Other structures are also possible, depending on what we want to say:

<i>if/when-clause</i>	<i>main clause</i>
<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>to going to do</b> (future)
<i>If you don't work,</i> <i>When I get home,</i>	<i>you are going to fail.</i> <i>I am going to have dinner.</i>
<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>modal verbs (can/may/should)</b>
<i>If you behave yourself,</i> <i>When you get money,</i>	<i>you may come.</i> <i>you can buy a new house.</i>
<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>Imperative</b>
<i>If you need anything,</i> <i>When you have some free time,</i>	<i>ask.</i> <i>visit us.</i>
<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>Present Simple</b> (for future)
<i>If there are no problems,</i> <i>When the weather is clear,</i>	<i>the ceremony starts in time.</i> <i>my flight arrives at 7a.m.</i>
<b>Present Continuous</b>	<b>Future Simple</b>
<i>If he is listening to me attentively,</i> <i>When our father is sleeping,</i>	<i>I will tell him an interesting story.</i> <i>I'll play computer games.</i>
<b>Present Perfect</b>	<b>Future Simple</b>
<i>If I have promised,</i> <i>When (As soon as) I have finished,</i>	<i>I will try to do my best to be in time.</i> <i>I'll phone you.</i>
<b>Imperative</b>	<b>and/or + Future Simple</b>
<i>Work hard,</i> <i>Stop arguing,</i>	<i>and you will do well in the test.</i> <i>or I'll punish you.</i>

### The Present Perfect

The Present Perfect is formed by means of the Present Indefinite of the auxiliary verb *to have* and Participle II of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>have</b> worked	<b>Have</b> I worked?	I <b>have not</b> worked
He <b>has</b> worked	<b>Has</b> he worked?	He <b>has not</b> worked
She <b>has</b> worked	<b>Has</b> she worked?	She <b>has not</b> worked
It <b>has</b> worked	<b>Has</b> it worked?	It <b>has not</b> worked
We <b>have</b> worked	<b>Have</b> we worked?	We <b>have not</b> worked
You <b>have</b> worked	<b>Have</b> you worked?	You <b>have not</b> worked
They <b>have</b> worked	<b>Have</b> they worked?	They <b>have not</b> worked

Participle II of the regular verbs is built up by adding **-ed** to the stem of the verb, or only **-d** if the stem of the verb ends in mute **-e**:

e.g., *to want* – *wanted*, *to open* – *opened*, *to live* – *lived*, *continue* – *continued*

The following spelling rules should be observed:

- ❖ Final **-y** is changed into **-i** and then **-ed** is added if it is preceded by a consonant: e.g., *to carry* – *carried*, *to reply* – *replied*

But **-y** remains unchanged if it is preceded by a vowel: e.g., *to enjoy* – *enjoyed*,

- ❖ If a verb ends in a consonant preceded by a short stressed vowel, the final consonant is doubled: e.g., *to stop* – *stopped*, *to plan* – *planned*
- ❖ Final **-r** is doubled if it is preceded by a stressed vowel: e.g., *to stir* – *stirred*, *to refer* – *referred*,

But final **-r** is not doubled when it is preceded by a diphthong: e.g., *to appear* – *appeared*

- ❖ Final **-l** is doubled if it is preceded by a short vowel, stressed or unstressed: e.g., *to compel* – *compelled*, *to quarrel* – *quarrelled*, **but** *to appeal* – *appealed*.
- ❖ If a verb ends in **-c**, we add **-k** and **-ed**: e.g. *to mimic* – *mimicked*

The Present Perfect is used:

**1.** To express an action which has recently finished and whose result is visible in the present:

*She has just washed her hair that's why it is wet.*

*Mark has already gone. He's not here.*

**Note:** The Present Perfect is often used with **just**, **already**, **yet**:

*Hello. Have you just arrived?*

**just** = a short time ago

*She has already bought the tickets.*

**already** = happened sooner than expected

*Has it stopped raining yet?*

**yet** = until now (in questions and

*She hasn't bought the tickets yet.*

negative sentences.)

**2.** To express an action which happened at an unstated time in the past. The exact time is not mentioned because it is either unknown or unimportant. The emphasis is placed on the action:

*The Smiths have bought a car.*

*There has been an accident. The road is closed.*



**3.** With **Stative Verbs** (verbs describing states) (not used in the Continuous) for an action which started in the past and continues up to the present. In this case **for** and **since** are often used:

*Ann has known me for three years.*

*We haven't seen them since Friday.*

**Note:** The preposition **for** is used to denote the whole period of duration, **since** is used to indicate the starting point of the action.

If the conjunction **since** introduces a clause, the verb in this case is used in the Past Indefinite:

*I haven't heard from you since I moved to a new apartment.*

*They have known each other since they were at school.*

However, the Present Perfect can be used in the **since**-clause if the two situations described in the main clause and **since**-clause extend until the present:

*Since I've lived here, I haven't seen my neighbours.*

**4.** To indicate an action which has happened within a specific time period which is not over at the moment of speaking. We often use words and expressions such as **today, this morning/week/month/year, in the last few days, so far**, etc.:

*She has drunk 3 cups of coffee today.*

*Everything is ok. We haven't had any problems so far.*

**5.** With ordinal numerals and adjectives in superlative degree:

*It's the first time he has driven a car.*

*It's the most terrible weather we have ever had.*

**6.** To announce a piece of news, but the Past Indefinite or/and the Past Continuous is used to give more details about the news:

*The police have finally arrested Peter Parker. He was trying to leave the country when they caught him.*

*I've burnt myself. I picked up a hot dish.*

**7.** To express a future action in adverbial clauses of time:

*When I have translated this text, I'll let you know.*

*I will tell you the secret when he has gone out.*

**Note 1:** The Present Perfect is not used in questions introduced by **when, what time** as in this case the speaker is interested in the time of action:

*When did you repair your car?*

*What time did you come home?*

**Note 2:** There is some difference in meaning between **Have gone to... / Have been to... / Have been in...**

*Nick has gone to Rome. (= He is there or on his way to Rome.)*

*Nick has been to Rome once.* (= He's visited Rome but he's back now.)

*Nick has been in Rome for two days.* (= He's in Rome now.)

The Present Perfect is used with the following time indicators:

*already, yet, always, just, ever, never, so far, today, this week, how long, recently, of late, lately, still* (in negations), *for, since*.

### The Past Simple vs The Present Perfect

<i>The Past Simple</i> is used:	<i>The Present Perfect</i> is used:
<b>1.</b> For a completed action which happened at a stated time in the past: <i>She left yesterday.</i> (When did she leave? – Yesterday.)	<b>1.</b> For a completed action which happened at an unstated time in the past: <i>She has left for London.</i> (We don't know when she left; unstated time; she's either now there or on her way there.)
<b>2.</b> For an action which happened in the past and cannot be repeated: <i>I met Michel Jackson.</i> (I won't meet him again. He's dead. – the period of time is finished.)	<b>2.</b> For an action which happened in the past and may be repeated: <i>I've met Julia Roberts.</i> (I may meet her again. She's alive. – the period of time is not finished yet.)
<b>3.</b> For an action which is not connected to the present: <i>Jane was in Paris for two months.</i> (She isn't in Paris any more. The action is not connected to the present.)	<b>3.</b> For an action which is connected to the present: <i>Jane has been in Paris for two months.</i> (She is still in Paris. The action is connected to the present.)
<b>4.</b> For an action which happened within a specific time period which is over at the moment of speaking: <i>I wrote five letters this morning.</i> (The time period is over. It is evening or night now.)	<b>4.</b> For an action which happened within a specific time period which is not over at the moment of speaking: <i>I have written five letters this morning.</i> (The time period is not over. It is still morning now.)

### The Present Perfect Continuous

The Present Perfect Continuous is formed by means of the Present Perfect of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>have been</b> working	<b>Have I been</b> working?	I <b>have not been</b> working
He <b>has been</b> working	<b>Has he been</b> working?	He <b>has not been</b> working
She <b>has been</b> working	<b>Has she been</b> working?	She <b>has not been</b> working
It <b>has been</b> working	<b>Has it been</b> working?	It <b>has not been</b> working
We <b>have been</b> working	<b>Have we been</b> working?	We <b>have not been</b> working
You <b>have been</b> working	<b>Have you been</b> working?	You <b>have not been</b> working
They <b>have been</b> working	<b>Have they been</b> working?	They <b>have not been</b> working

The Present Perfect Continuous is used:

**1.** To put an emphasis on the duration of an action that started in the past and continues up to the present, especially with such words: *for, since, all day/year*, etc.

*Sam has been talking on the phone for half an hour.*

*I have been looking for you all day long.*

**2.** To denote an action which began in the past, lasted for some time, has been going on up to the present and is still going on:

*I have been waiting for him for the last three days.*

*Terry has already been sleeping for ten hours.*

**3.** To express an action which started in the past and was recently in progress. The action has finished and is no longer going on at the present moment, but the result of the action is visible in the present:

*Her feet hurt. She has been walking all morning.*

*Your eyes are red. Have you been crying?*

**4.** To express anger, irritation or annoyance at an action which happened in the past but whose result is visible in the present:

*Who has been using my computer?*

*Mary has been telling lies again.*

**Note:** With non-terminative verbs such as *to live, to work, to study, to learn, to travel*, both the Present Perfect and the Present Perfect Continuous are used with no or very little difference in the meaning:

*We have lived here since 1994.*

*(the fact is emphasized)*

*He has worked for this company all his life.*

*We have been living here since 1994.*

*(the process is emphasized)*

*He has been working for this company all his life.*

The Present Perfect Continuous is used with the following time indicators:

*for, since, today, this week, how long, recently, of late, lately, still, already, yet, always, just, ever, never, so far.*

## The Present Continuous vs The Present Perfect Continuous

<i><b>The Present Continuous</b></i> is used:	<i><b>The Present Perfect Continuous</b></i> is used:
To denote an action going on at the present moment:	To denote an action going on at the present moment when the previous duration of the action is expressed:
<i>Hurry up! We are waiting. We need an umbrella. It is raining.</i>	<i>We have been waiting for three hours. The ground is wet. It has been raining.</i>

## The Present Perfect Continuous vs The Present Perfect

<i><b>The Present Perfect Continuous</b></i> is used:	<i><b>The Present Perfect</b></i> is used:
<b>1.</b> To emphasize the activity. It does not matter whether it is finished or not:	<b>1.</b> To emphasize the completion of the action. It is important that it is finished:
<i>Her hands are very dirty. She has been repairing the car. Peter has been eating too much recently. He should eat less.</i>	<i>The car is OK again now. She has repaired it. Peter has eaten everything. The fridge is empty.</i>
<b>2.</b> To say <i>how long</i> (for an activity that is still happening):	<b>2.</b> To say <i>how much, how many</i> or <i>how many times</i> (for completed actions):
<i>How long have you been reading that book? Lisa has been writing letters all day.</i>	<i>How much of that book have you read? Lisa has written five letters today.</i>
<b>3.</b> With dynamic verbs:	<b>3.</b> With stative verbs:
<i>I have been teaching them for two years. We have been having lunch since 1p.m.</i>	<i>I have known them for two years. We have had this car since 2016.</i>

## The Past Perfect

The Past Perfect is formed by means of the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb *to have* and Participle II of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> I worked?	I <b>had not</b> worked
He <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> he worked?	He <b>had not</b> worked
She <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> she worked?	She <b>had not</b> worked
It <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> it worked?	It <b>had not</b> worked
We <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> we worked?	We <b>had not</b> worked
You <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> you worked?	You <b>had not</b> worked
They <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> they worked?	They <b>had not</b> worked

The Past Perfect is used:

**1.** To express an action which happened before another past action or before a stated moment in the past. The moment may be indicated by another past action expressed by a verb in the Past Indefinite or by an adverbial phrase.

*Ann had finished work when she met her friends.*

*Ann had finished work by 5 p.m.*

**2.** To express an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past:

*He was happy. He had signed an important contract.*

*Sally was tired. She had walked 5 miles.*

(The actions finished in the past and their results were visible in the past, too.)

**3.** To denote only the completion of the action but not the priority:

*He waited until she had found the key and opened the door.*

*She did lots of work until she had finally gone to bed.*

**4.** With **Stative Verbs** (verbs describing states) (not used in the Continuous) for an action or state which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to that moment and was still going on at that moment. The starting point or the whole period of duration of the action is indicated:

*Ann had known me since our childhood.*

*We had had bad weather for a week. We were fed up with it.*

**Note:** The preposition **for** is used to denote the whole period of duration, **since** is used to indicate the starting point of the action.

If the conjunction **since** introduces a clause, the verb in this case is used in the Past Indefinite:

*Betty couldn't speak when I phoned her. She had been very busy since early morning. (since she got up.)*

**5.** Rarely in negative sentences:

*They hadn't spoken to each other for three days and were in a state of rage.*

**6.** After verbs **to want, to hope, to expect, to mean, to think about** to say what we wanted or hoped to do, but didn't:

*I had wanted to see the gallery before I left Paris, but it was closed.*

**7.** With the conjunctions **hardly ... when, scarcely ... when, no sooner ... than**. For the sake of emphasis, the word order may be inverted:

*Hardly had I turned on the television, when I heard shocking news.*

*No sooner had he opened the door than the children rushed to meet him. Scarcely had Peter opened the letter when he understood everything.*

**Note:** The Past Perfect is the past equivalent of the Present Perfect:

*He had lost his watch. He couldn't find it.* (The action happened in the past and its result was also visible in the past.)

*He has lost his watch. He can't find it.* (The action happened in the past and its result is still visible in the present)

The Past Perfect is used with the following time indicators:

*before, after, as soon as, already, just, for, since, till/ until, when, by, by the time, never, etc.*

### The Past Simple vs The Past Perfect

<i>The Past Simple</i> is used:	<i>The Past Perfect</i> is used:
<b>1.</b> To denote a succession of actions in the past:	<b>1.</b> To denote an action which happened before another action in the past:
<i>When he stopped singing, everyone left.</i> (= they left after he stopped singing.) <i>I got up when the phone rang.</i> (= the phone rang and then I got up.)	<i>When he stopped singing, everyone had left.</i> (= they left before he stopped singing.) <i>I had gone to bed when the phone rang.</i> (= I went to bed and then the phone rang.)
<b>2.</b> With <i>before, as soon as, when</i> or <i>after</i> to say that one event happened after another:	<b>2.</b> With <i>before, as soon as, when</i> or <i>after</i> when the idea of completion of the previous action is more important:
<i>They went out after it stopped raining.</i> <i>When Carol brushed her teeth, she went to bed.</i>	<i>They went out after it had stopped raining.</i> <i>When Carol had brushed her teeth, she went to bed.</i>
<b>3.</b> To emphasise that the second event is the result of the first:	
<i>She became famous after she appeared on the TV programme.</i> <i>When the teacher came in, all the children stood up.</i>	

### The Past Perfect Continuous

The Past Perfect Continuous is formed by means of the Past Perfect of the auxiliary verb *to be* and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the first auxiliary verb.



Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>had been</b> working	<b>Had</b> I <b>been</b> working?	I <b>had not been</b> working
He <b>had been</b> working	<b>Had</b> he <b>been</b> working?	He <b>had not been</b> working
She <b>had been</b> working	<b>Had</b> she <b>been</b> working?	She <b>had not been</b> working
It <b>had been</b> working	<b>Had</b> it <b>been</b> working?	It <b>had not been</b> working
We <b>had been</b> working	<b>Had</b> we <b>been</b> working?	We <b>had not been</b> working
You <b>had been</b> working	<b>Had</b> you <b>been</b> working?	You <b>had not been</b> working
They <b>had been</b> working	<b>Had</b> they <b>been</b> working?	They <b>had not been</b> working

The Past Perfect Continuous is used:

**1.** To denote an action which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to that moment and was still going on at that moment. The starting point or the whole period of duration of the action is indicated:

*We could not go out because it had been raining since early morning.*

*They had been expecting the news for two hours when I called.*

**2.** To put an emphasis on the duration of an action which started and finished in the past before another past action or a stated time in the past, usually with **for** and **since**:

*They had been looking for a house for six months before they found one they liked.*

**3.** To express an action which lasted for some time in the past and whose result was visible in the past:

*Her eyes were red. She had been crying all morning.*

*I had been working hard, so I felt I needed some rest.*

**Note:** The Past Perfect Continuous is the past equivalent of the Present Perfect Continuous:

*At last the bus came. I had been waiting for 30 minutes.* (The action lasted for some time in the past and its result was also visible in the past.)

*I hope the bus will come soon. I have been waiting for 30 minutes.* (The action started in the past and its result is still visible in the present)

The Past Perfect is used with the following time indicators:

*before, after, as soon as, already, just, for, since, till/ until, when, by, by the time, never, etc.*

## The Past Continuous vs The Past Perfect Continuous

<b><i>The Past Continuous</i></b> is used:	<b><i>The Past Perfect Continuous</i></b> is used:
To denote an action going on at a definite moment in the past:	To denote an action which lasted for some time in the past and whose result was visible in the past:
<i>When we met Mark and Sue, they were playing tennis. (= we met while they were playing.)</i> <i>It was raining when we went out.</i>	<i>When we met Mark and Sue, they had been playing tennis. (= we met after they had finished.)</i> <i>When we went out, the sun was shining but the ground was wet. It had been raining.</i>

## The Past Perfect Continuous vs The Past Perfect

<b><i>The Past Perfect Continuous</i></b> is used:	<b><i>The Past Perfect</i></b> is used:
<b>1.</b> To emphasize the continuity or duration of a situation or activity in the past:	<b>1.</b> To emphasize the completion of a situation or action in the past:
<i>John had been saving since Christmas to buy a bike he wanted.</i>	<i>John had saved enough money to buy a bike he wanted.</i>
<b>2.</b> To say <b>how long</b> (for an activity that was still happening):	<b>2.</b> To say <b>how much, how many</b> or <b>how many times</b> (for completed actions):
<i>Tim was busy. He had been writing letters all day.</i>	<i>Tim was busy. He had written five letters that day.</i>
<b>3.</b> With dynamic verbs:	<b>3.</b> With stative verbs:
<i>He had been repairing the car for 5 hours before it started.</i>	<i>He had owned the car for 3 years before it broke.</i>

## The Future Continuous

The Future Continuous is formed by means of the Future Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
<b>I will be working</b>	<b>Will I be working?</b>	<b>I will not (won't) be working</b>
<b>He will be working</b>	<b>Will he be working?</b>	<b>He will not (won't) be working</b>
<b>She will be working</b>	<b>Will she be working?</b>	<b>She will not (won't) be working</b>
<b>It will be working</b>	<b>Will it be working?</b>	<b>It will not (won't) be working</b>
<b>We will be working</b>	<b>Will we be working?</b>	<b>We will not (won't) be working</b>
<b>You will be working</b>	<b>Will you be working?</b>	<b>You will not (won't) be working</b>
<b>They will be working</b>	<b>Will they be working?</b>	<b>They will not (won't) be working</b>

The Future Continuous is used:

**1.** To denote an action in progress at a definite future moment. This future moment can be clear from the situation or it can be indicated by the adverbial phrases of definite time such as *at this time tomorrow/next week/next month, at 9 o'clock on Monday*, etc.:

*She will be sleeping at 7 a.m. tomorrow.*

*Jack will be flying to London at this time on Saturday.*

**2.** To express an action which the speaker expects to take place in the future in the natural course of events, or which will definitely happen in the future as the result of a routine or arrangement:

*I feel I'll be asking you the same question tomorrow.*

*I'll be seeing Tom tomorrow. (because we work together.)*

**Note 1:** There is some difference between the Future Indefinite and the Future Continuous:

<i>Will you be coming to the meeting tonight?</i>	(casual question about future event)
<i>Will you come to the meeting tonight?</i>	(request)
<i>I'll be coming to visit you tomorrow so I can bring the magazines then.</i>	(future activity in normal course of events)
<i>I'll come and visit you tomorrow.</i>	(intention, promise)

**Note 2:** Both the Present Continuous and the Future Continuous are used to denote an action which is already planned or decided in advance:

*I am travelling by train. I have already bought the ticket.*

*I will be travelling by train.*

However, when a more distant or uncertain future is involved, the Future Continuous is preferable:

*He says he will be returning from abroad some time in the future.*

*He says he is returning from abroad next month.*

**3.** To express polite enquiry about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us or because we want to offer to do something for them:

*Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?*

**Note:** Depending on the situation different future tenses can be used. Compare:

<b>Future Continuous</b>	<i>Will you be staying in this evening?</i>	(just asking politely about plans)
<b>to be going to do</b>	<i>Are you going to stay in this evening?</i>	(perhaps pressing for a decision)
<b>Future Indefinite</b>	<i>Will you stay in this evening?</i>	(request or order)

4. To express simultaneous actions in the future, with the Future Continuous in the main clause and the Present Continuous in the subordinate clauses of time:

*I'll be looking after the children while you are making dinner.*

*While Mary is doing the shopping, Peter will be washing the car.*

The Future Continuous is used with the following time indicators:

*at this time tomorrow/next week/next month, at 7 o'clock on Monday, soon, the day after tomorrow, etc.*

### The Future Perfect

The Future Perfect is formed by means of the Future Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to have** and Participle II of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>will have</b> worked	<b>Will I have</b> worked?	I <b>will not (won't) have</b> worked
He <b>will have</b> worked	<b>Will he have</b> worked?	He <b>won't have</b> worked
She <b>will have</b> worked	<b>Will she have</b> worked?	She <b>won't have</b> worked
It <b>will have</b> worked	<b>Will it have</b> worked?	It <b>won't have</b> worked
We <b>will have</b> worked	<b>Will we have</b> worked?	We <b>won't have</b> worked
You <b>will have</b> worked	<b>Will you have</b> worked?	You <b>won't have</b> worked
They <b>will have</b> worked	<b>Will they have</b> worked?	They <b>won't have</b> worked

The Future Perfect is used:

1. To denote an action which will be completed before a particular moment in the future:

*I'll have gone to bed by the time you return home.*

*Sally won't have finished the translation until 7 o'clock.*

The Future Perfect is used with the following time indicators:

*by the time, by then, by that time, by, before, until/till* (in negative sentences), etc.

### The Future Perfect Continuous

The Future Perfect Continuous is formed by means of the Future Perfect of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will I have been</b> working?	I <b>won't have been</b> working
He <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will he have been</b> working?	He <b>won't have been</b> working
She <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will she have been</b> working?	She <b>won't have been</b> working
It <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will it have been</b> working?	It <b>won't have been</b> working
We <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will we have been</b> working?	We <b>won't have been</b> working
You <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will you have been</b> working?	You <b>won't have been</b> working
They <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will they have been</b> working?	They <b>won't have been</b> working

The Future Perfect Continuous is used:

1. To denote an action which will begin before a definite moment in the future, will continue up to that moment and will be going on at that moment:

*On Saturday, we will have been dating for a year.*

*By the end of the year, I will have been working for this company for 20 years.*

The Future Perfect Continuous is used with the following time indicators:

*by the time/then/that time/Monday ... for, etc.*

### The Future Perfect Continuous vs The Future Perfect

<i>The Future Perfect Continuous</i> is used:	<i>The Future Perfect</i> is used:
1. To emphasize the continuity or duration of a situation or activity by a particular moment in the future:	1. To emphasize the completion of a situation or action by a particular moment in the future:
<i>We will have been writing the report for 5 hours by the evening.</i>	<i>We will have written the report by the evening.</i>
2. To say <b>how long</b> (for an activity that will be still happening):	2. To say <b>how much, how many</b> or <b>how many times</b> (for completed actions):
<i>Tom will have been repairing his car for 3 days by tomorrow. .</i>	<i>Tim will have repaired three cars by tomorrow.</i>
3. With dynamic verbs:	3. With stative verbs:
<i>Next month I will have been teaching Jason for 2 years.</i>	<i>Next month I will have known Jason for 2 years.</i>

### Different Ways of Expressing the Future

We can use different ways to express the future in English. The choice depends on the situation. Here are the main forms and their uses:

1. To express future actions which are fixed personal arrangements made in advance: <i>I'm not working tomorrow.</i> <i>What are you doing this evening?</i>	<b>Present Continuous</b>
--	---------------------------

<p>2. To express a future action according to timetable, programme (for public transport, theatre, etc.):  <i>My train <b>leaves</b> at 11.30 on Tuesday.</i>  <i>The football championship <b>begins</b> on Monday.</i></p>	<b>Present Simple</b>
<p>3. To express plans and intentions to do something in future:  <i>I'm <b>going to phone</b> him tomorrow.</i>  <i>He <b>is going to join</b> a gym next week.</i></p>	<b>to be going to do</b>
<p>4. To make on-the-spot decisions and also to offer, to refuse, to agree, to promise, to threat and to ask to do something:  <i>I'll <b>go</b> and <b>shut</b> the door.</i>  <i>We'll <b>help</b> you with your housework.</i></p>	<b>Future Simple</b>
<p>5. To make predictions based on what we see or we know, especially when there is evidence:  <i>Look at the dark clouds! It's <b>going to rain</b>.</i>  <i>That building <b>is going to collapse</b> soon.</i></p>	<b>to be going to do</b>
<p>6. To make predictions based on what we believe or think, often with <i>I believe, expect, hope, think</i>, etc:  <i>I hope it <b>won't rain</b> tomorrow.</i>  <i>I'm sure she <b>will pass</b> the exam easily.</i></p>	<b>Future Simple</b>
<p>7. To express that something is going to happen very soon:  <i>The train <b>is about to leave</b> – let's hurry.</i>  <i>I <b>am about to fall</b> asleep. Don't bother me!</i></p>	<b>to be about to do</b>
<p>8. To express official arrangements and orders, especially when announced:  <i>The President <b>is to visit</b> Brussels next week.</i>  <i>You <b>are to be</b> here by nine o'clock.</i></p>	<b>to be to do</b>
<p>9. To show that something is going to happen immediately:  <i>She <b>is on the point of leaving</b>.</i>  <i>I <b>am on the point of explaining</b>.</i></p>	<b>to be on the point of doing</b>
<p>10. To express actions in progress at a stated future time:  <i>I <b>will be watching</b> this series tomorrow at 5p.m.</i>  <i>He <b>will be sunbathing</b> in Hawaii this time next week.</i></p>	<b>Future Continuous</b>
<p>11. To express actions which are the result of a routine (instead of Present Continuous):  <i>I <b>will be seeing</b> John tomorrow. (=We work in the same office so we'll definitely meet)</i></p>	<b>Future Continuous</b>



<p><b>12.</b> To ask politely about people’s arrangements to see if they can do something for us or because we want to offer to do something for them:  <i>Will you <b>be going</b> to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?</i></p>	<b>Future Continuous</b>
<p><b>13.</b> To express actions which will be finished before a stated future time:  <i>She <b>will have come back</b> <u>by</u> the end of July.  She <b>won’t have finished</b> <u>until</u> 8 o’clock.  (<i>till/until</i> – in negative sentences)</i></p>	<b>Future Perfect</b>
<p><b>14.</b> To express duration of an action up to a certain time in the future:  <i><u>By</u> the end of this year she <b>will have been working</b> here <u>for</u> two years.  They <b>will have been dating</b> <u>for</u> three months <u>by</u> tomorrow.</i></p>	<b>Future Perfect Continuous</b>

### Future in the Past

Future in the Past is used to denote actions which were future from the point of view of the past:

*I was sure they would help me.*

*He knew she would have finished work by 7 p.m.*

	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
<b>Future Indefinite in the Past</b>	I would work	Would I work?	I would (wouldn’t) work
<b>Future Continuous in the Past</b>	I would be working	Would I be working	I would (wouldn’t) be working
<b>Future Perfect in the Past</b>	I would have worked	Would I have worked	I would (wouldn’t) have worked
<b>Future Perfect Continuous in the Past</b>	I would have been working	Would I have been working	I would (wouldn’t) have been working

### The Passive Voice

The Passive Voice is formed by means of the auxiliary verb *to be* in the required form and Participle II (Past Participle) of the notional verb.

	Active	Passive
<i>Present Indefinite</i>	He repairs his car.	His car <b>is</b> repaired.
<i>Past Indefinite</i>	He repaired his car.	His car <b>was</b> repaired.
<i>Future Indefinite</i>	He <b>will</b> repair his car.	His car <b>will be</b> repaired.
<i>Modal + Infinitive</i>	He <b>can</b> repair his car.	His <b>can be</b> repaired.
	He <b>must</b> repair his car.	His <b>must be</b> repaired.
	He <b>should</b> repair his car.	His <b>should be</b> repaired.
	He <b>has to</b> repair his car.	His car <b>has to be</b> repaired.

In the interrogative form the first auxiliary or a modal verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the first auxiliary or a modal verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
His car <b>is</b> washed.	<b>Is</b> his car washed?	His car <b>is not</b> washed.
His car <b>was</b> washed.	<b>Was</b> his car washed?	His car <b>was not</b> washed.
His car <b>will be</b> washed.	<b>Will</b> his car <b>be</b> washed?	His car <b>will not be</b> washed.
His car <b>can be</b> washed.	<b>Can</b> his car <b>be</b> washed?	His <b>cannot be</b> washed.
His car <b>must be</b> washed.	<b>Must</b> his car <b>be</b> washed?	His <b>must not be</b> washed.
His car <b>should be</b> washed.	<b>Should</b> his car <b>be</b> washed?	His <b>should not be</b> washed.

The Passive Voice is used:

1. When the person who carries out the action is unknown, unimportant or obvious from the context:

*My car was stolen last week. (We do not know who stole the car.)*

*Coffee beans are grown in Brazil. (It's not important who grows the coffee.)*

*My car will be serviced tomorrow. (It's obvious that a mechanic will service it.)*

2. When the action itself is more important than the person who carries it out, as in news headlines, newspaper articles, formal notices, instructions, advertisements, processes, etc.:

*The new hospital will be opened by the Queen on May 15<sup>th</sup>. (formal notice)*

*Then, the milk is taken to a factory where it is pasteurized. (process)*

3. When we refer to an unpleasant event and we do not want to say who or what it is to blame:

*A lot of mistakes were made. (instead of 'You made a lot of mistakes.')*

4. When we want to emphasize the agent:

*The English lesson was taken by the German teacher yesterday.*

Changing from the Active Voice into the Passive Voice:

- ❖ The object of the active sentence becomes the subject in the passive sentence. The active verb changes into a passive form and the subject of the active verb becomes the agent which either introduced with "by" or is omitted:

	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Object</i>	<i>Agent</i>
<i>Active</i>	<i>Kate</i>	<i>wrote</i>	<i>the story.</i>	
<i>Passive</i>	<i>The story</i>	<i>was written</i>		<i>by Kate.</i>

- ❖ The active verb remains in **the same tense** but changes into a passive form.
- ❖ We use **by + agent** to say who or what carries the action. We use **with + instrument / material/ ingredient** to say what the agent used.  
*The pancakes were made by Claire.*  
*They were made with eggs, flour, milk.*
- ❖ In passive questions with **who, whom, which** we do not omit “**by**”:  
*Who offered her the job? → Who was she offered the job by?*
- ❖ Only transitive verbs (those that take a direct object) can be changed into the passive:  
*Active: Bill lives in a flat.* – (no passive, *live* is an intransitive verb)
- ❖ The agent (the subject of the active sentence) can be omitted when the subject is *they, he, someone, somebody, people, one, etc.*:
- ❖ With the verbs which can take two objects, such as **bring, tell, send, show, teach, promise, buy, sell, read, offer, give, lend** etc, we can form two different passive sentences.  
*The conductor gave me the ticket.* (active)  
*I was given the ticket by the conductor.* (passive, more usual)  
*The ticket was given to me by the conductor.* (passive, less usual)
- ❖ If in an active sentence a preposition follows a verb, then in the passive it is placed immediately after the verb:  
*She looks after her son well.* → *Her son is looked after well.*  
*They listened to that song last month.* → *That song was listened to last month.*

### The Infinitive and The -ing Form

The <b>to-infinitive</b> is used:	The <b>-ing form</b> is used:
<b>1.</b> to express purpose: <i>She went out <b>to buy</b> some milk.</i>	<b>1.</b> as a noun: <i><b>Eating</b> vegetables is good for health.</i>
<b>2.</b> after certain verbs ( <i>advise, agree, appear, decide, expect, hope, offer, promise, offer, refuse, etc.</i> ): <i>He promised <b>to be</b> back at 10 o'clock.</i>	<b>2.</b> after certain verbs ( <i>admit (to), avoid, consider, continue, delay, deny, enjoy, escape, excuse, fancy, finish, forgive, imagine, involve, keep (= continue), look forward to, mention, miss, object to, postpone, practise, prevent, report, resist, risk,</i>
<b>3.</b> after certain adjectives ( <i>angry, happy, glad, etc.</i> ): <i>She was glad <b>to see</b> him.</i>	

<p>4. with <i>so + adjective + as</i>:  <i>Would you be so kind as to help me move the sofa?</i></p>	<p><i>save, stand, suggest, understand, etc.):</i>  <i>He doesn't mind staying home.</i></p>
<p>5. in the expressions <i>to tell you the truth, to begin with, to be honest</i>, etc.:  <i>To be honest, I don't like him.</i></p>	<p>3. after <i>adore, love, like, dislike, hate, enjoy, mind, prefer</i> (to express general preference):  <i>He likes cooking. (in general).</i>  <b>BUT</b> <i>I like to cook meat and fish. (specific preference)</i></p>
<p>6. after question words (<i>where, what, who, how, which</i>, but not after 'why'):  <i>Has she told you where to meet them?</i>  <b>BUT</b> <i>I don't know why he left so early.</i></p> <p>7. after <i>be + the first, second, next, last, best</i>, etc.:  <i>He was the last to come to work.</i></p>	<p>4. after certain expressions (<i>I'm busy, it's no use, it's no good, it's (not) worth, what's the use of, can't help, there's no point in, can't stand, be/get used to, be/get accustomed to, have difficulty in</i>, etc.):  <i>It's no use complaining.</i></p>
<p>8. after <i>would like, would love, would prefer</i> (to express specific preference):  <i>I would love to go for a walk.</i></p>	<p>5. after 'go' for physical activities:  <i>They go skiing every winter.</i></p>
<p>9. after nouns:  <i>It's a pleasure to work with you.</i></p>	<p>6. after <i>spend/waste time</i>:  <i>He wasted his time playing cards.</i></p>
<p>10. after <i>too/enough</i> constructions:  <i>He's too short to reach the top shelf.</i>  <i>He isn't tall enough to reach the shelf.</i></p>	<p>7. after prepositions:  <i>He left without saying goodbye.</i></p>
<p>11. with <i>it + be + adjective + of + smb.</i>  <i>It was nice of him to remember my birthday.</i></p> <p>12. with 'only' to express unsatisfactory result:  <i>He called me only to say that he would be late.</i></p>	<p>8. after <i>see, hear, listen, watch</i> to express an incomplete action, an action in progress or a long action:  <i>I saw Kate painting the kitchen. = (I saw part of the action in progress.)</i>  <b>BUT</b> after <i>see, hear, listen, watch + infinitive without to</i> to express a complete action:  <i>I watched Kate paint the kitchen. = (I saw the whole action from beginning to end.)</i></p>

The <b>infinitive without to</b> is used:
<b>1.</b> after modal verbs ( <i>must, can, will, must, might, should, shall</i> , etc.): <i>You must be back at 12 o'clock.</i>
<b>2.</b> after <i>had better, would rather</i> : <i>I'd rather go to the theatre.</i>
<b>3.</b> after <i>make, let + object</i> : <i>I made him apologise.</i> <b>BUT</b> in the passive form <i>be made, be allowed + to-infinitive</i> : <i>He was made to apologise.</i>
<b>Note 1.</b> The verb <i>help</i> is followed by a to-infinitive or an infinitive without to: <i>She helped me (to) wash the dishes.</i>
<b>Note 2.</b> If two infinitives are joined by ' <i>and</i> ', the ' <i>to</i> ' of the second infinitive can be omitted: <i>I want to eat something and have a rest.</i>

### Prepositions in Place and Movement Phrases

The following are the main prepositions, which are used in place phrases:

<b>At</b>	❖ to show a point in space where something is happening:	<i>There was a huge queue at the bus stop.</i> <i>Turn right at the next corner.</i>
	❖ with verbs that show place: <i>be, wait, sit, stay, live</i> , etc.:	<i>He waited at the door for five minutes.</i> <i>We were at the theatre yesterday.</i>
	❖ before the names of group activities:	<i>at a party, at a lecture, at a meeting, at the match, at a concert, at the wedding, at the funeral</i>
	❖ with a large place when it is thought of as a point, a stage on a journey or a meeting place:	<i>The plane stops for an hour at Frankfurt.</i>
	❖ with a possessive to mean "at somebody's house or shop":	<i>I'm at my friends'.</i> <i>She stayed at the hairdresser's till 5.</i>
	❖ before the name of a city to refer to that city's university:	<i>He's a student at Oxford.</i>
	❖ with <i>arrive</i> to talk about places or events:	<i>When did she arrive at the party?</i> <i>They arrived at the airport early.</i>
	❖ to talk about addresses:	<i>We live at number 7 Hill Street.</i> <i>Are you still at the same address?</i>
	❖ <u>useful phrases</u> :	<i>at the bottom of the pile, at the top of the hill, at the crossroads, at home, at work, at school, at a hotel, at university, at the table, at sea (=on a voyage)</i>

<b>In</b>	❖ for position inside large areas (when something is surrounded on all sides):	<i>She grew up <b>in</b> Paris. I last saw her <b>in</b> the car park. He is <b>in</b> his room now.</i>
	❖ to show that something is taking place inside rather than outside:	<i>Come <b>in</b> the office.</i>
	❖ with <b>arrive</b> to talk about large cities and countries:	<i>We arrived <b>in</b> Kyiv on Monday. He arrived <b>in</b> Ukraine yesterday.</i>
	❖ with verbs which do not involve movement: <b>be, wait, sit, stay, live</b> , etc.:	<i>I live <b>in</b> the old town. Wait for me <b>in</b> the pub.</i>
	❖ to give the name of the street:	<i>She lives <b>in</b> Park Street.</i>
	❖ to show the position of things which form part of the line:	<i>There's a misprint <b>in</b> line 6. I don't see him <b>in</b> the queue.</i>
	❖ to talk about private cars, taxis:	<i>John arrived <b>in</b> a taxi. Mary went <b>in</b> her car.</i>
	❖ <b><u>useful phrases:</u></b>	<i><b>in</b> the country, <b>in</b> the world, <b>in</b> hospital, <b>in</b> prison, <b>in</b> a hotel, <b>in</b> the middle of the road, <b>in</b> the center of town, <b>in</b> the north / south, <b>in</b> the open air, <b>in</b> the street, <b>in</b> the mountains, <b>in</b> the sky, <b>in</b> the rain, <b>in</b> a picture, <b>in</b> a tent, <b>in</b> bed</i>

<b>On</b>	❖ for position on a surface:	<i>Our hotel is <b>on</b> a small island.</i>
	❖ for position by a river, lake or sea:	<i>The city is <b>on</b> the (river) Danube. He owns a villa <b>on</b> the coast.</i>
	❖ for position on a line:	<i>My house is <b>on</b> the way from Kyiv to Chernihiv.</i>
	❖ to talk about travel using buses, planes, trains, motorcycles, horses:	<i>He's arriving <b>on</b> the 3.15 train. There's no room <b>on</b> the bus.</i>
	❖ <b><u>useful phrases:</u></b>	<i><b>on</b> the left / right, <b>on</b> the left-hand / right-hand side, <b>on</b> a map, <b>on</b> a menu, <b>on</b> a list, <b>on</b> a farm, <b>on</b> the way, <b>on</b> a trip, <b>on</b> a tour, <b>on</b> board, <b>on</b> a cruise, <b>on</b> an excursion, <b>on</b> Earth, <b>on</b> the outskirts, <b>on</b> the pavement, <b>on</b> page three, <b>on</b> (at) the corner of the street.</i>



**Note:** Compare the sentences:

*We were **at** sea for 20 days.* (on a voyage)

*We love swimming **in** the sea.* (in the water)

*I was **at** Sue's (house) last night.* (position at a point)

*It was cold **in** Sue's house last night.* (inside the house)

*I was sitting **in** the back when we crashed.* (inside the car)

*Let's sit **at** the back.* (in the cinema)

*I wrote my address **on** the back of the photo.* (on the surface)

<b>To</b>	❖ with verbs of movement including <b>go, come, travel, return, fly, send, get, walk</b> , etc. to show the direction:	<i>When are you going back <b>to</b> Italy? Welcome <b>to</b> Kyiv! I don't want to return <b>to</b> my city. He drove <b>to</b> the airport in two hours.</i>
	❖ with nouns that suggest movement including <b>journey, trip, stroll, visit, way</b> , etc.:	<i>Did you enjoy your visit <b>to</b> the zoo? My trip <b>to</b> Glasgow was very tiring.</i>
	❖ with <b>been</b> when it means "visited":	<i>I've been <b>to</b> Italy several times.</i>
	<b>But</b> when <b>been</b> means "stayed or lived", it is used with <b>in</b> :	<i>I've been <b>in</b> France for five days now.</i>

**Note:** Preposition **to** is not used before home:

*I'm tired. Let's go home.*

*He met us on his way home.*

<b>Into</b>	❖ with verbs to mean "to move from outside to inside":	<i>Let's drop <b>into</b> the shop. He got <b>into</b> the car and drove away.</i>
<b>Out of</b>	❖ the opposite of the preposition <b>into</b> :	<i>I ran <b>out of</b> the shop. He got <b>out of</b> the car and came to me.</i>
<b>Towards</b>	❖ means "moving or pointing in a particular direction":	<i>She was coming <b>towards</b> me. Pat moved <b>towards</b> the door.</i>
<b>Across / Over</b>	❖ to talk about the position on the other side of sth., or getting to the other side of sth:	<i>The truck came <b>across/over</b> the bridge. Sam lives in the house <b>across/over</b> the road from ours.</i>
<b>Across</b>	❖ to talk about sth. that is thought of as a surface or an area:	<i>He saw me <b>across</b> the hall. They travelled <b>across</b> Australia.</i>

<b>Over</b>	❖ to talk about reaching the other side of sth. that is high, or higher than it is wide:	<i>He hurt his leg as he jumped <b>over</b> the wall.</i>
<b>Along</b>	❖ to talk about following a line of some kind ( <i>a path, a road, a river, a beach, a canal, etc.</i> ):	<i>They walked <b>along</b> the path and came to a small bridge. We were running <b>along</b> the road very fast.</i>
<b>Through</b>	❖ to talk about movement in a three dimensional space, with things all around:  <b>But:</b>	<i>He pushed his way <b>through</b> the crowd of people. I walked <b>through</b> the forest to the station. (from one side to the other) I like walking <b>in</b> the forest. (inside)</i>

## Appendix: Irregular Verbs

### Неправильні Дієслова

	<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Past Simple</b>	<b>Past Participle</b>	<b>Translation</b>
1.	<b>abide</b> /ə'baɪd/	<b>abode</b> /ə'bəʊd/ <b>abided</b> /ə'baɪdɪd/	<b>abode</b> /ə'bəʊd/ <b>abided</b> /ə'baɪdɪd/	дотримуватись, терпіти, зносити
2.	<b>arise</b> /ə'raɪz/	<b>arose</b> /ə'rəʊz/	<b>arisen</b> /ə'rɪzn/	виникати, з'являтися
3	<b>awake</b> /ə'weɪk/	<b>awoke</b> /ə'wəʊk/ <b>awakened</b> /ə'weɪknd/	<b>awaked</b> /ə'weɪkt/ <b>awoken</b> /ə'wəʊkn/	прокидатися, будити, пробуджувати
4	<b>be</b> /bi:/	<b>was</b> /wɒz/ <b>were</b> /wɜ:/	<b>been</b> /bi:n/	бути
5	<b>bear</b> /beə/	<b>bore</b> /bɔ:/	<b>borne</b> /bɔ:n/ <b>born</b> /bɔ:n/	носити, переносити народжувати
6	<b>beat</b> /bi:t/	<b>beat</b> /bi:t/	<b>beaten</b> /bi:tn/	бити
7	<b>become</b> /bɪ'kʌm/	<b>became</b> /bɪ'keɪm/	<b>become</b> /bɪ'kʌm/	ставати, годитися, личити
8	<b>befall</b> /bɪ'fɔ:l/	<b>befell</b> /bɪ'fel/	<b>befallen</b> /bɪ'fɔ:ln/	траплятися
9	<b>begin</b> /bɪ'gɪn/	<b>began</b> /bɪ'gæn/	<b>begun</b> /bɪ'gʌn/	починати(ся)
10	<b>bend</b> /bend/	<b>bent</b> /bent/	<b>bent</b> /bent/ <b>bended</b> /'bendɪd/	згинати(ся), напружувати
11	<b>beseech</b> /bɪ'si:tʃ/	<b>besought</b> /bɪ'sɔ:t/	<b>besought</b> /bɪ'sɔ:t/	благати, просити
12	<b>bet</b> /bet/	<b>bet</b> /bet/	<b>bet</b> /bet/	битися об заклад
13	<b>bid</b> /bɪd/	<b>bade</b> /beɪd/ <b>bid</b> /bɪd/	<b>bid</b> /bɪd/ <b>bidden</b> /bɪdn/	загнуздувати, стримувати
14	<b>bind</b> /baɪnd/	<b>bound</b> /baʊnd/	<b>bound</b> /baʊnd/	зв'язувати
15	<b>bite</b> /baɪt/	<b>bit</b> /bɪt/	<b>bitten</b> /bɪtn/	кусати
16	<b>bleed</b> /bli:d/	<b>bled</b> /bled/	<b>bled</b> /bled/	кровоточити, стікати кров'ю
17	<b>bless</b> /bles/	<b>blessed</b> /blest/ <b>blest</b> /blest/	<b>blessed</b> /blest/ <b>blest</b> /blest/	благословляти
18	<b>blow</b> /bləʊ/	<b>blew</b> /blu:/	<b>blown</b> /bləʊn/	дути
19	<b>break</b> /breɪk/	<b>broke</b> /brəʊk/	<b>broken</b> /brəʊkn/	ламати(ся)
20	<b>breed</b> /bri:d/	<b>bred</b> /bred/	<b>bred</b> /bred/	виховувати, вирощувати
21	<b>bring</b> /brɪŋ/	<b>brought</b> /brɔ:t/	<b>brought</b> /brɔ:t/	приносити
22	<b>build</b> /bɪld/	<b>built</b> /bɪlt/	<b>built</b> /bɪlt/	будувати
23	<b>burn</b> /bɜ:n/	<b>burnt</b> /bɜ:nt/ <b>burned</b> /bɜ:nd/	<b>burnt</b> /bɜ:nt/ <b>burned</b> /bɜ:nd/	палити, горіти

24	<b>burst</b> /bɜ:st/	<b>burst</b> /bɜ:st/	<b>burst</b> /bɜ:st/	лопатися, розриватися
25	<b>bust</b> /bʌst/	<b>bust</b> /bʌst/ <b>busted</b> /'bʌstɪd/	<b>bust</b> /bʌst/ <b>busted</b> /'bʌstɪd/	збанкрутувати, загуляти
26	<b>buy</b> /baɪ/	<b>bought</b> /bɔ:t/	<b>bought</b> /bɔ:t/	купувати
27	<b>cast</b> /kɑ:st/	<b>cast</b> /kɑ:st/	<b>cast</b> /kɑ:st/	кидати, метати
28	<b>catch</b> /kæʃ/	<b>caught</b> /kɔ:t/	<b>caught</b> /kɔ:t/	ловити, спіймати
29	<b>choose</b> /tʃu:z/	<b>chose</b> /tʃəʊz/	<b>chosen</b> /tʃəʊzn/	вибирати
30	<b>cleave</b> /kli:v/	<b>clove</b> /kləʊv/ <b>cleft</b> /kleft/	<b>cloven</b> /kləʊvn/ <b>cleft</b> /kleft/	розколювати, розсікати
31	<b>cling</b> /klɪŋ/	<b>clung</b> /klɪŋ/	<b>clung</b> /klɪŋ/	чіплятися, прилипати
32	<b>clothe</b> /kləʊð/	<b>clothed</b> /kləʊðd/	<b>clothed</b> /kləʊðd/	одягати
33	<b>come</b> /kʌm/	<b>came</b> /keɪm/	<b>come</b> /kʌm/	приходити
34	<b>cost</b> /kɒst/	<b>cost</b> /kɒst/	<b>cost</b> /kɒst/	коштувати
35	<b>creep</b> /kri:p/	<b>crept</b> /krept/	<b>crept</b> /krept/	повзати, стелитися
36	<b>crow</b> /krəʊ/	<b>crowed</b> /krəʊd/ <b>crew</b> /kru:/	<b>crowed</b> /krəʊd/	кричати кукуріку
37	<b>cut</b> /kʌt/	<b>cut</b> /kʌt/	<b>cut</b> /kʌt/	різати
38	<b>deal</b> /di:l/	<b>dealt</b> /delt/	<b>dealt</b> /delt/	мати справу з чимось
39	<b>dig</b> /dɪg/	<b>dug</b> /dʌg/	<b>dug</b> /dʌg/	копати
40	<b>dive</b> /daɪv/	<b>dived</b> /daɪvd/ <b>dove</b> /dəʊv/ (AmE)	<b>dived</b> /daɪvd/	пірнати
41	<b>do</b> /du:/	<b>did</b> /dɪd/	<b>done</b> /dʌn/	робити
42	<b>draw</b> /drɔ:/	<b>drew</b> /dru:/	<b>drawn</b> /drɔ:n /	малювати, креслити
43	<b>dream</b> /dri:m/	<b>dreamed</b> /dri:md/ <b>dreamt</b> /dremt/	<b>dreamed</b> /dri:md/ <b>dreamt</b> /dremt/	мріяти, бачити сон
44	<b>drink</b> /drɪŋk/	<b>drank</b> /dræŋk/	<b>drunk</b> /drʌŋk/	пити
45	<b>drive</b> /draɪv/	<b>drove</b> /drəʊv/	<b>driven</b> /drɪvn/	гнати, їхати
46	<b>dwell</b> /dwel/	<b>dwelt</b> /dwelt/ <b>dwelled</b> /dweld/	<b>dwelt</b> /dwelt/ <b>dwelled</b> /dweld/	мешкати, жити
47	<b>eat</b> /i:t/	<b>ate</b> /et/	<b>eaten</b> /i:tn/	їсти
48	<b>fall</b> /fɔ:l/	<b>fell</b> /fel/	<b>fallen</b> /fɔ:ln/	падати
49	<b>feed</b> /fi:d/	<b>fed</b> /fed/	<b>fed</b> /fed/	годувати
50	<b>feel</b> /fi:l/	<b>felt</b> /felt/	<b>felt</b> /felt/	почувати, відчувати
51	<b>fight</b> /faɪt/	<b>fought</b> /fɔ:t/	<b>fought</b> /fɔ:t/	воювати, битися
52	<b>find</b> /faɪnd/	<b>found</b> /faʊnd/	<b>found</b> /faʊnd/	знаходити

53	<b>flee</b> /fli:/	<b>fled</b> /fled/	<b>fled</b> /fled/	тікати, уникати
54	<b>fling</b> /flɪŋ/	<b>flung</b> /flʌŋ/	<b>flung</b> /flʌŋ/	кидати(ся)
55	<b>fly</b> /flaɪ/	<b>flew</b> /flu:/	<b>flown</b> /fləʊn/	літати
56	<b>forbid</b> /fə'bɪd/	<b>forbade</b> /fə'beɪd/	<b>forbidden</b> /fə'bɪdn/	забороняти
57	<b>forget</b> /fə'get/	<b>forgot</b> /fə'gɒt/	<b>forgotten</b> /fə'gɒtn/	забувати
58	<b>forgive</b> /fə'gɪv/	<b>forgave</b> /fə'geɪv/	<b>forgiven</b> /fə'gɪvn/	прощати
59	<b>freeze</b> /fri:z/	<b>froze</b> /frəʊz/	<b>frozen</b> /frəʊzn/	морозити, замерзати
60	<b>get</b> /get/	<b>got</b> /gɒt/	<b>got</b> /gɒt/ <b>gotten</b> /gɒtn/ (AmE)	діставати, отримувати, одержувати
61	<b>gild</b> /gɪld/	<b>gilt</b> /gɪlt/ <b>gilded</b> /gɪldɪd/	<b>gilt</b> /gɪlt/ <b>gilded</b> /gɪldɪd/	золотити
62	<b>give</b> /gɪv/	<b>gave</b> /geɪv/	<b>given</b> /gɪvn/	давати
63	<b>go</b> /gəʊ/	<b>went</b> /went/	<b>gone</b> /gɒn/	йти, їхати
64	<b>grind</b> /graɪnd/	<b>ground</b> /graʊnd/	<b>ground</b> /graʊnd/	молоти, товкти
65	<b>grow</b> /grəʊ/	<b>grew</b> /gru:/	<b>grown</b> /grəʊn/	рости, вирощувати
66	<b>hang</b> /hæŋ/	<b>hung</b> /hʌŋ/ <b>hanged</b> /hæŋd/	<b>hung</b> /hʌŋ/ <b>hanged</b> /hæŋd/	висіти, страчувати
67	<b>have</b> /hæv/	<b>had</b> /hæd/	<b>had</b> /hæd/	мати
68	<b>hear</b> /hɪə/	<b>heard</b> /hɜ:d/	<b>heard</b> /hɜ:d/	чути
69	<b>heave</b> /hi:v/	<b>heaved</b> /hi:vd/ <b>hove</b> /həʊv/	<b>heaved</b> /hi:vd/ <b>hove</b> /həʊv/	підіймати, тягти, зітхати
70	<b>hew</b> /hju:/	<b>hewed</b> /hju:d/	<b>hewed</b> /hju:d/ <b>hewn</b> /hju:n/	рубати, тесати
71	<b>hide</b> /haɪd/	<b>hid</b> /hɪd/	<b>hidden</b> /hɪdn/	ховати(ся)
72	<b>hit</b> /hɪt/	<b>hit</b> /hɪt/	<b>hit</b> /hɪt/	ударяти, забитися
73	<b>hold</b> /həʊld/	<b>held</b> /held/	<b>held</b> /held/	тримати, держати
74	<b>hurt</b> /hɜ:t/	<b>hurt</b> /hɜ:t/	<b>hurt</b> /hɜ:t/	здавати болю, боліти
75	<b>keep</b> /ki:p/	<b>kept</b> /kept/	<b>kept</b> /kept/	тримати, зберігати
76	<b>kneel</b> /ni:l/	<b>knelt</b> /nelt/ <b>kneeled</b> /ni:ld/ (AmE)	<b>knelt</b> /nelt/ <b>kneeled</b> /ni:ld/ (AmE)	стояти навколiшки
77	<b>knit</b> /nɪt/	<b>knit</b> /nɪt/ <b>knitted</b> /'nɪtɪd/	<b>knit</b> /nɪt/ <b>knitted</b> /'nɪtɪd/	в'язати
78	<b>know</b> /nəʊ/	<b>knew</b> /nju:/	<b>known</b> /nəʊn/	знати

79	<b>lay</b> /lei/	<b>laid</b> /leid/	<b>laid</b> /leid/	класти, накривати
80	<b>lead</b> /li:d/	<b>led</b> /led/	<b>led</b> /led/	вести, керувати
81	<b>lean</b> /li:n/	<b>leant</b> /lent/ <b>leaned</b> /li:nd/	<b>leant</b> /lent/ <b>leaned</b> /li:nd/	нахиляти(ся), прихилятися
82	<b>leap</b> /li:p/	<b>leapt</b> /lept/ <b>leaped</b> /li:pt/	<b>leapt</b> /lept/ <b>leaped</b> /li:pt/	стрибати, скакати
83	<b>learn</b> /lɜ:n/	<b>learnt</b> /lɜ:nt/ <b>learned</b> /lɜ:nd/	<b>learnt</b> /lɜ:nt/ <b>learned</b> /lɜ:nd/	вчити
84	<b>leave</b> /li:v/	<b>left</b> /left/	<b>left</b> /left/	покидати, від'їжджати
85	<b>lend</b> /lend/	<b>lent</b> /lent/	<b>lent</b> /lent/	позичати
86	<b>let</b> /let/	<b>let</b> /let/	<b>let</b> /let/	дозволяти, пускати
87	<b>lie</b> /lai/	<b>lay</b> /lei/	<b>lain</b> /leɪn/	лежати
88	<b>light</b> /laɪt/	<b>lit</b> /lɪt/ <b>lighted</b> /'laɪtɪd/	<b>lit</b> /lɪt/ <b>lighted</b> /'laɪtɪd/	освітлювати
89	<b>lose</b> /lu:z/	<b>lost</b> /lɒst/	<b>lost</b> /lɒst/	губити, втрачати
90	<b>make</b> /meɪk/	<b>made</b> /meɪd/	<b>made</b> /meɪd/	робити
91	<b>mean</b> /mi:n/	<b>meant</b> /ment/	<b>meant</b> /ment/	означати, мати значення
92	<b>meet</b> /mi:t/	<b>met</b> /met/	<b>met</b> /met/	зустрічати
93	<b>mishear</b> /mɪs' hɪə/	<b>misheard</b> /mɪs'hɜ:d/	<b>misheard</b> /mɪs'hɜ:d/	недочути
94	<b>mislead</b> /mɪs'li:d/	<b>misled</b> /mɪs'led/	<b>misled</b> /mɪs'led/	вводити в оману
95	<b>mistake</b> /mɪ'steɪk/	<b>mistook</b> /mɪ'stʊk/	<b>mistaken</b> /mɪ'steɪkən/	помилятися
96	<b>mow</b> /məʊ/	<b>mowed</b> /məʊd/	<b>mown</b> /məʊn/ <b>mowed</b> /məʊd/	косити
97	<b>pay</b> /peɪ/	<b>paid</b> /peɪd/	<b>paid</b> /peɪd/	платити
98	<b>pen</b> /pen/	<b>pent</b> /pent/ <b>penned</b> /pend/	<b>pent</b> /pent/ <b>penned</b> /pend/	творити, писати
99	<b>plead</b> /pli:d/	<b>pleaded</b> /'pli:di:d/ <b>pled</b> /pled/ (AmE)	<b>pleaded</b> /'pli:di:d/ <b>pled</b> /pled/ (AmE)	просити, благати
100	<b>prove</b> /pru:v/	<b>proved</b> /pru:vd/	<b>proved</b> /pru:vd/ <b>proven</b> /'pru:vn/	доводити, засвідчувати
101	<b>put</b> /put/	<b>put</b> /put/	<b>put</b> /put/	покласти, ставити
102	<b>quit</b> /kwɪt/	<b>quit</b> /kwɪt/	<b>quit</b> /kwɪt/	кидати (роботу)
103	<b>read</b> /ri:d/	<b>read</b> /red/	<b>read</b> /red/	читати
104	<b>rend</b> /rend/	<b>rent</b> /rent/	<b>rent</b> /rent/	рвати, шматувати



105	<b>rid</b> /rɪd/	<b>rid</b> /rɪd/ <b>rid</b> /rɪd/	<b>rid</b> /rɪd/ <b>rid</b> /rɪd/	звільняти, позбавляти чогось
106	<b>ride</b> /raɪd/	<b>rode</b> /rəʊd/	<b>ridden</b> /rɪdn/	їхати верхи
107	<b>ring</b> /rɪŋ/	<b>rang</b> /ræŋ/	<b>rung</b> /rʌŋ/	дзвонити
108	<b>rise</b> /raɪz/	<b>rose</b> /rəʊz/	<b>risen</b> /rɪzn/	вставати, піднімати
109	<b>run</b> /rʌn/	<b>ran</b> /ræn/	<b>run</b> /rʌn/	бігти
110	<b>saw</b> /sɔ:/	<b>sawed</b> /sɔ:d/	<b>sawn</b> /sɔ:n/ <b>sawed</b> /sɔ:d/	пиляти, розпилювати
111	<b>say</b> /seɪ/	<b>said</b> /sed/	<b>said</b> /sed/	говорити, казати
112	<b>see</b> /si:/	<b>saw</b> /sɔ:/	<b>seen</b> /si:n/	бачити
113	<b>seek</b> /si:k/	<b>sought</b> /sɔ:t/	<b>sought</b> /sɔ:t/	шукати
114	<b>sell</b> /sel/	<b>sold</b> /səʊld/	<b>sold</b> /səʊld/	продавати
115	<b>send</b> /send/	<b>sent</b> /sent/	<b>sent</b> /sent/	надсилати
116	<b>set</b> /set/	<b>set</b> /set/	<b>set</b> /set/	ставити, поміщати
117	<b>sew</b> /səʊ/	<b>sewed</b> /səʊd/	<b>sewed</b> /səʊd/ <b>sewn</b> /səʊn/	шити
118	<b>shake</b> /ʃeɪk/	<b>shook</b> /ʃʊk/	<b>shaken</b> /ʃeɪkn/	трясти
119	<b>shave</b> /ʃeɪv/	<b>shaved</b> /ʃeɪvd/	<b>shaved</b> /ʃeɪvd/ <b>shaven</b> /ʃeɪvn/	голитися
120	<b>shear</b> /ʃɪə/	<b>sheared</b> /ʃɪəd/	<b>shorn</b> /ʃɔ:n/	стригти
121	<b>shed</b> /ʃed/	<b>shed</b> /ʃed/	<b>shed</b> /ʃed/	втрачати, лити (сльози)
122	<b>shine</b> /ʃaɪn/	<b>shone</b> /ʃəʊn/	<b>shone</b> /ʃəʊn/	світити(ся), сяяти
123	<b>shoe</b> /ʃu:/	<b>shod</b> /ʃɒd/	<b>shod</b> /ʃɒd/	взувати, підковувати
124	<b>shoot</b> /ʃu:t/	<b>shot</b> /ʃɒt/	<b>shot</b> /ʃɒt/	стріляти, проростати
125	<b>show</b> /ʃəʊ/	<b>showed</b> /ʃəʊd/	<b>shown</b> /ʃəʊn/	показувати
126	<b>shrink</b> /ʃrɪŋk/	<b>shrank</b> /ʃræŋk/	<b>shrunk</b> /ʃrʌŋk/	скорочуватись, давати усадку
127	<b>shut</b> /ʃʌt/	<b>shut</b> /ʃʌt/	<b>shut</b> /ʃʌt/	закривати(ся)
128	<b>sing</b> /sɪŋ/	<b>sang</b> /sæŋ/	<b>sung</b> /sʌŋ/	співати
129	<b>sink</b> /sɪŋk/	<b>sank</b> /sæŋk/	<b>sunk</b> /sʌŋk/	опускатися, тонути
130	<b>sit</b> /sɪt/	<b>sat</b> /sæt/	<b>sat</b> /sæt/	сидіти
131	<b>sleep</b> /sli:p/	<b>slept</b> /slept/	<b>slept</b> /slept/	спати
132	<b>slide</b> /slɑɪd/	<b>slid</b> /slɪd/	<b>slid</b> /slɪd/	ковзати
133	<b>smell</b> /smel/	<b>smelt</b> /smelt/	<b>smelt</b> /smelt/	пахнути, нюхати
134	<b>sow</b> /səʊ/	<b>sowed</b> /səʊd/	<b>sowed</b> /səʊd/ <b>sown</b> /səʊn/	сіяти
135	<b>speak</b> /spi:k/	<b>spoke</b> /spəʊk/	<b>spoken</b> /spəʊkn/	говорити

136	<b>speed</b> /spi:d/	<b>sped</b> /sped/	<b>sped</b> /sped/	прискорюватись, поспішати
137	<b>spell</b> /spel/	<b>spelt</b> /spelt/ <b>spelled</b> /speld/	<b>spelt</b> /spelt/ <b>spelled</b> /speld/	писати, вимовляти по літерах
138	<b>spend</b> /spend/	<b>spent</b> /spent/	<b>spent</b> /spent/	витрачати
139	<b>spill</b> /spil/	<b>spilt</b> /spilt/ <b>spilled</b> /spild/	<b>spilt</b> /spilt/ <b>spilled</b> /spild/	розливати
140	<b>spin</b> /spin/	<b>spun</b> /spʌn/ <b>span</b> /spæn/	<b>spun</b> /spʌn/	прясти, плести
141	<b>spit</b> /spit/	<b>spat</b> /spæt/	<b>spat</b> /spæt/	плювати(ся)
142	<b>split</b> /split/	<b>split</b> /split/	<b>split</b> /split/	розколювати(ся)
143	<b>spoil</b> /spɔil/	<b>spoilt</b> /spɔilt/ <b>spoiled</b> /spɔild/	<b>spoilt</b> /spɔilt/ <b>spoiled</b> /spɔild/	псувати
144	<b>spread</b> /spred/	<b>spread</b> /spred/	<b>spread</b> /spred/	розповсюджувати (ся)
145	<b>spring</b> /sprɪŋ/	<b>sprang</b> /spræŋ/	<b>sprung</b> /sprʌŋ/	стрибати, з'являтися
146	<b>stand</b> /stænd/	<b>stood</b> /stud/	<b>stood</b> /stud/	стояти
147	<b>steal</b> /sti:l/	<b>stole</b> /stəʊl/	<b>stolen</b> /stəʊln/	красти
148	<b>stick</b> /stɪk/	<b>stuck</b> /stʌk/	<b>stuck</b> /stʌk/	встромляти, приклеювати
149	<b>sting</b> /strɪŋ/	<b>stung</b> /stʌŋ/	<b>stung</b> /stʌŋ/	жалити(ся)
150	<b>stink</b> /strɪŋk/	<b>stank</b> /stæŋk/ <b>stunk</b> /stʌŋk/	<b>stunk</b> /stʌŋk/	смердіти
151	<b>strew</b> /stru:/	<b>strewed</b> /stru:d/	<b>strewn</b> /stru:n/ <b>strewed</b> /stru:d/	розкидати, посипати
152	<b>stride</b> /straɪd/	<b>strode</b> /strəʊd/	<b>stridden</b> /strɪdn/	крокувати
153	<b>strike</b> /straɪk/	<b>struck</b> /strʌk/	<b>struck</b> /strʌk/	бити, вдаряти(ся)
154	<b>string</b> /strɪŋ/	<b>strung</b> /strʌŋ/	<b>strung</b> /strʌŋ/	зав'язувати, шнурувати
155	<b>strive</b> /straɪv/	<b>strove</b> /strəʊv/	<b>striven</b> /strɪvn/	старатися, намагатися
156	<b>sweep</b> /swi:p/	<b>swept</b> /swept/	<b>swept</b> /swept/	нестися, підмітати
157	<b>swell</b> /swel/	<b>swelled</b> /sweld/	<b>swollen</b> /swəʊln/	надувати(ся), розростатися
158	<b>swim</b> /swɪm/	<b>swam</b> /swæm/	<b>swum</b> /swʌm/	плавати
159	<b>swing</b> /swɪŋ/	<b>swung</b> /swʌŋ/	<b>swung</b> /swʌŋ/	коливати(ся)
160	<b>take</b> /teɪk/	<b>took</b> /tu:k/	<b>taken</b> /teɪkn/	брати
161	<b>teach</b> /ti:tʃ/	<b>taught</b> /tɔ:t/	<b>taught</b> /tɔ:t/	вчити, навчати
162	<b>tear</b> /tɪə/	<b>tore</b> /tɔ:/	<b>torn</b> /tɔ:n/	рвати

163	<b>tell</b> /tel/	<b>told</b> /təʊld/	<b>told</b> /təʊld/	розповідати, казати
164	<b>think</b> /θɪŋk/	<b>thought</b> /θɔ:t/	<b>thought</b> /θɔ:t/	думати
165	<b>throw</b> /θrəʊ/	<b>threw</b> /θru:/	<b>thrown</b> /θrəʊn/	кидати
166	<b>thrust</b> /θrʌst/	<b>thrust</b> /θrʌst/	<b>thrust</b> /θrʌst/	штовахати, тикати, колотити
167	<b>tread</b> /tred/	<b>trod</b> /trɒd/	<b>trodden</b> /trɒdn/	ступати, крокувати
168	<b>unbend</b> /ˈʌnˈbend/	<b>unbent</b> /ˈʌnˈbent/	<b>unbent</b> /ˈʌnˈbent/	розгинатися
169	<b>understand</b> /ˈʌndəˈstænd/	<b>understood</b> /ˈʌndəˈstʊd/	<b>understood</b> /ˈʌndəˈstʊd/	розуміти
170	<b>undertake</b> /ˈʌndəˈteɪk/	<b>undertook</b> /ˈʌndəˈtu:k/	<b>undertaken</b> /ˈʌndəˈteɪkn/	починати, братися за щось
171	<b>upset</b> /ʌpˈset/	<b>upset</b> /ʌpˈset/	<b>upset</b> /ʌpˈset/	перекидатися, засмучувати
172	<b>wake</b> /weɪk/	<b>woke</b> /wəʊk/ <b>waked</b> /weɪkt/	<b>woken</b> /wəʊkn/ <b>waked</b> /weɪkt/	прокидатися, будити
173	<b>wear</b> /weə/	<b>wore</b> /wɔ:/	<b>worn</b> /wɔ:n/	носити (одяг)
174	<b>weave</b> /wi:v/	<b>wove</b> /wəʊv/	<b>woven</b> /wəʊvn/	ткати, плести
175	<b>weep</b> /wi:p/	<b>wept</b> /wept/	<b>wept</b> /wept/	плакати
176	<b>wet</b> /wet/	<b>wet</b> /wet/ <b>wetted</b> /ˈwetɪd/	<b>wet</b> /wet/ <b>wetted</b> /ˈwetɪd/	змочувати, зволожувати
177	<b>win</b> /wɪn/	<b>won</b> /wɒn/	<b>won</b> /wɒn/	вигравати, перемагати
178	<b>wind</b> /waɪnd/	<b>wound</b> /waʊnd/	<b>wound</b> /waʊnd/	намотувати(ся), заводити
179	<b>withdraw</b> /wɪðˈdrɔ:/	<b>withdrew</b> /wɪðˈdru:/	<b>withdrawn</b> /wɪðˈdrɔ:n/	брати назад, відкликати
180	<b>wreak</b> /ri:k/	<b>wreaked</b> /ri:kt/ <b>wrought</b> /rɔ:t/	<b>wreaked</b> /ri:kt/ <b>wrought</b> /rɔ:t/	давати волю почуттям
181	<b>wring</b> /rɪŋ/	<b>wrung</b> /rʌŋ/	<b>wrung</b> /rʌŋ/	скручувати
182	<b>write</b> /raɪt/	<b>wrote</b> /rəʊt/	<b>written</b> /rɪtn/	писати

## REFERENCES AND FURTHER READINGS

1. Clandfield Lindsay. Straightforward. Beginner / Lindsay Clandfield. – Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 2006. – 128 p.
2. Clandfield Lindsay. Straightforward. Elementary / Lindsay Clandfield. – Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 2006. – 160 p.
3. Cunningham Sarah. New Cutting Edge. Elementary / Sarah Cunningham, Peter Moor. – Longman, 2005. – 174 p.
4. Cunningham Sarah. New Cutting Edge. Pre-Intermediate / Sarah Cunningham, Peter Moor. – Longman, 2006. – 175 p.
5. Cunningham Sarah. New Cutting Edge. Intermediate / Sarah Cunningham, Peter Moor. – Longman, 2005. – 175 p.
6. Evans Virginia. Enterprise 1. Beginner / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2006. – 166 p.
7. Evans Virginia. Enterprise 2. Elementary / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2007. – 168 p.
8. Evans Virginia. Enterprise Plus. Pre-Intermediate / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2009. – 176 p.
9. Evans Virginia. Enterprise 4. Intermediate / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2011. – 198 p.
10. Evans Virginia. New Round - Up 4 / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Pearson Education, Longman, 2010. – 144 p.
11. Evans Virginia. New Round - Up 5 / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Pearson Education, Longman, 2011. – 144 p.
12. Exam Excellence / [Danuta Gryca, Joanna Sosnowska, Russel Whitehead and others]. – Oxford University Press, 2012. – 200 p.
13. Kerr Philip. Straightforward. Pre-Intermediate / Philip Kerr. – Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 2004. – 160 p.
14. Kerr Philip. Straightforward. Intermediate / Philip Kerr, Ceri Jones. – Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 2005. – 168 p.
15. Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English, Fifth Edition. – Pearson Education, Longman, 2009. – 2082 p.

16. Mann Malcolm. Macmillan Exam Skills for Russia: Speaking and Listening / Malcolm Mann, Steve Taylore-Knowles. – MacMillan, 2010. – 167 p.
17. McCarthy Michael. English Vocabulary in Use. Upper-Intermediate and Advanced / Michael McCarthy, Felicity O'Dell. – Cambridge University Press, 2006. – 307 p.
18. Murphy Raymond. Essential Grammar in Use / Raymond Murphy. – Cambridge University Press, 2007. – 319 p.
19. Murphy Raymond. English Grammar in Use / Raymond Murphy. – Cambridge University Press, 2004. – 379 p.
20. Oxenden Clive. New English File. Beginner / Clive Oxenden, Christina Latham-Koenig. – Oxford University Press, 2011. – 120 p.
21. Oxenden Clive. New English File. Elementary / Clive Oxenden, Christina Latham-Koenig, Paul Seligson. – Oxford University Press, 2011. – 160 p.
22. Oxenden Clive. New English File. Pre-Intermediate / Clive Oxenden, Christina Latham-Koenig, Paul Seligson. – Oxford University Press, 2005. – 160 p.
23. Oxenden Clive. New English File. Intermediate / Clive Oxenden, Christina Latham-Koenig. – Oxford University Press, 2009. – 160 p.
24. Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary. – Oxford University Press, 2010. – 1952 p.
25. Radchenko I.A. Notes on English phonetics with seven laboratory sessions. Introductory-Corrective Course / I.A.Radchenko. – Kiev, 1977. – 88 p.
26. Redman Stuart. English Vocabulary in Use. Pre-Intermediate and Intermediate / Stuart Redman. – Cambridge University Press, 2008. – 263 p.
27. Soars Liz and John. Headway. New English Course. Beginner / Liz and John Soars. – Oxford University Press, 2008. – 144 p.
28. Soars Liz and John. Headway. New English Course. Elementary / Liz and John Soars. – Oxford University Press, 2008. – 143 p.
29. Soars Liz and John. Headway. New English Course. Pre-Intermediate / Liz and John Soars. – Oxford University Press, 2009. – 143 p.
30. Soars Liz and John. Headway. New English Course. Intermediate / Liz and John Soars. – Oxford University Press, 2001. – 160 p.
31. Thomson A.J. A Practical English Grammar / A.J.Thomson, A.V.Martinet. – Oxford University Press, 2011. – 384 p.

32. Thomson A.J. A Practical English Grammar: Exercises 1 / A.J.Thomson, A.V.Martinet. – Oxford University Press, 1986. – 182 p.
33. Thomson A.J. A Practical English Grammar: Exercises 2 / A.J.Thomson, A.V.Martinet. – Oxford University Press, 2010. – 208 p.
34. Vince Michael. First Certificate Language Practice: English Grammar and Vocabulary / Michael Vince. – Macmillan Education, 2009. – 352 p.
35. Vince Michael. Intermediate Language Practice: English Grammar and Vocabulary / Michael Vince. – Macmillan Education, 2010. – 312 p.
36. Wellman Guy. The Heinemann ELT English Wordbuilder / Guy Wellman. – Macmillan Education, 1998. – 270 p.
37. Wells J.C. Longman Pronunciation Dictionary / J.C.Wells. – Longman, 2004. – 896 p.
38. Англо-український словник / Є.І.Гороть, Л.М.Коцюк, Л.К.Малімон, А.Б.Павлюк. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2006. – 1700 с.
39. Базовий тематичний англо-український словник студента-перекладача [уклад. Л.В.Козяревич, Н.Ю.Мароха] – К.: ВЦ КДЛУ, 2000. – 98 с.
40. Верба Г.В. Довідник з граматики англійської мови / Г.В.Верба, Л.Г.Верба. – К.: Логос, 2007. – 352 с.
41. Гужва Т. Английский язык. Разговорные темы: [уч. пособ.] / Т.Гужва. – К.: Тандем, 1995. – 352 с.
42. Корчажкина О.М. Мои любимые звуки. Фонетико-орфографический справочник английского языка / О.М.Корчажкина, Р.М.Тихонова. – М.: Гуманитарный издательский центр ВЛАДОС, 1996. – 256 с.
43. Посібник з практики усного та писемного мовлення. Ч.І.: [навч. посіб.] / [В.В.Богдан, О.О.Галух, А.Б.Пожар, В.Б.Скрябіна]. – К.: ВЦ КНЛУ, 2004. – 228 с.
44. Практична граматика англійської мови з вправами. Том 1: [посібн. для студ. вищ. навч. закл.] / [Л.М.Черноватий, В.І.Карабан, І.Ю.Набокова та ін.]. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2005. – 288 с.
45. Практична граматика англійської мови з вправами. Том 2: [посібн. для студ. вищ. навч. закл.] / [Л.М.Черноватий, В.І.Карабан, І.Ю.Набокова та ін.]. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2005. – 288 с.
46. Прискорений курс англійської мови: [підруч.] / Л.Ю.Куліш, Є.О.Друянова, В.Л.Мотова, А.І.Мостицька. – К.: Чумацький Шлях, 2001. – 360 с.



47. Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка. Ч.І. Морфология / [В.Л.Каушанская, Р.Л.Ковнер, О.Н.Кожевникова, и др.]. – М.: Фирма Старт, 2000. – 320 с.
48. Симхович В.А. Практическая грамматика английского языка: [уч. пособ.] / В.А.Симхович. – Мн.: ИП «Экоперспектива», 1999. – 350 с.
49. Сліпченко Л.Д. Новий курс англійської мови. Ч.І.: [навч. посіб.] / Л.Д.Сліпченко, Г.С.Лисюк, М.І.Соловей. – К.: ВЦ КДЛУ, 2001. – 329 с.
50. Титова Н.Ю. English Articles. Англійські статті: [навч. посіб.] / Н.Ю.Титова, Л.М.Яценко. – Ірпінь: Національна академія ДПС України, 2007. – 157 с.
51. Українсько-англійський словник / Є.І.Гороть, С.В.Белова, Л.К.Малімон. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2009. – 1040 с.
52. Черноватий Л.М. Курс англійської мови для дорослих: [підруч.] / Л.М.Черноватий. – К.: Вид. ім. Олени Теліги, 1995. – 480 с.
53. Офіційний сайт British Council Україна [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.britishcouncil.org/uk/ukraine.htm>
54. Офіційний сайт Cambridge University Press [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.cambridge.org>
55. Офіційний сайт Dinternal-Book. Англійська мова в Україні [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.dinternal.com.ua>
56. ISL Collective. Main page for sharing ESL and EFL teaching resources [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.en.islcollective.com>
57. Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.en.wikipedia.org>
58. Офіційний сайт Headway – Oxford University Press [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.oup.com/elt/headway>
59. Наукова бібліотека НаУКМА [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.library.ukma.kiev.ua>
60. Электронный словарь АБВУЯ Lingvo x5 [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.lingvo.ru>
61. Словарь Мультитран [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.multitrans.ru>

## CONTENTS

<b>ПЕРЕДМОВА</b> .....	<b>3</b>
<b>Module 1: Food and Eating Habits</b> .....	<b>4</b>
Section I	
<b>What We Eat</b> .....	<b>4</b>
Section II	
<b>Cooking</b> .....	<b>74</b>
Section III	
<b>Eating Habits</b> .....	<b>106</b>
Section IV	
<b>Ukrainian Cuisine and Food around the World</b> .....	<b>121</b>
Section V	
<b>Eating out. At the Restaurant</b> .....	<b>134</b>
<b>Module 2: Shopping</b> .....	<b>164</b>
Section I	
<b>Going Shopping. Shops and Departments. Shopping for Food</b> .....	<b>164</b>
Section II	
<b>Choosing, Buying Clothes and Footwear</b> .....	<b>205</b>
Section III	
<b>Buying Various Items at the Department Store. Buying a Present</b> .....	<b>260</b>
<b>Grammar Reference</b> .....	<b>284</b>
<b>Appendix</b> .....	<b>344</b>
<b>References and Further Readings</b> .....	<b>351</b>

Підписано до друку 28.09.2021 р. Формат 60X84 1/16  
Папір друк. №1 Спосіб друку офсетний. Умовн. друк. арк. 27,34  
Умовн. фарбо-відб. 27,45 Обл.-вид. арк. 27,45  
Тираж 100. Зам. № 21 - 150

---

Видавничий центр КНЛУ  
Свідоцтво: серія ДК 1596 від 08.12.2003 р.

---

Віддруковано “Видавництво Ліра-К”  
03115, Київ, вул. Василя Стуса 22/1  
Свідоцтво про внесення до державного реєстру  
Серія ДК № 3981.